



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



3 2044 010 064 137

11472.22.2 B

**HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY**



**BOUGHT WITH
MONEY RECEIVED FROM
LIBRARY FINES**

6
Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 22.

„ The
Romans of Partenay, „
or of Lusignan:

OTHERWISE KNOWN AS

The Tale of Melusine:

Translated from the French of La Coudrette
(before 1500 A.D.) =

FORMERLY EDITED FROM A UNIQUE MANUSCRIPT IN THE
LIBRARY OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE,

WITH AN

Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index,

AND NOW REVISED

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, Litt.D., LL.D., D.C.L., Ph.D.

ELRLINGTON AND BOSWORTH PROFESSOR OF ANGLO-SAXON, AND FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE
CAMBRIDGE.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.

1866.

[Revised and reprinted 1899.]

~~Price Six Shillings.~~ £

3795

107

Early English Text Society.

Committee of Management:

Director: DR. FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, M.A.

Treasurer: HENRY B. WHEATLEY, Esq.

Hon. Sec.: W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67 VICTORIA ROAD, FINSBURY PARK, N.

Hon. Secs. { North & East: Prof. G. L. KITTREDGE, Harvard Coll., Cambr., Mass.
for America: { South & West: Prof. J. W. BRIGHT, Johns Hopkins Univ., Baltimore.

LORD ALDENHAM, M.A.

PROF. NAPIER, M.A., Ph.D.

ISRAEL GOLLANCZ, M.A.

EDWARD B. PEACOCK, Esq.

S. L. LEE, B.A.

REV. PROF. WALTER W. SKEAT, Litt.D.

REV. PROF. J. E. B. MAYOR, M.A.

DR. HENRY SWEET, M.A.

DR. J. A. H. MURRAY, M.A.

DR. W. ALDIS WRIGHT, M.A.

(With power to add Workers to their number.)

Bankers: THE UNION BANK OF LONDON, 2, PRINCES STREET, E.C.

THE Early English Text Society was started by Dr. Furnivall in 1864 for the purpose of bringing the mass of Old English Literature within the reach of the ordinary student, and of wiping away the reproach under which England had long rested, of having felt little interest in the monuments of her early language and life.

On the starting of the Society, so many Texts of importance were at once taken in hand by its Editors, that it became necessary in 1867 to open, besides the *Original Series* with which the Society began, an *Extra Series* which should be mainly devoted to fresh editions of all that is most valuable in printed MSS. and Caxton's and other black-letter books, though first editions of MSS. will not be excluded when the convenience of issuing completed Texts demands their inclusion in the Extra Series.

During the thirty-six years of the Society's existence, it has produced, with whatever shortcomings, an amount of good solid work for which all students of our Language, and some of our Literature, must be grateful, and which has rendered possible the beginnings (at least) of proper Histories and Dictionaries of that Language and Literature, and has illustrated the thoughts, the life, the manners and customs of our forefathers and foremothers.

But the Society's experience has shown the very small number of those inheritors of the speech of Cynewulf, Chaucer, and Shakspeare, who care two guineas a year for the records of that speech. 'Let the dead past bury its dead' is still the cry of Great Britain and her Colonies, and of America, in the matter of language. The Society has never had money enough to produce the Texts that could easily have been got ready for it; and many Editors are now anxious to send to press the work they have prepared. The necessity has therefore arisen for trying to increase the number of the Society's members, and to induce its well-wishers to help it by gifts of money, either in one sum or by instalments. The Committee trust that every Member will bring before his or her friends and acquaintances the Society's claims for liberal support. Until all Early English MSS. are printed, no proper History of our Language or Social Life is possible.

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £1 1s. a year [and £1 1s. additional for the EXTRA SERIES], due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid either to the Society's Account at the Head Office of the Union Bank of London, Princes Street, London, E.C., or by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, Victoria Rd., Finsbury Park, London, N., and crossed 'Union Bank of London.' (United-States Subscribers must pay for postage 1s. 4d. a year extra for the Original Series, and 1s. a year for the Extra Series.) The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists; but Members can get back-Texts at one-third less than the List-prices by sending the cash for them in advance to the Hon. Secretary.

The Romans of Pertenay,
or of Lusignan.

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, No. 22.

1866.

BERLIN : ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK : C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA : J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

The
Romans of Partenay,
or of Lusignan:

OTHERWISE KNOWN AS

The Tale of Melusine:

*Translated from the French of La Coudrette
(before 1500 A.D.)*

FORMERLY EDITED FROM A UNIQUE MANUSCRIPT IN THE
LIBRARY OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE,

WITH AN

Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index,

AND NOW REVISED

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, LITT.D., LL.D., D.C.L., PH.D.

ELRINGTON AND BOSWORTH PROFESSOR OF ANGLO-SAXON, AND FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE,
CAMBRIDGE.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.

1866.

[Revised and reprinted 1899.]

11472.22.2

✓

B



Original Series, No. 22.

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

PREFACE.

I. DESCRIPTION OF THE MSS., ETC.

THE MS. from which the present poem has now for the first time been copied and edited, is one belonging to Trinity College, Cambridge (where its class-mark is R. 3. 17), which is believed to be unique. It is written (on paper) in a clear but somewhat loose handwriting of the beginning of the sixteenth century, or possibly of the latter part of the fifteenth. I am inclined to guess that it may appear to be of a somewhat later date than it really is, from the possibility of its not having been written by a professional scribe; that is to say, if we are to take literally the lines near the conclusion,

Sin at your request and commaundement
This warke on me toke, it to fourge and make;
And so haue I doñ after myne entent
With litterall carettes for your sake,
Tham conueying in sable lines blake, etc.,

which seem to imply that the maker of the translation wrote it out with his own hand. This, however, involves two other assumptions; viz. that this particular copy is the original one (which can hardly be the case), and that the translator did not, in the first instance, employ a scribe. The MS. is nearly perfect, but two leaves are wanting, viz. fol. 1 and fol. 88. The sense of the latter has been easily supplied from a French MS. which will be described shortly, but fol. 1 contained original matter which might have told us more about the translator himself. As each page contains exactly four stanzas of seven lines each, we have thus lost 56 lines at most; but the precise number being uncertain, the lines of the Prologue have been numbered separately. Had the MS. been perfect, the whole number of folios would have been 124.

On the margins of some of the leaves side-notes have been made in a much later hand. As these relate to the story, they have all

been copied, and will be found in the foot-notes. On a vellum fly-leaf at the beginning are the marks of ownership—

“Liber Ricardi St Georg }
Norroy Regis armorum } fero et spero”—

and below this—

“Beaupre Bell, de Beauprè Hall in Com. Norf. ΑΡΙΣΤΕΥΕΙΝ.”
By the latter of these owners it was presented to Trinity College.

On the front of this fly-leaf there is written, in a very scrawly handwriting which it is very difficult to read, the following short poem, which seems worth transcription.

“masteres anne,
I ame your man,
as you may well espye;
if you will be
content with me,
I am merrie, [say I.]¹

but if you will
kepe company still
with every knaue yat comes by;
what boteth [be]
faythefull to [me,]²
I am, etc.

but if you fayne,
I tell you playne,
if I shulde presently die,
I will none suche
as loues to muche,
I am, etc.

For if you can
loue every man
yat can flatter & lie,
then are not ye
no mache for me,
I am, etc.

For I will not take
no suche kinde of mak[e,]
as you shall full well it trie,
yat of wil me cast
at every blast;
I am merrie, etc.”

The present text is as close a fac-simile of the MS. as printing allows of, most of its peculiarities being preserved as far as possible, including even the occasional occurrence of a small letter at the beginning of a line, which is of no significance. Every stanza begins with a large red capital, indicated by the large printed letter. The expansions of the various contractions, which occur but seldom, are indicated by italics. A hyphen within a word, such as in “vn-to” (Prol. l. 63), means that the syllables are written with a space between them. Letters or words between square brackets—such as in columb[e]re, l. 125—do not exist in the MS., but have been supplied because they are necessary. To ensure accuracy, the

¹ The word “merrie” is hardly legible, and the line is incomplete.

² “be” and “me” have been cut off in the binding; there are also two other readings of these two lines, through which the pen has been drawn, viz.

“then shall you be—forsaken of me,”

and,

“then kepe you still—to werke your will.”

proof-sheets have been twice compared with the MS. throughout the poem. I am of course responsible for the punctuation, marks of parenthesis and quotation, side-notes, etc.

The peculiarities of the MS. that have not been observed are these:—the use of long *s* (*f*); full points occurring at the ends of lines¹; the strokes through the upper part of the letter *h* when it follows *c*, *g*, or *t*; slight tags to *f*, *g*, *t*, and *ll*, which (in this MS. at least) mean nothing; and the fine downstrokes employed as metrical marks. These are often left out, and were merely intended to shew where a pause might be best made in the middle of a line when recited aloud. Such strokes occur oftenest after the *fifth* syllable, often after the *fourth*, rarely after the *sixth*. In the first stanza of the Poem, p. 8, one occurs three times, as thus :—

Hit is so in trouth / in time auncion,
After the time / that Octauian was, . . .
And A man ful ripe / in other clerigie.

The lines most frequently consist of ten syllables, which require a slow and measured pronunciation to make them melodious. The *-e* and *-es* at the end of words must often be fully pronounced.

The construction of the sentences, owing to some peculiarities of grammar, is not unfrequently obscure, and the question of punctuation in particular often presented difficulties, but nearly all doubts of this kind have been completely removed by a very fortunate circumstance, which, as I believe, has nearly doubled the value of the present edition. A MS. (marked Ll. 2. 5) belonging to the Cambridge University Library was kindly pointed out to me by Mr. Bradshaw, of King's College, which contains, in French, the whole of the very romance of which the present edition is a translation. The copy which our translator used must have resembled this very closely indeed, though a few differences of reading can be traced; and, as a consequence, this French MS. has proved of the utmost service, and a constant reference to it has explained many a sentence, phrase, and word, which would else have proved puzzling; whilst a comparison of the two throughout has well decided the punctuation. The French MS. is in all respects superior to the English one; it is older, clearer, and better written, and the language is easier and more poetical. It is of the fifteenth century, on paper, and contains

¹ When one occurs in the *middle* of a line it has been inserted between marks of parenthesis, as at l. 95.

165 written leaves, followed by a few blank ones. Of these, the first 148 are occupied by the "Romance of Melusine," and the rest chiefly by a Chronicle of events in French history, arranged in short paragraphs under their proper years, the last entry referring to the year 1454. Numerous extracts from it, illustrative of doubtful points, will be found in the notes, and the whole of the Prologue to the poem, carefully copied from it, will be found at p. 229.

Besides these two, there is also a copy of the Romance in prose in the British Museum (Bibl. Reg. 18. B. ii) consisting of 219 folios, and entitled—in a later hand—"A Chronicle of Melusine in olde Englishe, compyled by Ihon of Arras, and dedicated to the Duke of Berry and Auvergne, and translated (as yt shoulde seeme) out of Frenche into Englishe." But this, as will be more fully explained presently, gives a different version of the story, and I have not made much use of it. Still, a few extracts from it will be found in the notes, and two more at pp. ix and xvi of this preface.¹

There is also, among the Additional MSS. in the British Museum, a short abstract of the Poem in Icelandic, entitled "Melucinae og Remunds Saga." It is, however, of late date and little value. It contains seven short chapters, and begins on fol. 62b of MS. 4870.

Several quotations will be found in the notes from a book of which the title is—"Histoire des ducs de Bourbon et des comtes de Forez: par Jean-Marie de la Mure"—printed at Paris in 1860 from a MS. bearing the date 1675. The author accepts a large portion of the romance as genuine history, and works out genealogies and titles with the most laborious minuteness. Several of his statements are certainly open to question, but the book is interesting as illustrating the romance; see particularly book ii. chapters 77—84.

II. SOME ACCOUNT OF THE ROMANCE.

The first mention of the Romance is in connection with Jean d'Arras; of whom some account is given in the "Biographie Universelle." He was secretary to the Duc de Berri, who was brother to Charles V., king of France, and uncle to Charles VI., and also notorious for exercising great severity as governor of Lan-

¹ The whole of this prose version has since been printed for the Early English Text Society (Extra Series, no. LXVIII.), ed. A. K. Donald, with the title "Melusine; Part I." (*Addition in 1899.*)

guedoc. In the year 1387, the duke bade Jean d'Arras to write this romance for the amusement of his (the duke's) sister, the Duchesse de Bar. The famous deeds of the fairy Melusine had long before this been recorded in some documents that had been carefully preserved in the castle of Lusignan. To these Jean trusted for the main portion of his work, but added much of his own. It seems probable that it was at first written in Latin, as we find in the Catalogue of MSS. of Gaul, Switzerland, etc., by D. G. Hænel, the following entry:—"187. Roman de Melusine; traduction en vers du *latin* de Jean d'Arras."¹ But it is probable that it was not long before there was also a French prose translation in existence, which may have been made by Jean d'Arras himself. This seems to agree with the statement in the Cambridge MS.,

"Deux beaulx liures furent trouvez
En *latin*, et tous approuintez,
Quon fist *translater en francois*" (see p. 231);

or as our English translator puts it (at p. 6)—

"Within the toure of noble mabregon
To faire bokis were fonden ther-on
In *latin*, And all preynd at deuise,
That men made translat in most frenahest wyse."

It is this version of the story which is given by the British Museum prose romance, which begins by invoking the "Creatour of alle Creatures," and continues thus. "And to the plaisire of my Right high, mighti, and doubtid lord Iohan, sone to the kyng of Fraunce,² duc of Berry & of Auvergne. The whiche hystory I haue bygonne after the veray & true Cronykles which I haue had of hym and of the Erle of Salesbury³ in England, & many other bokes that I haue sought & ouerredde for to acomplysshe hit. And bycause that his noble suster Marye, doughtir to the kyng Iohan of Fraunce, duchesse of Bar, had Requyred my said lord for to haue the said historye; the whiche in fauour of her [he] hath doon as moche to his power as he might, to serche the very trouth & true historye; and hath commanded me for to do drawe alle alonge thystory whiche heraftir foloweth. And I, as of herte dyligent, of my pouere witt & connyng, [do] as nygh as I can the pure trouth of hys gracyous commandement Whiche this present hystorye I byganne the

¹ So also Brunet, in his "Manuel de Libraire," speaks of this romance as "tiré du *latin* de Jean d'Arras."

² Jean II., mentioned a few lines below.

³ See note to Prol. l. 178.

Wensday [before] saynt Clementis day,¹ in wynter, the yer of *our* lord mcccclxxxvii.; beseching alle them that shalle rede or here it Redde that they wil pardonne me my fawte yf their be eny. For certaynly I haue composed it the moost Iustly that I coude or haue mowe, aftir the Cronykles whiche I suppose certaynly to be trew."

The earliest printed edition of this Romance is thus described by Brunet ("Manuel du Libraire," ed. 1862, iii. 519). "Jean d'Arras. La Melusine. 'Cy finist le liure de Melusine en francoys, imprime par maistre Adam Steinschaber, natif de Suinfurt, en la noble cite de Geneue.' 1478. in-fol. goth. fig. en bois." It was one of the very first books printed at Geneva. Since then, editions have been very numerous,² as well in Spanish and German as in French; and the story is altogether very familiarly and very widely known upon the continent.

We now come to the second and later form in which the Romance commonly appears.

In the Catalogue of the Library of the duc de la Vallière (Paris: 1783), vol. ii., p. 260, there is an account of a fine MS. on vellum of "Le Roman de Mélusine, ou de Parthenay, ou de Lusignan." The romance is followed by a chronicle in prose of events in French history from the year 1403 to 1454.

There is little doubt but that the Cambridge MS., already described, altogether agrees with this, but is not so fine a copy. This version is in octosyllabic metre, and was undertaken by one named La Coudrette, a Poitevin, at the request of William, lord of Parthenay, and continued after this William's death (in 1401), at the request of his son, John of Parthenay, of whom there are profuse praises towards the close of the poem. La Coudrette tells us, in his prologue,³ that he had three books to refer to, and he professes to have done little more than re-arrange his materials. When these failed, he broke off the narrative,⁴ not venturing to continue it without due authority. He is also careful to tell us⁵ that his was not the first attempt at versifying the story, and he therefore deprecates all credit for his performance. The reader will observe that the one

¹ The word *before* is accidentally omitted; the French version has "*le mercredi devant la Saint Clement en yver.*" St. Clement's day, Nov. 23, 1387, fell on Saturday; so the previous Wednesday was Nov. 20.

² See Brunet; also the La Vallière catalogue, vol. ii., p. 642; and the "Conversations-Lexicon," s.v. *Melusine*.

³ Prol. ll. 154—189.

⁴ See ll. 6398, 6399.

⁵ Prol. l. 159—161.

version only preceded the other by a period which is less than fourteen years. I may add here that there is an excellent modern version of the story in German to be found in Tieck, which I have often found of service. It is written partly in prose and partly in verse, but it is clear that in the prose portion Tieck has often adopted the very words of La Coudrette's version, so that a close comparison of them often explains minor difficulties. So common indeed is the story in Germany that an abstract of it can be had in the form of a "Volksbuch" for a couple of *groschen*, in which the principal circumstances of the legend are very well and clearly told.

III. THE LEGEND.

The subject of the legend may be most briefly shewn by an extract from a well-known work, which also discusses the name of the heroine.¹ "Melisenda is, in Spanish ballad-lore, the wife of Don Gayferos, and, being taken captive by the Moors, was the occasion of the feats that were represented by the puppet-show in which Don Quixote took an unfortunate lively interest.² Melisende again was the princess who carried the uneasy crown of Jerusalem to the house of Anjou; and, perhaps, from the Provençal connections of the English court, Lady Melisent Stafford bore the name in the time of Henry the Second, whence Melicent has become known in England, and never quite disused, though often confounded with Melissa, a bee, and sometimes spelt Millicent.

"MELUSINE³ was a nymph who became the wife of the Lord de Luzignan, or Lusignan,⁴ on condition that he should never intrude upon her on a Saturday; of course, after a long time, his curiosity was excited, and stealing a glance at his lady in her solitude, he beheld her a serpent from the waist downward! With a terrible shriek she was lost to him for ever; but she left three [ten] sons,

¹ Miss Yonge: on Christian Names, vol. i., p. 257; (2nd ed., p. 330).

² In the original Spanish, it is spelt *Melisendra*—"Melisendra libertada por el famoso D. Gaiferos."—Don Quijote, parte ii. cap. xxv.

³ Baring-Gould gives a very different account of the origin of the name Melusine, which he believes to be of Semitic origin. See his "Curious Myths of the Middle Ages," ii. 233.

⁴ "Près de la ville de Montbrison, il y a une paroisse qui porte encore [A.D. 1675] le propre nom de *Lezigniacum* ou *Leziniacum*, qui est le vrai nom latin de la Maison de Lusignan ainsi communément nommé, quoiqu' elle dût être appelée Lezignem."—DE LA MURE: "Histoire des ducs de Bourbons," etc., p. 495. The "Conversations-Lexicon" makes *Lusineem* an anagram of Melusine, but this is clearly a wrong form of the word.

all bearing some deformity, of whom Geoffroi *au grant dent* was the most remarkable. Prose makes this gentleman the son of Eustachie Chabot, heiress of Vouvant, but the Mélusine tradition lingers round his castle of Lusignan, near Poitiers; and to this day, at the fairs of that city, gingerbread cakes are sold, with human head and serpent tail, and called *mélusines*. A *cri de Mélusine* is, likewise, a proverbial expression for a sudden scream, recalling that with which the unfortunate fairy discovered the indiscretion of her lord.

"The story is a frequent one; it occurs in Brittany, where the spell was broken by the husband speaking the word *death* before his fairy wife; and in Wales, where the lady is called a *pellen*."

We may recall, too, Keats's "*Lamia*;" and how she disappeared as Apollonius uttered the word "*serpent*" for the second time—

"A serpent!" echoed he; no sooner said,
Than with a frightful scream she vanished—

a story which, as Burton tells us, is to be found in Philostratus, in his fourth book *de vitâ Apollonii*.¹

For an excellent article on "*Melusina*" see "*Curious Myths of the Middle Ages*," by S. Baring-Gould, 2nd Series, p. 206. It is tolerably clear that the romance-writer has confused the story of a mermaid with that of a lamia, and has further supplemented it by introducing the notion of the Celtic banshee.

To come somewhat more to particulars, I may first observe that the prose version is much longer and contains many more details than the rimed one;² and that the story resolves itself into five several parts. (1) The story of king Helmas and the enchanted mountain; (this part of the story is inserted in the rimed version near the *end*, but the prose version puts it in its proper place at the *beginning*;) (2) Raymond and Melusine; (3) the deeds of their sons; (4) the legend of Sparrow-hawk Castle; and (5) Palestine's treasure

¹ "L'histoire de Mélusine est une vieille fable dont la cadre, nettement tracé, existoit déjà au xii siècle; du reste, cette tradition de la femme-serpent doit être beaucoup plus ancienne et n'est peut-être pas sans quelque rapport avec la Dracalopodes, et même avec la déesse Derceto des Syriens."—DE LA MURE: "*Histoire*," etc., note by the editor.

² It records more of the valiant deeds of Raymond and others, and especially of Geoffrey; and it mentions many minor details which the present version altogether omits. For example, when Uriens and Guy depart on their adventures, the prose romance tells us how their mother Melusine gave them two magic rings as amulets; and in like manner she gives two similar rings to Raymond just before her disappearance, to protect him from harm and misfortune. (See fol. 64, back, and fol. 188. Cf. *Mélusine*, ed. Donald, pp. 110, 319.)

in Arragon. I now give a very brief abstract of these, referring the reader for further details to the "Index of Names" at the end of this volume.

I. KING HELMAS. Helmas was king of Albany, who married a fairy named Presine, to whom he swore a vow, that he would never go to see her at the time of child-birth. Presine had three daughters at a birth, whom she named Melusine, Melior, and Palestine. Helmas then broke his promise, and the three children in revenge, being themselves endued with fairy power, shut him up in an enchanted mountain till his death (pp. 152—161). Presine, angry at this, punished each of them with different evil destinies. Melusine was partly to turn into a serpent every Saturday; Melior was to be banished for ever to Sparrow-hawk Castle in Armenia; and Palestine to keep unceasing watch over king Helmas' treasure, which was deposited on a mountain-top in Arragon.

II. COUNT RAYMOND. A rich earl of Poitiers, named Amery, adopted Raymond, the youngest son of the earl of Forest. In a boar-hunt, Raymond accidentally slays his benefactor; and soon after, whilst riding aimlessly about absorbed in grief, is surprised by the sudden sight of three beautiful damsels (Melusine, Melior, and Palestine). The eldest, Melusine, promises him all earthly prosperity if he will marry her; but he is to swear that he will never inquire whither she repairs on a Saturday. After some years, he secretly watches her on that day, and perceives her with her serpent's tail. He is deeply grieved, and being very penitent, is forgiven for the present. But afterwards, in a moment of rage at hearing of the death of his son Fromount, he calls her a "serpent!" She swoons with horror, and after an expostulatory farewell glides out at the window in a serpent's form, passing round the castle three times, at each time uttering a terrible and mournful cry. Raymond is afterwards absolved by the pope, and becomes a hermit at Montserrat in Arragon, where he dies at a great age.

III. THEIR SONS. Raymond and Melusine had ten sons, all marked (except the two youngest) with some blemish, and nearly all remarkable for their great valour and extraordinary success. Of these, Uriens becomes king of Cyprus; Oede was lord of the marches of Poitiers; Guy was king of Armenia; Anthony, duke of Luxemburg; Raynold, king of Bohemia; whilst Geoffrey with the great tooth, who succeeded his father as lord of Parthenay, performed

many prodigies of valour, slaying the giant Guedon in Guerrande, the giant Grimold in Northumberland, and discovering all the wonders of the enchanted mountain. But the seventh son, Fromount, disgraced the family by becoming a monk, for which act his brother Geoffrey burnt him alive with all his fellow-monks, abbey and all. The next, Horrible, was put to death by Melusine's order, for fear of the wickedness he would else commit. The two last were born some time after the rest, and were named Raymond and Thierry; Raymond¹ became earl of Forest, and Thierry succeeded Geoffrey as lord of Parthenay.

IV. SPARROW-HAWK CASTLE. In this castle, which was in Armenia, the lady Melior was to abide for the rest of her days, as above told. Presine had given her the power of granting a boon to any knight who watched the deathless sparrow-hawk which was within the castle, for three days and nights without sleeping. He was to have whatever he liked, except Melior herself as wife. The story tells how a king of Armenia dared to ask this, and how he was punished. (See Mandeville's "Travels," ch. xiii.)

V. PALESTINE'S TREASURE. Palestine guarded her father's treasure at the top of a mountain in Arragon, which is variously spelt Courgo, Coinqs, Quonig, etc. In this she was assisted by a huge serpent with a huge eye, and by a great bear and innumerable snakes that infested the lower part of the mountain. The story tells how an English knight slew the bear, and passed by all the snakes, but was swallowed bodily by the great serpent, in whose mouth he appeared no bigger than a pasty does in an oven.

The rimed romance concludes with many praises of John of Parthenay, with a lament for his father's death, and, at the end, a solemn litany for the preservation of the family and lineage of Parthenay. La Coudrette discusses the proper name to be given to the romance, and decides that it ought to be named either the "Romans of Partenay," or the "Romans of Lusignen"; to which decision I have therefore adhered.²

The translator appends a short epilogue of his own (l. 6546 to the end), as he had already prefixed 77 lines to the prologue.

The story of Melusine is alluded to by several historical writers. Thuanus³ speaks of the excellent situation of the castle of Lusignan,

¹ See Index of Names (p. 298); s. v. Raymond (2).

² See ll. 6416—6421.

³ Thuanus: lib. lix. § xi.

strongly fortified as it was by a wide fosse and two large towers, and conspicuous for its "Melusine's tower," and "Geoffrey's gateway;" the latter being so called, according to Brantôme, from the colossal statue of Geoffrey *au grant dent* which surmounted it. Thuanus also mentions the famous fountain (for the marvellous origin of which see p. 32 of the present volume) in the words—"in imâ turre fons Melusinæ a poetis nostratibus decantatæ fabulis famosus scatet." Both Mezeray¹ and Brantôme² record the sad fate of this famous castle, which was razed to the ground by the Duc de Montpensier in January 1574-5, because it had been determined to pull down all the fortresses wherein the Huguenots had been accustomed to take refuge. Mezeray's words with regard to Melusine are remarkable. "The great acts of Melusine," he says, "her riches, her extraordinary knowledge, which she derived either from communication with higher intelligences, or rather perhaps from the cabala of the Rabbins who were then very numerous in France, have procured her immortal renown in the mouth of posterity; who, not knowing her real history, have invented marvellous tales concerning her. These I leave to amuse old women and children. But I am enabled to report, on the credit of many persons of honour, and who are not generally thought credulous, that it has been observed that whenever one of her descendants, or a king of France, was about to die, she appeared on the great tower in a widow's³ habit, and uttered long and terrible cries; that she was thus seen before the siege of Lusignan; and that, when her castle was about to be demolished, she was seen longer than ever before, shrieking aloud in so lamentable a voice that she cleft all hearts with pity; but that she has since never been seen or heard save very rarely. Si cela est ainsi (I here give his own words) les Theologiens en rechercheront la cause, et nous enseigneront si nous devons croire que des pareilles choses proviennent, ou de la malice des demons, qui se plaisent à mettre les hommes en peine par ces illusions; ou de la bonté de Dieu, qui pour monstrier aux incredulés l'immortalité de l'ame, et les merveilles de l'autre monde, veut permettre aux esprits heroïques de paroître

¹ Mezeray: "Histoire de la France," tome iii. p. 359 (fol. 1685).

² Brantôme: "Capitaines Françaises," tome iii. p. 369; or "Œuvres Complètes," ed. Lalanne, v. 16. Cf. "Hist. de France," par H. Martin; 4me ed., 1865, iv. 415.

³ Brantôme also expressly calls her "veufve," so that the historical account is that she outlived Raymond, instead of disappearing so suddenly as in the romance.

quelquefois en celuy-cy dans les lieux qu'ils ont aimez durant leur vie."

Brantôme also testifies, but less strongly, to these miraculous reappearances;¹ and especially laments the destruction of the fine castle, for which many spoke of the Duc de Montpensier in terms of bitter execration. The ruins of the castle can now scarcely be traced. Miss Costello has recorded her extreme disappointment when visiting the site of them.²

With regard to the question just above raised by Mezeray as to the existence of fairies, the following extract from the prose romance is very interesting, and may serve also as a specimen of it.

"We haue thenne herd sey and telle of *our* auneyents, that in many partes of the sayd land of Poytow haue ben shewed vnto many oon Right famylerly many manyeres of thinges, the which som called Gobelyns, the other Fayrees, and the other bonnes dames or good ladyes; and they goo by nyght-tyme and entre *within* the houses without opnyng or brekyng of ony doore, and take & bere somtyme with them the children out of their cradelles, and somtyme they turne them out of theyre wit, and somtyme they brenne & Roste them before þe fyre, and whan they departe fro them they leue them as hoole as they were before, and som gyue grette happe & Fortune in this world. And yet haue I herd say of oon Geruayse, a man worshipfull & of credence, that som other fauntasyes appyeren by nyght-tyme vnto many oon in dyuerse places, in lyknes of wymen with old face, of low and lytil stature or body, whiche dide scoure pannes and potts and dide suche thinges as a mayde or *seruaunt* oughte to doo, lyberaly & without dooyng of ony harme. And also he saith for certayn that in his tyme he hadd a frend that was auneyent & old, which Recounted for trouth that in hys dayes he hadd seen many tymes suche thinges." (fol. 2 b.)

Jean d'Arras then goes on to give several instances of men who had married fairies, always under certain conditions, and specially mentions one whom "*Geruayse*" *well knew*, viz. Sir Robert du Chastel Roussel of the province of Asy, who found a fairy in a

¹ Cf. note to l. 3711.

² Miss L. S. Costello: "*Béarn and the Pyrenees*," vol. i., p. 140. She gives a sketch of the legend, and adds that Bouchet, in his chronicles, says he cannot find that any duke or count of Poitou was ever called Bertrand or Aymery; whence he concludes that the whole story is one of those which it is *impossible to believe, but which are at the same time delectable to read*.

meadow, and married her on the understanding that he was never to behold her stripped; but happening one day to see her in this condition, she immediately "putte her heed in-to a watre, & was tourned in-to a serpent." (fol. 3.) With regard to Melusine's reappearance before calamities, and to her tending her youngest son, Thierry, as described at p. 140, the reader may compare the following. "In German tradition the name of Berchta is given to the so-called *White Lady*, who appears in many houses when a member of the family is about to die, and, as we have seen, is thought to be the ancestress of the race. She is sometimes seen at night tending and nursing the children, in which character she resembles the Keltic fairy. In other and more wide-spread traditions, the *White Lady* is an enchanted or spell-bound damsel, who usually every seventh year appears near some mountain or castle, points out treasures, and awaits her release.¹ Sometimes she is seen combing her long locks or drying flax-knots. Some pretend that, like Huldra, she is disfigured by a *tail*."² The story entitled "How Count Baldwin of Flanders married a devil"³ has several points of resemblance to that of Melusine; but Melusine is always represented as loving and beneficent.

IV. THE LANGUAGE OF THE POEM.

Judging by the occasional occurrence of plural verb-endings in *-en*, the dialect would appear to be Midland; and other indications suggest that the scribe was an East-Anglian. I have observed, in particular, that many of the words used occur in the *Promptorium Parvulorum*, with the same peculiarities of spelling. The chief points to be noted are these.

We find plural verb-endings of the indicative present in *-en*; as, *willen*, *shinen*; and also of the past tense, as *weren*. The past tense of weak verbs ends in *-ed*, and the past participles end in *-ed* or *-yd*. The past participles of strong verbs end in *-en*, *-yn*, and even *-ing* or *-yng*; as *founden*, *forsaiden* (1290), *wroughten*, *throwen*, *coruen*, *yeuyn* (1860), *taking* (4921), *takyng* (1754), *yeuyng* (1799). Even the infinitive mood sometimes ends in *-ing* or *-yng*, as *enlesing* (5625), *yeuyng* (1528). Present participles end in *-ing*, *-yng*, *-and*, *-ant*. Examples of the latter

¹ This clearly applies to the legends of Melior and Palestine.

² B. Thorpe: "Northern Mythology," vol. i., p. 279.

³ Ditto, vol. iii., p. 283.

forms are *trenchand* (3045), *distrussand* (4082), *Ioynant* (4513). But the most characteristic marks of the poem are these; (1) the continual omission of inflexions, so that we meet with *reste* = rested, *yilde* = yielded, *gif* = given, whilst *diffend* (1468) is to be compared with *deffendyd* (2105); so too *goo* = gone, *be* = been, *mysdo* = misdones; (2) an extraordinary partiality on the part of the writer for the present participle, which he continually compels to serve both for the present and past tenses of the indicative; see *musng* = mused (363); and (3) a continual omission of the personal pronouns—see note to Prol., l. 4—and even of the verb *to be*, which gives many sentences an awkward look, and obscures the meaning. As a genitive case-ending, *-is* twice occurs written apart from the word, as *son is* = son's (28), and *Tristram is* = Tristram's (5750). By comparing *Tristram-is* with *Tristram hys* (6008), we have a good example of the unhappy substitution of *his* for the genitive case-ending; a change to which proper names were very liable. It is further remarkable that this case-ending is constantly neglected altogether, as *castell strength*, *lady lore*, *medee auise*, *fadir deth*, for castle's strength, lady's lore, Medea's advice, father's death. The following past tenses are noticeable: *fly* (flew), *blent*, *glint*, *rougt* (recked), *sly* (slew), *cliue* (clove), *grint* (ground), *lepe*, *condute* (conducted). Some of the past participles have prefixes; as, *I-graunted*, *I-thought*, *A-conqueste* (2492), *A-stoned*, generally spelt *stoned*. Also *to-stoniste*, *to-chapped*, *to-rent* occur, from the verbs *to-stonish*, *to-chap*, *to-rend*. Owing to the frequent occurrence of *y auoir* in the French, the translator constantly uses *had* or *was had* in place of *was*, and *had* or *were had* for *were*. Similarly, the occurrence of the French *elle* induces him to use *she* in place of *it* more than once. The accusative case *me* is curiously used, as *me moste goo* = I must go, *speke me shall* = I shall speak. *Me* is also found, as commonly elsewhere, in the sense of the Fr. *on*. The plural *bretherin* occurs twice.

Of adjectives, we find many double comparatives, as, *more leuer*, *more fairer*; and superlatives, as *moste hieste*, *moste gretteste*. The forms *bryghty*, *moisty*, occurring for *bright*, *moist*, are very significant as pointing to the full pronunciation of the final *-e* in old authors, being no doubt corruptions of *brightè*, *moistè*. So too *pitty* is written instead of *pitte* = pit. The forms *breueloker* = brieflier, and *good-lokest* = goodliest, are worth remark, as affording instances of forms

common in older MSS. The adverbs *fro-hens*, *fro-thens*, *wher-hens*, *ther-hens*, *ther-thens*, occur often. The adverb *well* is generally spelt *will*, which is at first sometimes perplexing. *Sonly* occurs instead of *soon* in l. 4078. *In* and *inly* mean very, extremely.

The conjunctions *yut* (yet) and *os* (as) are provincial forms. The preposition *toward* admits of separation, as *to-Brehaigne-ward* (2147, 2151). Double negatives are common. The forms *not-for-pat* (nevertheless) and *neuer-for-neuer* (never at any time) are curious.

A few words as to spelling. *Th* seems to have often had the sound of *t*; as we find *thought*, *thowne*, *thaken*, *thouchyng*, *thyme*, meaning taught, town, taken, touching, time. Compare *whyth*, with, and *whent*, went. Such words as *crying*, *rejoying*, *noying*, are spelt *cryng*, *reioyng*, *noyng*. We find, too, *piteuous*, *shameuous*, *beauteuous*, *hiduous*, for piteous, etc. *World* is spelt both *worle* and *wordle*, and for *worldly* we find *worly* and *wordly*. But one of the most curious freaks is that two letters are often transposed; *for* is repeatedly written when *fro* is meant; and *traying*, *presone*, *beded*, *presight*, *aduersite*, *berres*, *ther*, *secerly*, *perdestinat*, *portared*, *sogren*, all noticed in the foot-notes, are simply errors for *taryng*, *persone*, *bedde*, *perfight*, *aduertise*, *breres*, *thre*, *secrely*, *predestinat*, *portraed*, *sogern*, respectively. It is curious that *r* is the letter shifted, in nine instances out of eleven. We are thus left somewhat uncertain as to whether the spellings *refershing*, *crussing* are *intentional*, or whether they should be altered to *refreshing*, *curssing*. Cf. the O.E. *kerse*, *brid*, for *cress*, *bird*.

It only remains for me to explain why my name appears alone on the title-page, instead of jointly with that of the Rev. J. Rawson Lumby, as at first advertised. Mr. Lumby had done his full share of the transcription, viz. the latter half of the poem, from l. 3151 to the end, and had begun to add side-notes, when he was compelled by stress of work to relinquish the task. He has nevertheless been ever ready with suggestions and advice, and to him therefore are my thanks especially due; as also to Mr. Bradshaw (as before mentioned), and to the authorities of Trinity College, who have allowed me the unrestrained use of their manuscript.

POSTSCRIPT (in 1899). In reprinting the former edition of 1866, I have taken the opportunity of making a few corrections and additions; and I subjoin a note on the author's language.

The extremely numerous instances of departure from all ordinary English idioms clearly shew that the author's native language could hardly have been English of a correct type, in spite of his use of such expressions as "our moder tonge" in l. 6573, and "our tonge to-bore" in l. 6563. It is further noticeable that his native language was not French; for he expressly writes, in his own peculiar grammar:—

"I not aqueynted of birth naturall
With Frenshe his verray trew[e] parfightnesse"—(l. 8).

The only solution that occurs to me of the linguistic phenomena here presented is that the author may have been born, of English parents, in the province of Poitou, where the legend of Melusine was extremely well-known, and where the French which he daily heard was not of the literary type. His knowledge of English was likewise imperfect, notwithstanding that it may literally have been his mother's tongue. In any case, it deserves to be noted that the poem abounds with constructions to which I cannot remember to have met with any parallel. The accentuation of the verse is frequently unexpected and unusual; and one cannot but suspect that many of the lines could at no time have been considered melodious.

The sole existing MS., as explained above, seems to be a copy made by an East-Anglian scribe.

The Romans of Partenay, or of Lusignan.

[Fol. 1 is wanting.]

* * * * *

For full fayne I wold do that myght you please,
yff connyng I had in it to procede;
To me wold it be grete plesaunce and ease,
yff aught here might fourge to youre wyl in dede;
But barayne is my soule,¹ fauting connynghe,
Natheles in it wil I make progresse,
Euermore trustyng to youre gentillesse.

I not aqueynted of birth naturall
With fre[n]she his verray trew parfightnesse,
Nor enpreyntyd is in mynde cordiall;
O word For other myght take by lachesse,
Or perauenture by vnconnyngnesse;
For frenshe rimed or metred alway
Ful oft is straunge in englishe to display.

As nighe as metre will conclude sentence,
Folew I wil here my president,
Ryght as the frenshe wil yiff me euidence,
Cereatly after myn entent;
Al-be-hit I am vnsufficient,
Ne can noght peynt my boke as other be,
Vnder youre supporte yut aunter wyl me.

1 [Fol. 2]
I would gladly,
had I the cunning,
forge something here to
please you;
but my soul is
barren, and lacks
skill.

7

8 I am not acquainted by birth
with the perfection of French,
and may mistake
one word for
another;

12

for rhymed
French is difficult
to be displayed in
English.

14

15 As nigh as the
metre will permit,
I will follow my
text, in due
order;

19 albeit I cannot
paint my book
as most books are
painted.

21

¹ MS. "foule."

In ancient times
men invoked
deities;

In auncion tyme of antiquite 22
Men called goddis to theire helpe and ayd,
With deuoute prayers to theire deite,
Their werkys to fourge eche houred brayd,¹
Their celles of memoir to refreshe prayd ; 26
As valerius maximus gan do,
Tiberius Cesar called helpe vnto, 28

thus Valerius
Maximus invoked
Tiberius.

[Fol. 2 b.]
and explained in
the poem of his
notable booke,
how the gods were
created.

In the proheim off hys notabile boke, 29
Wher all thes goddis apertly may see,
(ho-so lust out it to behold or loke),
hou thay were creat eche in their degre ;
Som lust their faders honoured shold be, 33
Som for their strenght or for thing in holde,
Som for wisdome or somewhat vnfold. 35

Midas, the rich
king of Phrygia,
besought Bacchus
that all he touched
might become
gold ; which the
god granted,
even with respect
to his meat and
drink.

Off roial frige Midas the riche king 36
Bachus god of wyne ther besought he,
That al gold myght be what he were touching,
For he was of hys confraternite ;
Hys desyre graunted that gold fine shold be, 40
Ne had thys god relesed hym at large
Off hys mete and drinke, per shold he had discharge.

Some gods owed
their origin to
poets' fancy ;

To declare how they were deified, 43
large tyme, longe space wold it ocupie ;
Poetes whilom som fantesied ;
Som maligne gostes, ful of tyrannye,
yeuyng answeres to peple sondrye ; 47
For to tell or say their generacion
yn vayn, ryght nought their fundacion. 49

others were
malign spirite,
giving oracular
responses.

To call to my aid
gods such as these,

To callen in ayde tho of no valoure, 50
Which want myght and strenght, vertu none
hauyng,

¹ MS. "houredbrayd."

- That miscreantes whilom gan honoure,
 As for their goddis thaim deyfyng,
 As power had, where none wer hauyng, 54
 Poetes faynyd in their poetrie,
 Theim-selfen the more for to magnifie; 56
- Suche fayned goddys noght is to cal on, 57
 Thing Agayne our feith¹ And but fantisie;
 No help ne socour to cal thaim vpon;
 I lay theim Apart And fully denye,
 Requiring that lord whych is Almightye 61
 That of hys highnesse he be my trew gide,
 The weyes of trouth me vn-to prouide; 63
- That in thys mater my penne conueid be 64
 As plesaunce may be vn-to the highnesse
 Off our sacred lord, sitting in trinite;
 Now be he myn ayde in thys besinesse;
 To hym only I trust in thys forth progresse, 68
 That throug his mercy he me send² such grace,
 For³ frensh tyll english that it may purchase. 70
- Mi labor wil don After my simplenesse 71
 hit for to conuey As I can or may,
 Beseching hertly of your highnesse
 My defautes for to pardon alway;
 Trustyng to your grace now euer and ay, 75
 The prohemý and prologe of frensh here begyn,
 After my sampler passing forth ther-in. 77
- The philisopher ful wyse was And sage 78
 Whiche declarid in hys first pagent,
 hys methephisike off noble corage,
 Werto plieth humayn entendement,
 Naturally conceyung the entent 82

who are of no
 value, and were
 only imagined by
 poets,

[Fol. 3]
 would be against
 our Christian
 faith.

I deny them,
 and call rather
 upon Almighty
 God,

to guide my pen
 as may please
 the Trinity,

that I may trans-
 late the French
 into English.

I will do my best,
 asking pardon for
 defects, and will
 now begin to
 translate the pro-
 logue prefixed to
 the French text.

The philosopher
 was full wise, who
 declared in the
 first page of his
 "Metaphysica,"
 that the human
 intellect naturally
 endeavours to
 learn and know
 things;

¹ MS. "feith."

² MS. "fend."

³ Fro (?)

for all a
man's endeavour

To lerne And know ; thing said wel and wisly ;
For all humayn entendement fully 84

[Fol. 3 b.]
is to know that
which he before
knew not, espe-
cially in matters
that concern him
closely. Old
things, when re-
hearsed, are good
and fair ; as when
we speak of
Arthur,

DEsireth come to know that he knowith noght, 85
Whether of loue or of reproche it be,
And specially if it touche hym aught.
Things of long time passyd in contre,
When rehersed is, pleasith hertes fre ; 89
Auncion thinges wich ben good and fayre,
As to speke of king arthure debonayr, 91

and of his noble
knights and
worthy people ;

How he wold preue his vertu and manhede 92
With noble knightes and peple worthi ;
Many of hym spekith at thys hour in-dede ;

or of Lancelot,
Percival, or
Gawain.

And so thai don of lancelet sureli,
Wher ful good loos had ryght ful preysingly ; 96
Of perceuale also, And of Gawayn,
Which lo ! at no time had hertes in uayn 98

Whoever inquires
of their marvel-
ous adventures
by sea and land,

As for to adquire grete honour and prise ; 99
Ful wel lernid were in knightly coniectures.
Who wyl know and enquire in what maner wyse,
By se and land meruelous auentures 103
Which came unto sondry creatures,

will find it an
excellent thing
to know them.

For to conne it is an excellent thyng,
And cause of many mannys preferring. 105

Science is a most
worthy thing :

As rose is aboue al floures most fine, 106
So is science most digne of worthynesse ;
Ho noght ne can, noght worth is to deuine ;

and every oñe
should study
history, more
especially if he
be of high degree.

Hit wel belongeth to tho of goodnesse 110
Strongly to enquire histories expresse,
Which that of longe tyme makith memorie ;
Moch more is if he be of degre hye ; 112

[Fol. 4]
Such a man ought
to know his pedi-

HE shold serche, fro degre into degre, 113
vn-to know wherhens he descendyd is,

- Duke, Erle, or Baron, or markois if he be,
 So þat long mynde therof shuld be ywis ;
 Al thes lordes gret so shold do in thys, 117
 Ther-off scripture make as an historie,
 To ende that ay ther-of be memorie. 119
- F**or-so-moche I say that an high grete lord, 120
 Whilom of peiters, (whom god yf honour),
 lord of partenay named of record,
 To whom I shal be redy at ech hour,
 Me commaunded, noght gretly, to labour 124
 Of hys proper sentement and feling ;
 Hys commaundment wern shal I no-thing. 126
- F**or euery knowith and full wel May see 127
 That to lordes here men obbey, lo ! shold ;
 ho can it noght do, wise ne sage is he ;
 In hys swete langage ther he me vnfold
 That I ther take the exampleir wold 131
 Off a boke¹ of his which that he had made ;
 He it ther me toke, to fourge it me bade. 133
- T**o know in sertayn ho fourged and wrought 134
 Roial lesigne[n], the noble castell,
 Als ho made the town, vnto mynde it brought ;
 A meruelous strenght is in for to dwel.
 Then I answerd greing to hym well, 138
 “ My lord,” said, “ vnto your wil and plesire ;”
 Then said he, “ do it at your owne lesire ; 140
- F**or all the labour and iornay is your ; 141
 Thys castell was made with on of faire,
 (As ouer all rehersed is eche hour),
 Of the which I am drawen lynyally,
 I and all the lyne discendyd fully 145
 Of partenay, it is ryght no doute at all ;
 The fair melusigne men gan hire to call, 147

gree, and cause
 it to be duly
 recorded.

Thus it was that
 a great lord of
 Poitiers and Par-
 tenny commanded
 me to labour after
 this manner ;

and men should
 always obey great
 lords.

His bidding was,
 that I should
 make a (rhymed)
 copy of a book of
 his ; which book
 he gave me,

so that men
 might know who
 made the castle
 and town of
 Lusignan.

I promised ac-
 cordingly to do so

[Fol. 4 b.]
 He then told me
 that this castle
 was built by a
 fairy, from whom
 he was himself
 lineally descended
 and whose name
 was Melusine ;

¹ MS. “abokc.”

whose arms, indeed, he still bore; and he bade me rewrite the whole history of it in rhyme, because then people would the sooner recite or hear it.

This fairie womman þat you namyd haue, 148
 Of whom the armys here now here wee,
 The which ofte were borne; and daly it craue,
 And to end of it there-of memoir be,
 ye shall put in ryme thys historie fre : 152
 I will that it be rimed hole entire,
 The sonner peple wyll it say or hire." 154

I replied, I would gladly undertake it, but desired to receive no praise,

Then sayd, " my lord, I grant your entent ; 155
 Alwais your will and plesire wil doo,
 My power also ; but lose wil none hent,
 For in other tyme in frensh put also,
 And rymed, As men me haue told vnto ; 159
 Wherefor vnto me shold it be gret shame
 Of thys dede me auaunt and of it haue name, 161

for that it had been put into rhyme once before already.

Still I would try and put it into another shape,

Syn Another time hath fourged be and made. 162
 But to my power what I can wil doo ;
 so god be plesyd, my witte shal put to fade
 In-to other fourme, if leyser haue, lo !
 Which letter¹ shal you come plesaunce vnto, 166
 Syn that the other ye haunt ne vse noght ;
 And, that you plesith, put to will I my thought

which would please him better ;

[Fol. 5]
 and would consult two books that had been found in the tower of Mabregon, originally written in Latin, but which had been afterwards translated into French ;

After tho bokes which of it men fynde, 169
 A Wher this historie preuyd manion ;
 And to ende that we may bring vn-to mynde,
 Within the toure of noble mabregon
 To faire bokis were fonden ther-on 173
 In latin, And all preuyd at deuise,
 That men made translat in most frenshest wyse.

the contents of which books had been subsequently confirmed by Anthony, earl of Salz and Barry, in another book,

And syn, after monthes fife or sixe, lo ! 176
 A This historie confermyd anthonye,
 The erle of salz and of Barry also,
 In a boke whych had of this castel hie, 179

¹ Sic in MS. Read better. The French has *mieulx*.

Whiche that was so faire, ful strong and myghtie ;
But al-wais spake in his wordes al
Vn-to thes bokes Aboue-said egall : 182

Off bokes thre that boke drawn oute, 183 which, they say,
(Ryght so fayn¹ men rehersyng the chaunee), was compiled
And that wherby it was know no doute, from three others ;
Which other tymes haue sayne the substaunce ; and I do not doubt
here-to shal I put all my hole pusaunce, 187 it, as I have seen
In ordinat rule shal it sett surelye, the substance
As plesire may be vnto our lord hye." 189 of it.

Then toke I my leue As of my good lord, 190 Thereupon, I took
(Vn-to whom god yeff ioy, grace, and honour). my leave, and will
As to þe castell strength here to recorde now endeavour to
Of þe said lesignen, whiche was fair þat hour, write the history
here shall ye here thys historie labour ; of the castle of
194 Lusignan, with
So þat it may plesse the kyng of glorie, God's assistance,
Which to me yeff Felyng ther-of fullie, 196

Withowt whom a man² here may do no thyng, 197 '[Fol. 5 b.]
Be it in fransh tonge other in ebrew ; without whom
All science cometh of that noble kyng, one can write
Wich is the clere wele or the pilour trew, nothing, whether
in French or in
The maker of all whom liff doth ensew ; 201 Hebrew.
Of hym cometh goodnesse, wite, and sence ;
Non, but by our lord, herite in science. 203 Of Him cometh
goodness, wit,
and sence.

With hole hert entire here I hym require 204 I pray Him, with
To thys nede me ayde ; and hys moder swet my whole heart,
Mi mater conduce to the ende entire, to aid me ; and
Thys werke vnto me here shewyd and gett, that his sweet
To the hie plesaunce of my good lord grete, 208 mother will con-
To whom god yeff ioy, worship, and honour ; duct my work to
Right thus the prologe Endeth at this hour. 210 the end.
Thus endeth the
prologue.

[*End of the prologue.*]

¹ Read sayn.

² MS. "aman."

[THE ROMANS OF PARTENAY.]

In ancient times,
after the time of
Octavianus, lived
in Poitiers a cer-
tain earl named
Amery, well-
skilled in
astrology and
other sciences,

as well as in canon
and civil law.

Never was there a
better astrologer,
or one more
learned in the
science,

[Fol. 6]
excepting only
Him, who gave
stars their names.
He was also great
and rich, and very
fond of hunting.

He had a fair son
and a fair daugh-
ter, whose names
were Bertram
and Blanche.

Hit is so in trouth in time auncion, 1
After the time that Octauian was,
In peyters a erle had of grete renoun,
Off whom gret talkyng men held hie and bas ;¹ 4
loud of all, cherished in eche place,
Callid Amerys ; wel cowde astronemie,
And A man ful ripe in other clerigie 7

Off the right Canoun and Ciuile also ; 8
Wel nye al by hert thes science coude he,
Als wordly witte I-now had ther-to ;
yut hys dedes neuerthelesse to se,
Neuer better astronomian might be, 12
Founde was neuer man being *christian* ;
He cowde moche more than any other man ; 14

But only he which sterres gan to name, 15
Then all other, with ther names all.
A gret man this was And of noble fame,
And wel at ease of goodes mondiall ;
Disport of houndes loued moche with-all, 19
Full ofte chaced he hertes, bores grete ;
Thys erle of peyters huge nobles gan gete. 21

Fair sone had by his gentill wiffe, 22
A Full moche loued hir, chirsly can hir hold,
And A doughter fair, ful swete As fare liff,
Streight nose, fair mouth, wel fetured, me told,
Gret beute she had wonderly vnfolde ; 26

¹ MS. "has," which is wrong.

Which men callyd Blanche, she was inly fair ;
And the sone-is name Bertram debonaire. 28

Thys Erle thes children ful moche loued tho ; 29
Yut was noght founded, neither like to be,
Rochel ne machon, neither of them to ;

Thorough al peyters foyson of wode plente,
A ful gret forest with many A streight tre, 33
And in the wild forest As of columbere,
Which is noght full ferre fro peiters there. 35

For tho ther was A Erle in the forest, 36
Which of children had A huge noumbre gret ;
In riches herite was not in þe best,
But of good lyuyng was in-dede and set,

Sagely And wisely good gouernaunce get ;
After that had, warly gan dispende ;
And for hys good gouernaunce, at ende, 42

Loued and cherished was of peple all. 43
Cosyn he was to Erle amerye fre,
Which thes nouels hurd at that entreual,
That his cosyn had of children plente ;
Then came hym in wil and in volente 47
Off such greuous charge hym to discharge tho ;
Without traying,¹ therfor, gan he do, 49

At peiters made A foial gret feste, 50
A more worshipful neuer sayn with eye ;
After tho he send the Erle of forest,
Of poiters The erle commaunded so fullie,
And other Barons lyke-wyse verilye, 54
Which of hys seignorie landes gan hold
Of this noble erle A-forne spoke and tolde. 56

Tho wer after sende, to hym came gladlye ; 57
All other cam, non lakke, vnto that iourney

Neither Rochelle nor Macon were yet founded ;

and there was, throughout Poitiers, abundance of trees, and especially a large forest called that of Coulombiers.

Now there was an earl in the forest, who had a huge great number of children, not very rich,

but who lived sagely, and spent warily,

[Fol. 6 b.] and was beloved by all. He was cousin to Amerye ; who, hearing of his great number of children, thought to assist him.

He made therefore a great feast at Poitiers, and invited the earl of the forest and his feudal barons.

¹ Read taryng. See note.

earl of the forest
brought with him
three of his sons.

That thys sayd Erle commaunded hertlye.
The Erle of Forest brought hym, thay say,
Thre of his sones vnto court that day, 61
For to do to hys cosyn gret plesaunce;
And he cam vnto full fair ordinaunce. 63

The earl of
Poitiers was glad
to see therein,
and regarded the
three sons closely,
especially the
youngest, and
said,

The Erle of poitiers had gret ioy to sight 64
Of hys good cosyn, And hym fested so,
And hym cherished in al that he myght;
Hys children feruently gan he behold tho,
To on of them thre hys behold gan go, 68
The lest gan hym plese in hert brennynglic,
To hys cosyn sayd thes wordes swetly. 70

[Fol. 7]
"My fair sweet
cousin, I beg you
to give me one of
these children;
he shall be well
taught,

"Understandeth me, my fair swete cosin, 71
I haue vnderstande And by neighbours knowe
That largely ye haue children good and fin,
Full good is that ye ther-of discharge yowe;
Here I you require, yeff me on to owe; 75
He shall be wel taught in curtesie and speche,
For suche doctrine schal hym lere and teche; 77

and I will make
him a rich man."
"My lord," said
the earl, "do
your pleasure as
regards these
three;

And for euermore ryche man shal hym make." 78
"My lord," sayd thys Erle of the forest hie,
"Of thes thre on your plesire do and take,
And you ther-of I thanke whyth hert ful humly,
Reson is ne right that you werne shold y; 82
Se ye here now thre in your hie presence,
Do as liketh your noble reuerence. 84

I will not refuse
you.

Take whichever
of them you like
best."
"Then give me
the youngest,"
quoth the earl of
Poitiers;

TAke here vnto you which you best do plese, 85
No man shall ther-of you werne ne withsay;—
"Then yeff me the lest to my hertes ese,
For I haue to hym my loue yeff thys day,"

The Erle of poiters this to hym gan say. 89

“Sir, I wyll gladly do your will and hest,”
So hym Answerd the Erle of forest,¹ 91

“Syn he you plesith, ye shall hym haue trulie ; 92
My lord, se hym here, you here take sone
myn ;”—

“My fair cosyn, I thanke you ful hertlye ;
Declare me hys name (.) gentil good cosyn.”

“and declare to
me his name.

“My lord, men hym cal Raymound good & fyn, 96
The fair, the swet, the gentill, the curtoys,
Off all thre best thaught, still, not moche of uoys.”

“My lord, his
name is Ray-
mond.”

When thys roiall Feist was endyd and done, 99
Ryght so As it fell vppon the thyrd day,
The Erle of foreste toke hys leue to gone ;

[Fol. 7 b.]
The third day
after the feast,
the earl of the
forest departed.

Tho thes brethen thre to-geders kyssyd thay,
Entercommaundyng to god other ay, 103
At ther departson had thay gret dolour ;
Thys Raymound Abode with hys lord that houre.

The three
brethren
mutually com-
mended each
other to God,
and Raymound re-
mained behind.

Ful wele he hym seruyd vnto his powere, 106
Off trouth he it knew ful wel verilye,

Raymond served
earl Amery faith-
fully,

Thys full noble erle, sir Amerie, there,
Which moche hym louyd And cherished² hertly,
As for that so wel hym seruyd daily, 110

and was much be-
loved in return.

And surely wold do that to hym wold say,
Neuer seruitour loud so no day ; 112

And³ Also he was his faythfull cosyn. 113
Raymound after thys, gayn wyl, hym gan sly ;
Standed cast to ground, to deth most incline

But after this did
Raymond slay
him ; cast stone-
dead to the earth,
to death must
Amery incline,
through the false
gluttonous cruelty
of fortune.

By fortune fals glotenous cruelte,
Which no-thing dredith ne doughteth to be, 117

¹ MS. “forest.”

² MS. “cherished.” See l. 121.

³ MS. “AAnd.”

But causith ofte meruelles for to come,
So As ye may hire sondry tymes lome. 119

The earl Amery
went often to
hunt in the afore-
said forest, during
five or six years;

At noble poiters the erle Amerie, 120
Which so was louyd and cherished tho,
Als of hys men holden ful cherishlye
Both of ryche And pour in like wyse also,
To wodes he went ful ofte to hunt, lo ! 124
Into the foreste of sayd columb[e]re ;
So fyffe or sexe jere regned in powere. 126

[Fol. 8]
and he went to
hunt one day
with a large
number of
knights,

with Raymond
on a high courser
beside him,
bearing his sword.

HIt cam on A day, for to hunt he went, 127
With hym gret fusion of knyghtes many,
Of tho which he moste louyd ther hent,
Whith hym to disport brought he forth surelye.
Besidis hym rode Raymounde gentillye, 131
vppon A coursere he, beryng ful wel
(As thys hystorie doth declare and tell) 133

The chase began ;

the beast ran be-
fore the hounds,
closely followed
by them and by
the earl,

The sward of thys noble Erle and man. 134
Tho began the chace strong and myghtly ;
The best for noyse A-forn the hundys ran,
The houndes sewing after ful strongly ;
The Erle thaim sewed and spored lyghtly, 138
Of whom anon shal you declare and say
Where hym cam tho gret mischef and afay ; 140

who never re-
turned again
home. Raymond
followed him as
closely as he
could ;

and, as the moon
rose, the boar was
still slaying the
dogs.

FOr neuer after he ne cam againe, 141
Raymounde hym sewed As moche As he myght,
As for to leue hym ne wold he certayn ;
Of thaim to it fil As ye sall know ryght.
In the forest sought thys swyne euery wyght, 145
Which in columbere bred and fed trulye ;
The mone ther rose ; the swyne ther houndes slye,

The earl's people
knew not where
he was, having

Ther ded to ground thaim cast myghtilye. 148
his peple wyst noght where that he became,

Novmbred were thay ther mo then twentye
 Which full feruently rode after thys game ;
 "Come heder," said, "Raymound, lord, in goddys
 name ! 152
 Our houndes, our peple lost now haue we,
 In what part thay ben vnknow is to me ; 154

ridden away after
 the boar.

"Come hither,
 Raymond !" said
 the earl,

And now is it noight to retorne, parde ? 155
 Thought we cerche Aboute we shal not thaim
 find. [Fol. 8 b.]
 "and tell me
 what you advise."

What say ye now ? what do now shal we ?"—

Raymounde sayd, "go forth, tary we not behynd,
 Vnto som receit nye the wodes lynde, 159
 Wher we mow thys tym receyued to be."
 The Erle answered, "ful wel now say ye ; 161

"Let us find
 some retreat,"
 said Raymond,
 "where we may
 tarry awhile."

Ryght so shal it be As to me said, 162
 Sithen the mone is risen vp an hie,
 The euening is fair and clere displaid,
 The sterres shinen fair I-now truly
 That all the wordle enlumyneth goodlie." 166
 Then vnto ther way went thay ful nere,
 For the mone gan shine inly fair and clere. 168

"So shall it be,"
 said the earl,
 "for the moon
 and stars shine
 clearly."

Thorought the wodes went, athirt trauersing, 169
 Where thay found places diuers and sondrye,
 Then a full fair way to thaym apperyng
 Wheron a stronge pas rode thay hastily.
 The Erle said, "Raymound, thys path wyl vs bryng
 nye, 173
 As me semeth, to peyters the ryght way ;
 What sey ye ? is it noight so, now me say ?" 175

Traversing
 athwart the
 wood, they found
 at last an easy
 path, which the
 earl thought
 would lead them
 to Poitiers.

Raymounde said, "I trow it so be trulye ; 176
 Now ride we then, in goddis name, apace,

Raymond thought
 the same, and
 advised that they

should ride on
fast,
and inquire their
way of some one
whom they might
meet.

We shall come ful late thought we ful fast hye,
That into the town to entre haue no space ;
yut perauenture we may fynd som grace 180
To mete your peple whiche that knowith the
way : " —
"Go we," sayd the Erle, " I graunt, al that we
may."

[Fol. 9]
The earl, as he
rode, began to
behold the stars,
being (as was
told) a skillful
astrologer.

Then thay toke ther way wonder spedfullye. 183
Thys noble Erle be-gan to behold
Thes fair sterres shynyng ful bryghtly,
So that the skye enlumyned manyfold ;
Of astronemye wyse was As is told, 187
So moche ther-of knew he the maistrie.
As he a sterre beheld in the skye an hie, 189

Thereupon he
perceived, by a
certain star, that
a strange ad-
venture was at
hand,

Ther he saw a meruelous auenture 190
Which ful sharpe and hard after to hym was.
The profite of other touched he ther sure,
But of hys owne ille perceyued no cas.
Ther wonderful syghtes¹ gan to purchas, 194
Hys handys gan wryng and to draw fast,
"O lord god !" said, "that angelles formed hast,

and wrung his
hands, and cried
out,

"O Lord God!
why doth fortune
make a man
prosper by ill-
doing ?

That thes merueles so strange bene sothlese ! 197
Fortune is ful strong any man to know ;
O varray god ! for why made she encesse
Only a man,² for doing ille, to grow ?
She is ful glad of duyng ille, I trow, 201
Now is it ryght thus, I se wel now expresse
That, for ille doing, comyth gret goodnesse ! 203

For I perceive
that prosperity
will thus happen.

Raymond ! behold
these stars, and
know that if, in
this hour, a man

In thes sterres se, Raymounde, vnderstand ! 204
For I here perceyue ful gret auenture."
He hym answerd, "what is that sayand ?"

¹ syghes (?).

² MS. "aman."

- Thys Erle hym said, "the shal declare sure,
Without any doubte know thys of trouth pure, 208
And no-thing no doubte, but be in certayn,
If a man¹ gan sle hys lord souerayn, 210
- A**s in thys hour, he shuld gretter lorde be; 211
More pusaunt, ful myghtly, and ryght gret
Then any of hys kynred in contre;²
In al places shal fructefie and get,
loue of all shal haue wher he entermet, 215
More gretter loue haue then his neyboures all;
know thys, fayr cosin, this is trouth, & shall!"
- R**aymounde nought o word yaf hym to answe, 218
Al pensif a foote discended adon;
An hepe of wode a[t] that tyme founde there,
That herdes had lefte, gret and smal, theron;
A lytyll fire found ther, the wode brend anon. 222
Certes ouer warme at that tyme was nought;
The Erle ther lyght doune, somewhat hym chaufe
thought. 224
- T**her thai hurd a noyse, for to speke shortlye; 225
The wod breke and rent ful heuily tho;
Then Raymound his swerd gan to gripe fersly,
And the Erle his in that other party to.
leuing the fyre which ful clere brend, lo! 229
Then afor them saw ny to them comyng
An huge bore of meruelous wreth beyng, 231
- W**ith tuskas tho whettyng ful strongly, 232
And with malice yre comyng, fast smytyng;
"My lord, saue your lyf and ward yow quiklye,
here vppon a tre wyghtly be clemmyng;"—
With hie hautyng voice the erle answeyng, 236
- were to slay his
sovereign lord,
- [Fol. 9 b.]
he would become
himself a greater
lord, and more
puissant than any
in the country,
- and be more
beloved than his
neighbours."
- Raymond an-
swered not, but
alighted, and
found a little fire
kindled in a heap
of wood.
- The earl also
alighted to warm
himself.
- Then heard they
a noise. The
wood brake, and
they beheld a
huge boar, in
marvellous wrath,
- Raymond begs
his lord to climb
wightly into a
tree, who boldly
refuses

¹ MS. "aman."

² MS. "incontre."

" I neuer was repreued at no stound,
Ne here shal not be neuer shuch wise founde. 238

[Fol. 10]
to flee from a pig
of a foul sow.

WEre it plesaunce to god I shold hens fle 239
As beforn A pigge of A fowle sowe, lo?"

The earl advances
to pierce the boar,
when his sword
glances;

Towardses the swine hys swerd fast shoke he;
Raymound vnderstode his worde hym noyed tho.
Thys sayd Erle tho went to launce hym vnto, 243
And when it cam so, the swerd went adōn;
Thys swyne to the Erle forth faste ran anon; 245

for, as the boar
came fast to-
wards him,

his sword would
not pierce the
boar's hide;
so that, missing
his stroke, he
falls from his
horse upon the
boar's tusks.

By mischef ther thys noble Erle gan die; 246
The Erle hym ne myght no lenger ther hym
hold.

By myschef thys swyne smot hym feruentlye;
But hys swerd in hym entre ther ne wold,
There he moste of horse fal to hys tuskes bold. 250
Raymound fast gan ren thys sayd swyne agayne,
Trowyng hym to smite thorough the body playne;

Raymond runs up
to aid him,

but his sword
also turns aside.

But hys swerde glente, non hurt had he tho, 253
For vppon the bakke was the stroke to se;

A second stroke,
however, is
successful, and
he cleaves open
the boar with
his steel sword.

Againe Raymounde smote, thorought the bely gan go,
With the stilen swerde there tho made entre;
The blade fourged good, rasour kene was he, 257
All the bowelles cutte, all fil out anon;
Hys good swerd withdrew, the bore ther fil dōn,

He finds his
lord dead, and
his soul com-
mended to God.

To mortail deth to grounde fallen tho. 260
Thens vnto hys lord went he forth anon,
Neuer gan to rest til hym cam vnto,

Al dede ther hym founde And the soul gon;
Commaunded was she to goddis hie renon, 264

For he was as
valliant a man
as any on this
side of Rome.

For A worthy man and vaillant he was
As Any A-this-side¹ Rome to purchas. 266

¹ MS. "A thisside."

- R**aymounde hym take fast ther to wepyng, 267 [Fol. 10 b.]
 hym-selfen gan bete and hym sore torment—
 "ha! alas! thou fals fortune," ther saying,
 "To me hast thou be felonesly bent!
 Goode to tho wykyd thou grauntest and lent; 271
 he is A more foole then Any mute best
 That trustith on the, or in thy behest! 273
- T**hou art no gudfader ne Godmodere! 274 that she is no
 To on art thou swet, Another bitter to;
 Non may on the trust, ne in thy fals gere;
 Off A smal man thou makest a kyng, lo!
 And of tho ful rych right pour men also. 278 that she makes
 In the no wyl streine to helpe moste or lest;
 Thou on aydest, Another destroest! 280 a king of a small
 man;
- A**las for sorow! thys in me to fynde! 281 that she has
 Thou here me hast destroyed entierlie,
 And perdurably dampned to mynde,
 But iesu crist, the cheritable god hye,
 The trew, the swete, the pitiful, of mercy 285 unless Christ will
 Of my very soule lust to haue pyte!" have pity on him.
 And with that Raymound zownyng don gan fle, 287 Hereupon he
 swoons,
- A**nd wel nye an hour ryght so gan hym hold 288 and does not come
 Without spech or loke; after cam agayne,
 Ther begynnyng his sorowes manyfold.
 When he rewardyd hys lord souerayne,
 Whiche ther dede-cold lay, sore hym gan complayne,
 Rewfully sayng with scrychyng vois hie,
 "Come, deth! tarye noght, anon let me dye! 294 Again regarding
 his lord, he in-
 vokes death,
- C**omyng me to take, for time now it is; 295 [Fol. 11]
 For loste haue I here both soule and bodye;
 My souerayne lorde that dede here lith thys,
 PARTENAY. C
 for that his lord
 is slain by his
 misdeed.

- He would commit suicide, but that it is against providence. By my grete mysdede here hym slayn haue I.
Deth, come to me ! season is trulye ; 299
Come forth here anon, or I shal me sle ;
But god shold me sle, I shold noght so me. 301
- God would not that any should despair ; **G**od wold noght, which is our chef fader hye, 302
That any cristyn in dispeir be shold ;
But the hour coursed that born was worly,
Or that wreched lyf so long leuyng hold.
Better had me be dede-born here vnfold, 306
For then had I noght dampned ne lost be.
Alas ! my lord cousyn, gentile and fre, 308
- yet it had been better for him to have been born dead. **L**Esse worth am I then any sarysyne, 309
Whiche is in beleue of sory mahound ! ”
Ther leping vp into hys sadel fine,
More lenger ne rest he ther that stound,
The body of hys lord rest¹ in that ground, 313
A sory man was thorought the wode gan ride,
With wofull malice destrussed that tyde ; 315
- Leaping again into his saddle,
he leaves the body, and rides away from the spot,
leaving the bridle-reins loose. **T**he brydell-rayne lefte, at large let it go ; 316
hym-selfe² tormented and cursid ful sore,
Vnnethes for-bare hym-selfe to sle tho,
Ful ofte hys colour changing euermore,
he had non end of his dolorous (.) store. 320
- Thus rode he along lamentably, In thys estate rode lamentabillye,
Tyll he Approched, certes, sodenlye 322
- [Fol. 11 b.]
till he approached suddenly
the fountain of Thirsty Gladness,
said to be of fairy origin.
The horse chooses his path at will, **T**he fontayn and well of thursty gladnesse, 323
(As said is, it came³ of the fayrie) ;
Thys wofull man apas streight ther-to gan dresse,
hys horse ches a path conueyng wightly,
Ouer all thys hors so went wylfully, 327
here and there ouer all where at hys lust wold,
For that he had lefte the rayne for to hold. 329

¹ left (?).² MS. “ fefte.”³ MS. “ canne.”

At thys said fontayn hys courser hym brought, 330 and thus brings
 So forth passing by ther tho apertlye ; him to the foun-
 Neuer ne reste, but was in other thought ; tain.
 hys coursere hyme bare forth fast and wyghtly ;
 For discomforted was he moche truly, 334 The rider is so
 That hys mynde was gone fro hym-self full ferre, distressed that he
 So that he ne saw Abowt, ferre ne nerre. 336 cannot look about
 him.

Uppon thys fontayn ther had verilie, 337 Beside the
 Which was right holsome, ful clere as crestal, fountain were
 Thre fair laydes of gret seignorie. three ladies of
 In hys forth-passyng saw non of thaim all, high degree.
 Such dolorous thoughtes to hym gan call. 341 He sees none of
 Then spak the moste gentillest of thaim thre, them ; but the
 The most goodlokest And iolyest to se ; 343 most good-look-
 ing and "jolliest"
 exclaims,

Sayng, " neuer saw, dais of my lyfe, 344 " I never, all
 Where it were gayn night or at morne erlie, the days of life,
 Gentil man to pass but had respectif saw a gentleman
 Afor ladies without saluz hye, pass ladies with-
 I wyll goo And speke with hym verilie." 348 out salutation."
 She vn-to him cam, taking by the rayn,
 After openly to hym said certayn— 350 She then seizes
 his rein,

" For goddis sake, man, shew the noght soo, 351 [Fol. 12]
 Which be descended of noble linage, and tells him
 Sin Afor vs thre ye apperen, lo ! that to go by
 And without worde say for to make passage, without a word
 It is noght the dede of gentil corage." 355 is not the deed
 of a gentle heart.
 he, whiche dolour hurt tho ful feruentlye,
 vpp sodenly lepte, perceyued thys ladye ; 357 Raymoñd
 suddenly per-
 ceives her,

Ther he trowed that fantesie it were, 358 and thinks it is
 Where he slepte or wakyd wel knew he noght ; all the effect of
 A dede mannys colour that tyme had he there, his imagination,
 and knows not
 whether he is
 awake or asleep.

He returns her
no answer.

To hir non answer at that season brought,
Noght intended here for sorow in thought, 362
But musing ful fast and was ryght penssife
As euer was man which that here bare life. 364

She asks him
why he will not
speak, and

Thys fayr layde toke her tho to speke, 365
Anon ful hiely sayd she hym vnto,
“how, Raymound, is thys, ye lust no word breke?

wishes to know
who taught him
such behaviour;

ho hath you taught that to a mayden so,
Or to A lady when ye se thaim, lo ! 369
That no word haue ne lust to say onlye?
Of it cometh repref and vilanye. 371

for that it is a
dishonour to him
that he thus
forces his heart
to be unnatural.

IN you all swetnesse And good curtesie 372
Shold byde and dwel with al honour sure ;
Here-on ye be dishonoured gretly

Raymond is
many times
astonied,

Which comyn be of so noble nature,
That your gentil hert put to disnature.” 376
Raymounde vnderstode, ther hir gan behold,
Sore astoned was times manyfold, 378

[Fol. 12 b.]
and, perceiuing
the human body
of this fair lady,
his heaviness of
heart troubles
him yet more.
Knowing not
whether he is
alive or dead, he
alights hastily,

When that he saw she hym held by rayne— 379
But when perceyued the humayn bodye
Of thys fair lady hym so to restrayne,
In whom gret beute was preynted freshlye,
Moche the more troubled his noysauce heuye, 383
That he wiste not where he were quicke or dede ;
Fro hors fill down vppon the grasse in-dede. 385

and says, “Most
gracious image,

After hys¹ sayd, “moste gracyous ymage, 386
Soueran layde of gret beute hye,

pardon me,
sweet thing!
My heart is heavy
with misfortune;

With whome to compare non hath Advantage,
Pardon me, swet thyng, for goddys mercye ;
With sorowes I haue the hert ful heuye 390

¹ thys (?).

- By ouermocher meruelous auenture ;
By my faith, lady, I will you ensure 392
- That in such astate wher-on that I was, 393
I remembred noght what I owght to do ;
So moche sorow and care me doth enbras,
Truly more than man can say you vn-to.
For-soth I noght you perceyued no wyse, lo ! 397
But, noble lady, you beseche and pray
Me vnto perdon so it please you may." 399
- Ther thys lady spake, "Raymound !" answeyng, 400
"I am ful sorye of your gret noysance."
When Raymounde knew sche hym ther namyng,
A litell began to muse that instance.
"Lady, of my name ye haue conysance, 404
Where-of I am Ameruelled gretlye ;
By my feith, I know noght your name redilye.¹ 406
- You named but 407
Wher that perceyue so full huge beute,
hyt causeth me to beleue verilie
That I schuld by you wel assured be,
And that I shal yut wel recouer² me, 411
By you to acquire som good recomfort
Off my huge sorow is my dyscomfort. 413
- For of so fair A swete creature 414
Approcheth non ille, but ay al goodnesse ;
Fro you may noght come but good auenture,
I beleue noght that terrene boody sothlesse
Of lusty beute may haue such richesse, 418
So moche of swetnesse, so moche of connyng
As in your gentil body is beryng." 420

I remembered
not what I ought
to do.

I perceived you
not ;

pray, pardon me."

She addresses
him by name :

at which he is
much astonished ;

'[Fol. 13]'
but, reassured by
her beauty, he
trusts that he will
soon recover
himself ;

since only good-
ness can come
from so sweet a
creature.

He cannot believe
that an earthly
body can have so
much sweetness.

¹ Here follows the catch-word—"you named but." See note.

² MS. "ye'couer," the tail of the *y* being partly erased.

She then recounts
to him all he has
been doing,
explaining that
she is well
acquainted with
all that has
happened.

“Raymounde, I perceyue how it goth now;” 421
She declared hym ther all hys doying,
Ther hym gan rehers euerydele how,
As Aboue is said al hym declaring.
Then Raymounde feruently reioyng, 425
How-be-lyt he moche astoned tho was
How hys name myght know; strange to hym
pat cas. 427

She then declares
that all the good
fortune which
his lord pre-
dicted for him
will be brought
about if he will
attend to what
she says.

Then thys lady said of gentil bodye, 428
“Raymounde, my good loue, vnderstandeth me,
Al that whiche your lord said youe varilye
By wordes myn fullyllyd shal be,
Truly and forsoth, yf so do wil ye 432
Ryght As I shal here vnto you rehers,
Things to non hurt, sondry and diuers, 434

[Fol. 13 b.]

Unto the plesire of our lorde an hie, 435
And of his glorius moder also.”

Yet more assured,
he gladly pro-
mises to do all her
commandments.

When Raymounde vnderstode she spake trulye,
Stedfastly hym toke the more surer to,
Ther hir saing, “swete gentill lady tho, 439
I schall put my hert And my holy¹ entent
To your plesour do your commaundement. 441

Yet he wishes
to know how
she knows his
name and cir-
cumstances.

But certes, lady, I may no wyse tarie 442
That you me² demaunde the trouth and verite,
How ye myght my name knowen verilie,
And how thys dede know any wyse may ye
That by my fortune and mischef fil to me, 446
As wherthorugh I haue deserued deth full wel,
Wherfor that I haue desired deth cruell? 448

“Raymond,” she
said, “I counsel
you not to be
astonished.

“Raymounde, you counsel, Astoned be noght,” 449
Asaid thys lady, “for god shal you ayd;

¹ hole (?). See l. 482.

² read *ne*; see note.

- yf ye will, moche more to you shall be brought
Of wordly goodes then your lorde you said,
Whiche in the forest dede-colde light this braid. 453
I wyll in no wyse you to discomfort,
I shall you socour, helpe, ayd, and comfort. 455
- Y** Am, after god, your nexst frende trulye, 456
Wordly catell I-now shall be brought.
But loke ye me truste And beleue verilie,
And dubte ye no-thing of goddys part am noght,
I noght beleue in hys vertues wrought; 460
yut I you promise that I do beleue
Ryght As holy Catholike feith doth yeue. 462
- E**uery Article beleue I and hold 463
Of the holy feith catholike named,
That god, vs to saue, of the virgyn unfold
Was born without wemme in hir attamed;
Dethe endured; third day rose vnshamed; 467
After ascended vnto heuenys hie,
Ther verray man And varray god trulye; 469
- A**nd is in ryght syde of hys fader hie. 470
Raymound, vnderstand here now me vnto,
Firmely all beleue without doubte anye.
Now ye here beleue that sagely ye do,
And ye shall rise vp, to such honour go,
That more shal ye be As of hie parage
Then any man, lo! As of your linAge." 476
- T**hen Raymound musyd and gan aduertise 477
The wordes ther said, and hertly ioyed tho;
A litel his colour cam, vnto deuise,
And moche amendyd of sorow and care to,
When he answerd, "lady, I'shal do 481
With all my hole hert, without withsaing,
Al that which ye wyll be me commaunding." 483
- You shall be yet
more successful
than your dead
lord predicted.
- but you must
trust to me en-
tirely.
- Do not doubt-
ingly think that
I am not on God's
side;
- [Fol. 14]
for I hold every
article of the
Catholic faith;
viz., that God was
born of a spotless
virgin, endured
death, rose the
third day, and
ascended into
heaven,
- and is at the
right hand of the
Father.
- Trust me entirely,
and you shall
attain to great
honour.'
- Raymond, much
amended of his
care and sorrow,
- promises to do
what she com-
mands without
gainsaying.

"Swear then
to me," she said,
"at this time, that
you will marry
me,

and that you will
never inquire
as to where I go
on a Saturday;

"Raymounde," she said tho, "this is ful wel said ;
Now vnderstandeth me without gayn-sayng,
To god and his sayntes me swere now thys braid,
That in mariage me wil be taking,¹

And that neuer, dais of your leuing, 488

For no worde that man wyl vnto you say,
ye shall not enquire of me the saturday, 490

[Fol. 14 b.]

NE after me cerche in no wise ye do, 491
Neither to what part drawith my body,

Ne what I will do, ne to what place go ;

and I promise, in
return, to go to
no ill place, but
always to labour
that day on your
behalf."

Als I schall you swere For trouth uerilie, 495
To non ille place go ne will certaynlie,

But alwaies to labour that iournay,
Puttyng my hole hert, strength, mynde, and
thought (.) ay 497

To your honour, hawse, and encrese also ; 498
Neuer shal ye se me forsworn no day."

Raymond swears,
but was, in the
sequel, forsworn,
to his great mis-
fortune.

Raymounde wolde swere and ther hys othe gan do,

But att end forsworn was he, is no nay ; 502
To ful gret myschef it cam hym alway,

For that hire couenaunt brake and noght gan hold.
"Raymounde," sche sayd, "understande this told ;

She tells him that
if he breake the
compact, he will
lose her ;

If thys poyntement hold noght in thys deuise, 505
ye shall me lese, be therof certane,

Without sight of me any maner wise ;

and that himself
and his heirs will
lose their lands.

After that, ye and al your hoires playn 509
Shal begin to fall, and thaim-selfe distayn

Off landes, honoures, and heritages ;
Then doloures shall be in their corage[s]. 511

¹ MS. "betaking."

- R**aymonde swere agayn secundarilie,
That neuer no day forsworne wolde he be.
(Alas ! thys dolent man said not soth trulie,
For gret heuinesse After suffred he,
Hys cherefull lady lost of nicete !)
At thys present time of it speke no more,
Vnto my purpos tōrn shall I therefore.
- 512 Raymond swears
a second time ;

but alas ! this
miserable man
spake not the
truth.
- 516

518
- “**R**Aymounde,” she said, “ye most to court go,
And me this not werne here in no cas,
To peyters boldly go ye now vnto,
Say wel and playnly when ye come aplas,
If any you demaunde, hie other bas,¹
Of your said lord ne say ye no thyng
But that in the wode ye lost hym huntynge ;
- 519 [Fol. 15.]
“Raymond,” said
she, “you must
go to Poitiers,

523

525 and give out that
you lost your lord
in the wood while
hunting,
- A**nd that longe ye gan After hym Abyde,
Cerching, enqueriug in wodes ramage,
A wilde swine chasing at that houred (.) tyde.
Many other to court shall do make passage,
Whiche equipollent schall say of corage,
After shall your lord truly shall² ther be founde,
And to peyters brought openly that stounde.
- 526 and that you
sought for him a
long while unsuc-
cessfully.
- 530

532 At last he will
be found, and
brought to
Poitiers,
- T**hen gret heuinesse ther shall sone Awake,
With euery men huge sorow shall arise ;
Full dolorous wo this lady will take,
And with hir other gentil wemmen of price ;
His children lamenting in wofull wise.
Thaim aid and counsell ryght auysilye
yn that belongeth to hys obsequye.
- 533 when his wife and
children will
lament in woful
wise.
- 537

539 You must counsel
them concerning
his burial,
- L**oke ye thaim counsell hie and lowe that hour,
For a man³ shold do A grete lorde vnto
his funerall obsequye with gret honour,
- 540 and wear black as
others do ; and
when at last the
time shall come

¹ MS. “has.” ² This word is redundant. ³ MS. “aman.”

Cloth you ther in blakke As other ther doo.

When that passyd is ther dolour and wo, 544

By processe of tyme at leyser and space,

When weping dais an end do purchase, 546

[Fol. 15 b.]
for his heir to
receive the earl-
dom,

And that the enheritour ther shall be 547

The erldom of peyters resceyued to,

And hys homage take of men of contre,

Of thys lord demaunde A yefte or ye go

For your guerdon of seruise ye haue doo 551

To the Erle last past in the same place ;

Wher þe present be, so myght please his grace, 553

beg him to give
you so much land
as may be en-
closed by a hart's
skin, and cause
deeds of the gift
to be duly exe-
cuted;

So moche os¹ A hert-skyn myght aboute enclose, 554

In seneral to shytte wodes and contre.

hit will not you wern but graunt, I suppose ;

Dedes therof make the cause ther-on be,

Off the lordes yifte the encheson may se, 558

Wher-for he it yaf, And for wat reason ;

After sette day of lyuerey and season, 560

and, when you
have the deeds
ready, depart ;
and go on till you
see a man carry-
ing a large hart's
skin, which buy
at his own price.

That men deliuer you possession ; 561

And when your letters ye haue all redy,

Thens ye depart, a litell² way shal gon,

ye shal se A man come gayn you hastilie,

The hertis skyn bring gret and large to eye. 565

By ye that skyn, I you gyf in charge,

What-someuere cost, spare not, yif ye large. 567

Next cut the skin
into small thonge,
very narrow, and
tie them up into
a bundle,

After cutte that pece into thwanges smal, 568

lete it not be brode, but narow As may be,

Enuiron the skyn rounde Aboute cut all

As narew as may perceyue it to se,

As long As the skyn endure see may ye ; 572

After ther-of A fardell do ye make,

And afterwarde to your repair you take, 574

¹ for as ; cf. Glossary.

² MS. "alitell."

A Nd lete it noght be lefte¹ to do, certain, 575 [Fol. 16.]
 But men deliuiere to yow your lande sad
 Aboute this clere well and ful fair fontain.
 Now complaineth noght of your huge pain had,
 For ye shal finde² this place fourged and made 579
 In all places ryght As it liketh me,
 Where that your lande appere shall to se. 581

I f the thanges be more lenger certain 582 But if the thongs
 then the rowndnesse made which that ye finde shall,
 Again the ualey do it to remayn
 The rennyng of thys fantain clere with-all,
 Where ye shall take the dwellyng to fall 586
 The thwanges lenght after to ende had.
 Do thys hardily, be no-thing Adrad, 588

A Nd when that ye be Assuryd of all, 589 When assured at
 As at peiters when ye come only,
 Take your leue and return that enterual,
 For in thys said place shal ye verily,
 At wat tym ye come, fynde me certainly. 593
 luke ye me hold trew perfecte couenaunt."
 "lady," said Raymound at that instaunt, 595

"I shall plainly do your commaundement, 596 Raymond pro-
 What-someuer cost it for to cheue,
 Sin it pleassith yow me it commaunde to hent."
 Fro hir depertyd, taking fair hys leue,
 This thing takith on ioyusly in breue, 600 and, greatly
 To peyters he cam in the morow-tyde;
 Many demaunded wher ther lord gan bide. 602 rejoiced, returns
 to Poltiers,

Raymounde Answard, "yusterday hym lost 603 [Fol. 16 b.]
 vppon hys coursere³ which bare hym swyftly ;
 where he gives
 out that he had
 lost his lord,

¹ MS. "lefte." ² MS. "finde." ³ MS. "courfere."

and knew not
what had become
of him.

That I was basshed, wist noght to what cost
he went, I cowde not mete *with* him truly ;
After I sewed As I myght full ny, 607
I hym lost when in-to woode gan draw,
Neuer after perceiued hym ne saw." 609

Thus Raymond
excused himself,
and accused not
the soul of the
homicide (him-
self) ; and none
ever thought of
accusing him.

Ryght thus Raymounde hym excusid tho, 610
the soule of the dede-doer accusyd noght ;
For neuer man ne had in hym beleue, lo !
That þe dede was by hym done and wrought,
Though that moch he were distrained *in* thought, 614
And that for the dede sighed ful ofte there.
But it behouith to yonge baculere¹ 616

Many now return
from hunting,
both high and
low.

Such A strange dede to couere secretly, 617
Wich vnto hym cam at that huntynge-chace.
Vnto his manoir comyn were many,
Which fro hunting were drawing to þat place,
As wel of gret As smal, both hye and bace, 621
Ni to Ramound drawing euermore.
Ther had was non but noyed wonder sore 623

There were none
but were sorely
annoyed

at not knowing
the truth, as to
where the earl
was that night
abiding.

At last his sor-
rowing wife and
children saw two
men approach,
bearing the body,

That thay myght noght the trouth perceiue and know,
Wher he that nyght² gan byd and remain.
Ful dolorous was his fair wyfe þat throw,
All wette *with* teres in hir visage plaine,
And ther children to ful harde gan complain ; 628
Tho A-ferrom saw to worthi men comyng,
Which the dede body sorily gan bring 630

[Fol. 17.]
which they had
found in the
woods, with the
dead boar lying
beside him.

Which in the wodes barainly ther founde, 631
Thys notable Erle whilom off renon ;
And thys foule swine besides hym that stounde.
Ther wepte burgesses And squiers manyon,

¹ MS. "baiulere."

² MS. "myght."

Ther wepte ladies And knightes echon, 635 All bewailed his death.
Ther wepte old, ther wepte yong peple all,
Thay wepte the deth of thys Erle roiall. 637

When that the Countesse of him had the sight, 638 His Countess
Ful dolorous wo hir hert gan attain, wrang her handis,
Here handes wrang, hir heere tare þis woful wyght, and tare her hair.
With wepyng teeres soroly gan complain ;
Ther wepte the sone, the doughter, both twain ; 642
Ther wepte the gentile that Raymonde men call, Raymond joins
Ther wep[t]e prestes, ther wepete Chanones all. in the general
mourning.

Through Peiters Euery man sorow lad, 645 Every one be-
Both tho gret and smal ful sore were weping, wailed his death,
Thys day can noght be saad the heuinesse mad, throughout the
Noght halfe the wofulnesse the cite hauing. town ;
Tho that this dede Erle were þer beholdyng, 649
Euery bewepete hys deth mornyngly,
Thys Erle beried ryght ful solempnely ; 651 and buried him
with all solemnity,

Ful nobley wele the almes yef and do ; 652 distributing alms,
Aboute hym gret waxe, fair store, and gret light. and burning great
Forsoth the burgesses of the cite tho store of wax.
Cast thys cursid swyne in A huge fire bright ;
The Barons of contre there had ech wyght. 656 The cursed boar
was cast into a
A man shold shortly the dole ouerpas, fire and burnt up.
When remedy non may be in the cas. 658

Raymounde Ful wel aqueinted hym that hour, 659 [Fol. 17 b.]
Ther many A persone of hym said, "a ! he Raymond hears
Felith sore in hert anguish and dolour ! many remarking
Of hys souerain lord had he such pite." his excessive
grief, which was
So he gan do in trouth and uerite, 663 indeed real.
As for to see hym gret pite it was,
His morning, his wailynge, his loking bas. 665

After the burial,
the barons busily
went to do
homage to the
new earl;

and Raymond
approached to
prefer his request.

After when that the obsequie was don, 666
The Barons faste went ful beselye,
To the nouel Erle homage hym do echon,
After the season and ¹ usage customlye.
Then Raymound drew hym forth to thys lorde hye,
his request to make after hys lady lore,
As she hym warned long tyme ther before, 672

He asks for as
much land, lying
near the fountain,
as a hart's skin
would enclose;

The lady of whom he had take leue to go. 673
"Honourous lord," he said, "bes[e]ch you yif me,
Ni to the Fontain of thursty gladnesse, lo!
Off wode, Roche, or ualey in that contree,
Be it medewes or arable (.) to see, 677
So moche as an hertis skin of grounde strech wold;
For noght wyll demaunde, ne in thys place shold,

and requires no
other payment.

Thing which that shold you be in cost gretly; 680
I require of you non other paiement
For my seruice done continually

The young earl
accedes, if it will
content his
barons.

Of your Fader, whos soule god haue and hent."
Thys yong Erle said, "I graunt all your entent, 684
So that it may please to my Baronage."
Then the Berons said *with* full fair langage, 686

[Fol. 18.]
The barons think
Raymond well
deserves it,

"Raymounde may full wel thys said yifte to haue,
(For he hath full wel deseruyd it certain,
His lord so seruyd), As hym lust to craue."

and the earl com-
mands the deeds
of gift to be duly
executed and
sealed.

"Then shal he it haue," Asaid thys Erle plain;
"hys dedes lete make his graunt to contain." 691
Deuised thay were passyng sotilly,
After the writyng sealed ful truly 693

¹ MS. "and and."

- With the gret seal¹ of thys Erle nouel, 694 It was sealed
Which curious was, fair, and moche of told ; both by the earl
The hys barons put to al-so well and the barons,
- There gret sealles to the dedys unfold ;
- The scripture deuysyd full wel to be-hold, 698 and the day fixed
Fourged and made of good ordinaunce, for its becoming
The day perfixst of the deliuerance. 700 of force.
- The morn a man certainly he found 701 In the morning,
Which A hertis skin broght hym there before, a courteous man
A ful curtois man hym it toke that stounde. brings him the
The skyn ful narew kerue thay euermore ; skin,
- His gyfte required after hys lady lore ; 705
- The Erle said, men him deliuer it shold, and the earl bids
Fro peiters partyd with gret raundon told, 707 men to deliver
him up his
possession.
- To Raymound hys ghyfte deliuerd this wyse ; 708 As soon as they
The Erle send peple to delyuer plain, come to the
Fulfillyng that which he gan promise. fountain, Ray-
mound produced
the skin, to their
great wonder,
- By that were comyn vnto the fantain,
- Streith Raymound thaim lad to þat place certain,
- Raymound drew hys skin ther forth vnto sight ; when they see
Of þat merueled strongly many A wight, 714 how narrowly it
is cut.
- When so narow corue thai gan it to se ; 715 [Fol. 18 b.]
- Vnknowin was thaim what that thai shold do.
- To men comyn were ther to that contre,
- Takyng ther thys skin coruen ful smal tho,
- Anon on A band put thay it vnto, 719 Two men then
approach, who
make the thongs
up into a bundle,
- A gret trusse ther-of making vp that stound.
- On ende to a pain thai had ther y-bound, 721 and bind one end
to a stake ;

¹ MS. "feal."

and enclose the
whole rock with
a part of the skin.

They again bind
an end to a stake,
and carry it down
the valley.

A stream sud-
denly wells up,

which had never
been seen before.

All wondered
when they saw
the immense tract
enclosed.

Raymond re-
ceives all the
neighbouring
country,

and news of it
is carried to
to the earl,

[Fol. 19.]
that the circuit
enclosed is two
miles about.

He also hears of
the two men, and
of the new stream.

The earl is aware
of the marvels
connected with
the fountain, and]

Al the Roche thay had enuironied, 722
But yut of the skyn ful gretly abode.

To A pane on ende strongly thai tied,
That other ende bare againe the ualey brode, 726
Ful litill it held As thay forth glode.

A-ferre fro thens A streme gan to rise,
Wher-of stoned were strongly to deuise ; 728

For neuer body had that water sain. 729
And when thay had all provided thys place,

Which the hertis skin compassed certain,
Seing the contre that comprehended was, 732

That supposyd noght that it wold purchas
Neither to enclose ther-of the moite,
Gret wonder and meruail had thay tho, perde, 735

So large contre the skyn gan comprehende. 736
Forsoth al the procincte ther gan hym take

Ryght As for that where charged and owte send,
As ther dedes mencion gan make.

To poiters toke way, And ther told and spake, 740

Thys said Erle vnto, al the gret meruail,
Whych neuer ne saw such like apparail. 742

FOr thys hertis skyn in circute gan hold, 743
To miles aboute gan it comprehende ;

And of tho men which it gan close hym told,
Also of the streme that thai saw at ende, 747
Rysing ther vp, again the ualey wende.

“ I beleue it was thing of the fairy,”
As said thys Erle, “ so god me saue only ! 749

FOr thys Raymound hath founden in þe way. 750
Ful ofte hath bene said that at that fontain,
Many merueles have sain ben A day,

Whiche men sodenly and ofte there haue sain ;
 And so to Raymounde myght it come certain, 754 rejoices at Ray-
 For of it wold [I] merily reioy." mond's luck.
 And raymounde tho spake that he had gret ioy,

For he was comyn hym to thanke hertly, 757
 Of hys notable gyfte ther hym thanking ;
 And he Answerd to hym, "graunt mercy !
 Of your goodnesse ye lust so be sayng.
 I wout nere what to me shal be comyng, 761
 But, if your lord wyll, good may com to me."
 So forth passyd till morn-day-lyght to se ; 763

Raymounde tho lepte vp hys coursere vppon, 764 Raymond rides
 To the fantain and wel of thrust gan to go, away to the
 Wher that hys lady founde beyng alon, fountain, and
 Which hym said, "my loue, welcome me vnto ! finds there the
 luke ye be wise, redy, wel thaught, lo ! 768 lady, who wel-
 And ye shall now haue for your good labour comes him.
 yut here-after gret worship and honour !" 770

A Non into A schapel made entre, 771 [Fol. 19 b.]
 Which thaim ny vnto ful redy ther found, They enter a
 knyghtes, ladies, And gentile wemmen fre, chapel, and find
 Clerkys, prelates, Squiers at that ground, there knyghts,
 Clothed, apparailled nobylly that stound ; 775 ladies, clerks,
 Raymounde meruelyd of it wonderly, prelates, and
 Of that peple which ther saw plainly. 777 squires, all nobly
 apparelled.

Unnethes he myght hym-selfen withold 778 He cannot refrain
 That he demaunded noght thys gentile body ; from asking her
 Thys lady had tho many in housold, about them.
 I-now hym semyng for to haue truly.
 "Neuer bash herof," said this faire lady, 782 She replies that
 "Thay ben al youres," ther commaundyng al he need not mar-
 hym for to resceiue for lorde principall ; 784 vel, for they are
 all his.
 PARTENAY. D

They humbly do
him reverence.

Also gan:thai do ryght As thai shold, 785
Ful humbly thay gan do hym reuerence ;

Raymond muses
within himself,

But raymounde in hert musid manyfold,
In hym-selfe said demurly in audience,

and hopes the end
may be as good as
the beginning.

“ Se here a noble gynnyng in presence ! 789
God yif that the ende therof be ful good ! ”
Thys lady hym resoned there he stood, 791

The lady tells him
he must take her
in marriage.

SAyng, “ ye Raymounde, what willen ye to do ? 792
Til that ye haue me had in mariage,
ye may noght the estat se ne know, lo !

Wherefor you counsel, puruey As the sage.”

Raymond declares
himself ready at
once ; but she
tells him that all
is not yet ready.

Raymounde said, “ I am redy to that passage.” 796
Thys lady hym said, “ we faute that we shold haue,
Raymond, all other wyse we moste do craue, 798

[Fol. 20]
He must bring
a number of wit-
nesses to the
marriage with
him, and come
again on the
Monday.

Iff we shall do to plesaunce honestly ; 799
you behouith to trauel and haue pain
So that peple ye moste bryng redy,
Which of thys acte may haue conisaunce plain.
haue no point of doubt, but therof be fain, 803
I-now of all good here schal fynd by grace,
But warde that ye be a monday in thys place.” 805

Raymond returns
to Poitiers, and
comes into the
presence of the
earl.

RAymounde answerd to hir curtoisly, 806
“ Forsoth I shal do your commaundement.”
Fro thens departed Raymounde hastily,
Vppon hys courser retorned and went,
To poiters he cam, ther discending, hent 810
And anon forth went, taried ne bode,
Toward the erle of peiters where he stode. 812

He salutes the
earl, and says he
feels that he
ought not to hide
anything from

RAymound wel cowde salute such estat, 813
Without colour changing or muable,
To hym humbled formally that dat,

- There declarid his lord honourable, 816 him, but to declare to him all things.
- "My lord," said Raymound *with* contenance stable,
 "I ought ne shold my dede be couering,
 To you al declare And certefying ; 819
- I shal noght you lye for no maner¹ wight, 820 He therefore confesses that he is to be married on Monday to a great lady,
 Maryed shal I be vppon monday ;
 To a gret lady that day berought plight,
 Ryght at the fontain of thurstes gladnesse ay ;
 Nothyng so loue ne likyng to my pay. 824 and beseeches him to come to the wedding.
 humbly you beseke at that day to be,
 And to bryng *with* you your peple and mayne ; 826
- Ryght gracyous lorde, to me honour do, 827 [Fol. 20 b.] He also hopes that the earl's mother will be present.
 And your gud moder wise and debonair,
 My ryght doubted and shereful lady to,
 Which is proclamed so noble lady fair."
 The Erle sayd, "I shal to that place repair, 831 The earl is willing to come, but wishes to know the lady's name,
 But afoure will you thys demaunde make, 833
 What is that lady which that ye shal take ?
- WArde you And beware ye tAke noght amis, 834 and warns him against marrying one of whom he knows nothing.
 knowith whens she is and of wat linage ;
 Say me, fair cosin, now what sho is,
 Thys day am redy to your mariage."
 "Sir, it may noght be for non auantage ; 838 Raymond asks him not to inquire further,
 More may noght enquere As of hir beyng,
 For ye may no more² of hir be knowyng ; 840
- You it suffisith I-now hyr to se." 841 for that it will suffice to see her. The earl marvels greatly at such conduct ;
 The Erle to hym said, "thys is gret meruell
 That ye take A wif vnknow what is sche,
 Neither haue knewlich of hir gouernail,
 Ne of hir kinrede ; strange is without fail !" 845

¹ MS. "nomaner."

² MS. "nomore."

but Raymond
says she is like a
king's daughter ;

" Sir," said, " I hir saw in so noble ray
As kinges doughter where fresh is and gay ; 847

and that a fairer
lady was never
seen.

A More fairer neuer sain with ey ; 848
Off hir linage enquired I no-thing ;

Where she be of¹ duk or of markois hy,
Forsoth I wyll hyr haue, she is me pleasyng."

The earl promises
to come, with his
mother and all
his barons.

Thys Erle said, " Raymounde, to you shal be comyng,
My moder also with all our barony." 853
Humbly Raymounde sayd, " my lord, graunt
mercy !" 854

[Fol. 21]
On the Monday,
the earl and his
mother, with
many attendants,
set out, wonder-
ing where they
will be lodged
and entertained,

THe monday cam men apparailled fast ; 855
Thys Erle Awakyd, rose vp ful erly,
Hys moder with hym brought, freshly on hyr cast
Full ryche Atire, besain ful womanly ;
Sondry ladies with knightes many ; 859
But moche on thaim toke to ful gret meruail,
How thay shold there loge, by what gouernail, 861

though they need
not have won-
dered, as all was
ready.

When thay approched ny to thys fantain. 862
But therof certes nedid noght haue doute,
All redy was made A place ful solain.

Riding on, they
at last approach
the rock.

The wayes And pathes so rode thay aboute
That thay approched Columbere touz al-oute, 866
And ouer that went ryding the contre,
Hilles, wodes passyd, the roche might se ; 868

There they found
pavilions pitched
beside a valley,
where flowed the
new stream.

TEntes And paulons streght and pight freshly 869
Besyde a ualey,² enmyddes a plain ;
The streme besydes, the fontain ful ny,
Which nouelly was vp-risen and sain ;
Euery man meruellyd of it certain, 873
Ful wel thay sad knew it the fayry was.
Into the medewes thay beheld apase 875

¹ MS. "fo." Sec note.

² MS. "aualley."

- T**Entes, paulions freshly wrought and good, 876 They heard sweet
 Doucet songes hurde of briddes enuiron, songs of birds ;
 Whych meryly chirmed in the grene wod ;
 Vppon the ryn saw A wyld wood anon, and saw a wild
 Where gret peple were to-geders manyon ; 880 wood with many
 And in there kechins say thay gret smoke to ; people ;
 As tham semyd, was A ful huge hoost thoo. 882 also several kit-
 chens, with much
 smoke.
ANd thay saw comyng toward thaim anon 883 [Fol. 21 b.]
 Ther nombred aboute knightis ful sixty, Next they saw
 yong, strong, lusti, fers, and ful lyght echon, coming about 60
 I-horsed ful wel, armed nobilly ; knights, well
 (hyt nedith not demaunde of it truly) ; 887 horsed and armed,
 The noble Erle demaunde of peiters, who asked for the
 And thay hem shewed sondry and dyuers, 889 earl, whom many
 pointed out to
 them.
Off whom demaunded had the trowth to know. 890 The knights ride
 Raymounde thai anon gan se and behold up to the earl,
 In the said Erles company so grow, and salute him
 Which ther ful iocunde tales gan unfold. humbly.
 humbly to the Erle cam thes knightes bold, 894
 And hym ther salute ful debonerly.
 The Erle ther saluz yilding ryght goodly 896 The earl returns
 their salute,
UNto euery man, without other abode, 897 yielding to every
 After that to hym it shold appartain man the respect
 For that place whens that he cam and rode, due to him, ac-
 Both to gret and smal menal persones sain, cording to the
 Ful wel knew to eche ther saluz yild plain ; 901 place whence each
 came. .
 And thay which ne wold haue no point of blame, The knights say
 To hym cam and said worshipfully the same :— to him
“That fair Melusine hym thanked hertly 904 that the fair
 Of that pleased hym to com to ther feste ; Melusine thanks
 And that she had charged thaim verily, him heartily,
 you wel for to loge yaf in charge and hest.”

and that due
lodging was pro-
vided for his
retinue.

Thys Erle thaim said, to plesire in the beste, 908
“For here I perceiue ful fayre ordinaunce.”
Nobley thay loged thys Erle that instaunce. 910

[Fol. 22]
The coursers were
well lodged, and
provided with
rack and manger.

A Ful fair paulion thay hym gan take, 911
Ther coursers loged passing inly wel,
Both rekke and manger at their ease gau make,
Insyde tentes ful fair eueridel.
Gret ther labour was wherfor atimed wel. 915

The Countess was
received in a
golden chamber,

The Countesse resceiued in that housold
In-to a chambre freshly bete with gold, 917

where many
ladies welcomed
her.

Which men pight And streight vppon the fontain ;
Many ladyes, ful of gret beute,
Went to a company with the Countesse plain,
Ech welcomyng hir after ther degre.
Al meruelyd there thys ryche sight to se, 922
Als of the noblenesse that ey myght purchases,
Neuer trowed se so fair in no place. 924

All marvelled at
so rich a sight.

Raymounde with the Erle that tyme logid was. 925
Of ther fair chapel doubt therof had non,
Wel apparailled was it, hie and bas,
With riche iewelless stuffed manyon ;
What wold ye shold say? fresh was enuiron. 929
The ful noble Erle And thys fair countesse
The espouse demaundyd thay expresse. 931

The chapel was
well apparellid,
high and low, and
stuffed with rich
jewels.

The earl and
countess demand
the bride.

Melusine enters
the chapel, freshly
attired, and look-
ing, not human,
but angelic.

Ther men anon forth aplace hir brought, 932
Fair melusine, enmyddes the chapel ;
Thys mayden ful fair As cowde bene I-thought,
Freshly atired rychely and ful wel,
That al hir saw preised thys damycel, 936
Sayng, “it was noght no humayn body lyke,
But more better semed a thyng angell-lyke.” 938

- T**Hen thys said Erle applied vnto
 Thys fair melusine to resceiue sothlesse,
 And of that ful wel his deuoir gan do,
 And ful wel or better the noble countesse ;
 Al tho bothe that hour weren at that messe. 939 [Fol. 22 b.]
 In that place was had ful gret mynstracy ; The earl and
 Both hye and bas instrumentes sondry ; countess duly
 receive her.
- A**Nd fro¹ that constantinople vnto, 943
 In no place was so noble a feste made ; Minstreley is
 Al the wodes range merily sounding tho, heard, both of
 ther was no persone² that present tyme hade, high and bass
 But that "merueles," said, "I se ful sad ; instruments. 945
 Neuer humain ey saw to it egal !" Never was so
 With great ioy made thys matrimonial. 946 noble a feast.
- A**fter thys messe don, taken haue the way ;
 The Erle the espouse courtoisly forth lad ;
 In that other part, A prince of contray
 In-to the chef hal thys fair mayden had,
 Which noble peple held that day ful glad ;
 Ther mete al redy, vnto wash thay went ;
 After sette As was most conuenient. 950
 The woods rang
 merrily, and all
 agreed that hu-
 man eye had
 never seen the
 like of it.
- A**fter thys messe don, taken haue the way ; 952
 The Erle the espouse courtoisly forth lad ;
 In that other part, A prince of contray
 In-to the chef hal thys fair mayden had,
 Which noble peple held that day ful glad ;
 Ther mete al redy, vnto wash thay went ;
 After sette As was most conuenient. 953
 The mass done,
 the earl led forth
 the bride, and a
 prince conducted
 her to the chief
 hall.
- B**esides thys maiden thys noble Erle sate, 957
 The gentile countesse next sette hym vnto,
 After A gret lord of contre that date,
 Which for gret honour worshipped was so.
 Raymounde tho sate with other knightes mo.
 The course tho brouth³ in with squiers many,
 Gret plente there had of deyntees sondry, 959
 The earl sat be-
 side the bride,
 and the countess
 next him.
- W**hich that apperid As thing infinite ;⁴ 960
 With wine of Angoy, And als of rochel tho
 Which wold eschawfe the braines appetite ; 964
 The courses were
 brought in by
 squires, including
 great plenty of
 dainties.
- W**hich that apperid As thing infinite ;⁴ 966
 With wine of Angoy, And als of rochel tho
 Which wold eschawfe the braines appetite ; 969
 [Fol. 23]
 There was wine
 of Anjou, and of
 Rochelle ;

¹ MS. "for."

² MS. "prefone."

³ brought (?).

⁴ MS. "infinite."

of Touraine and
Beaune;

Wine of Tourain, And of Bewme also,
Which iawne colour applied nocht vnto; 971

also Clarre
Romain and
Ypocras.

Clarre Romain, with doucet ypocras,
Thourght al the hal rynnnyng hye and bas. 973

Wine, moreover,
of Tours and
Dijon, of Auxerre
and Saint Jou-
in (?); of St.
Jean d'Angely,
and others.

Wine of Tourimz, and also of digon, 974
Wyne of Aucerre, of seint Jougon also;

Wyne of Seint Johan of Angely good won,
Of it ful many ther spake and tolde tho;

Wine of estables, of uiart¹ also; 978

After thaim cam the wyne basterd good,

Wine of seint pursain, and of ris hys brood. 980

Ouer all thes wines ther had the prise 981

The nouel osey of Dingenon,

Off all the wynes named to deuise.

Every one had
abundance, as
much as he asked
for, whether of
wine or meat.

Ther all peple preuilage had echon,

Euery in hys loge plente and fuson, 985

Euery of that which thai wold demaund

Off wynes and of uitailouns viand. 987

After this began
the jousting,
where Raymond
jousted mightly.

After thys diner, men to ioustes went; 988

Be-syde the fontain ful fair ioustes had;

But Raymound iousted strongly and feruent,

Certainly myghty ioustes² ther he made.

Thys Joustes dured till sonne went to glad. 992

Next they went to
vespers, and then
to supper.

After to euessong went euery wyght,

And sin to soper set were and dyght. 994

[Fol. 23 b.]
After supper came
the dancing.

When sopyd thay had at ther owne deuise, 995

Strongly thay daunced, ioying merily

Ful long that night in right gladsom wise.

And when that men saw time approched ny

Vnto go to bedde, And deperted fully, 999

Men made the espouse to depart fair.

Into A paulion made she A retrair, 1001

At last the bride
retired into a
costly pavilion,

¹ MS. "mart."

² MS. "iousted," roughly altered to "ioustes."

- Off whom moch cost the fourging And makyng ; 1002 portrayed with painted birds.
 Portreid it was with briddes freshly,
 Thys fair pailon rich was in seing ;
 Forth Anon the bede streight And made redy, Then they laide the bed, and made it ready.
 Which *with* floure-delise couerid was to ey. 1006
 Quicly cam Raymound, in the bedde¹ him laide
 By fair melusine, the suete doucet made. 1008
- Forsoth A Bisshop which that tyme ther was 1009 A bishop gave his benediction, "in nomine dei."
 Signed and blissid the bedde² holyly ;
 " In nomine dei " so said in that place ;
 After fro thens departed hastily,
 For the ceason late le[n]ger to tary. 1013
 The Erle hym *with*drew to hys pailon ; The earl and his mother also retired to their tents.
 And hys good moder, time was and ceason, 1015
- I Nto hir chambre goodly went to bed. 1016 All went to their allotted chambers,
 Euery man went to hys erbigage,
 But som all night dysportod And solas led, but some spent the whole night in singing and dancing.
 Singing, dauncing, disporting *with* longage ;
 Many fayr songis songe that compernage. 1020
 Off thys noble feste no more³ you will breke,
 Off gentile Raymound shall I to you speke, 1022
- Which⁴ with melusine lyght ful meryly, 1023 [Fol. 24]
 To whome ful suetly outred she and sayd,
 " Now vnderstandith, fayre swet loue, hertly,
 The Auentur comyn vnto vs thys braide
 That we togeders by grace here bene laid, 1027
 Ryght As mAn And wyffe after entent,
 And I Am her at your commaundement ; 1029 Melusine addresses Raymound, reminding him of his good fortune,
- B ut that oth most hold which first day me made. 1030 and of his oath lately made to her.
 I know full wele, when ye cam to pray

¹ MS. "beded." ² "body ;" French text, *Lc lit.*

³ MS. "nomore."

⁴ MS. "Whicht."

She tells him she
is aware how the
earl inquired
concerning her
lineage;

The Erle of peiters And knightes that he had
To come and to do you honour that day
That I shuld be maried to your pay, 1034
Be¹ you enquered full moch wat it was,
And of linage ye gan me purchas." 1036

HE answered hym to the point ful wel, 1037
"Myn owne verray loue, now doubt ye ryght
nogh't."

she proceeds to
tell him that his
good fortune will

"ye sall be moste best fortun'd to tell,
So ye couenaunt hold As of reson ought,
As euer was Any of your linage brought, 1041
Hou-someuer fortune that thay haue had,
So the contrary by you be noght made. 1043

last as long as
he holds to his
covenant:
but that if he
breaks it, he will
suffer huge harm-
ful pains, and be
disinherited of all.

If it be, ye shall haue gretly to doo 1044
hughe noisaunt pannes with aduersite,
And desherite be wretchedly also
Of tennementes, landes, the beste to se;
It wyl be so And sertainly schal be." 1048
"Fayre swet lade," said, "I you plegg[e t]routh
myne,
Whyle I leue shal be, be it non m[align]e,² 1050

[Fol. 25 b.]³
He again swears
to be faithful,

FAlshed shall noght be our said couenaunt, 1051
Of which here beforne made haue I promesse;
And yut I wil you promit the same grant;"

giving her his
hand in pledge of
his sincerity.

hys hand vnto heres put in gentill wyse,
Makyng A gret oth As hert cowde deuise, 1055
That he wold it hold euer entirely.
Melusine hym hanswered swetly, 1057

Melusine cautions
him yet once
more, declaring

"Now, my swet loue, I say you feithfully, 1058
If ye be stedfaste and couenaunt hold,"⁴

¹ "He" (?).

² A piece near the corner of the page is here torn away.
³ See Note to l. 1050.

⁴ MS. "bold."

In good hour ye be here borne treuely ;
 kepe it truly, besech you manyfold ;
 For in my part fail shal I for no gold, 1062
 Off me haue ye had ful tru Assuraunce
 Which I shall hold ; no more say thys instaunce."

that she will
 never fail in her
 part of the cove-
 nant.

With clipping, kissing, that nyght gan do so, 1065
 That au fair¹ sone ther engendred was ;
 Vrien callyd at that tyme tho.
 Dedis and warkis such gan he purchas
 As in tyme shal hire the mater and cas. 1069
 Thys feste endured dais ful fiftene ;
 At ende to lordis yiftes gaf melusine, 1071

Their eldest son
 was named
 Urien, whose
 famous deeds will
 be told of here-
 after.

The feast con-
 cluded,

And to lades which that men brought 1072
 With thys roial and noble Countesse.
 Al said ther, "lord god ! what wyse is this wrought,
 Which that we se here present of rychesse ?
 Maried is he vnto gret hinesse !" 1076
 Raymounde of all moch ther preised was,
 No worldly man myght better in no cas. 1078

Melusine gives
 very rich presents
 to all, who won-
 der at her wealth
 and liberality.

After when it cam vnto departson, 1079
 Faire melusine went faste ther openyng
 A forcelet² wrought fresh of yuor³ bon ;
 A formelet,⁴ of gret ualure beyng,
 With presious stonis gernesshed that thyng, 1083
 With vertues perles ful many,
 To the countesse gaf it verra hertly, 1085

[Fol. 26]
 She opens an ivory
 casket, and draws
 from it a clasp
 garnished with
 precious stones,
 which she gives to
 the countess.

Which of that iewel she ful gret ioy had. 1086
 Thens deperted the Erle and hys maine,
 Which were ful noble peple, good and sad,

The earl and his
 people depart,

¹ MS. "an m fair."

² From Fr. *forceret*.

³ MS. "your."

⁴ "fermelet" (?).

Melusine taking
her leave of them.

The fair melusine hir leue take hath she
Of thys said countesse of ful hy degre 1090
By-forn al peple honourablylly,
And of thys sayd Erle ryght semblablylly, 1092

Leaping up to
their saddles,
they ride away.

Raymond accom-
panies them to
the edge of the
forest.

Off lades And of maydens all. 1093
Thai leaping vp ther saddelles unto,
Openly ther-thens went that enternal ;
But gentill Raymound conueied tham so,
With peple of estat Acompained tho, 1097
With hym wold not haue creature Afoote,
Noght passyng Columberes woodes foote. 1099

At leave-taking,
the earl would
fain have asked
Raymond who
Melusine is, but
durst not.

Raymond, seated
on a courser,

Raymounde of thys Erle ther hys leue gan take, 1100
But the Erle drust noght, And ful fayn wold,
Ryght gladly hym A demaunde to make,
Off fair melusine, what she was, tel shold ;
Ful moch he thought, but yut hys pes gan hold ; 1104
Fere of displeaunce of Raymound any wyse.
On A coursere sate ful fair to deuyse, 1106

[Fol. 26 b.]
takes his leave of
the earl, and re-
turns to Melusine,
who receives him
joyously.

At the end of
eight days, all the
trees in the wood
were uprooted

Off thys Erle toke leue ; after gan retorne 1107
Streight vnto hys wyf kyssyng hir swetly,
And thought in hert ther vnto sogorn,
Which hym resceiued ryght ful ioyously.
Er that eight dais were ended fully, 1111
Al the wodys were roted up and gon ;
Of laborers had plente and fuson, 1113

by labourers of an
unknown nation.

They made
hideously deep
ditches,

NO man knew whens was, ne of what nacion ; 1114
Ful gret diches made, ryght huge and profounde,
Ful hiduous was to behold adon ;
No cause had thai dismaing thaim no stound,
Neither no deffaute in þe pament found, 1118

- Euery day had ther money and argent,
The laborers were the more diligent. 1120 and were diligent,
finding them-
selves well paid.
- The fundementes made thai right profounde,
(Ful wel know may be if y myssay, lo!) 1121 They made deep
foundations,
Fair melusine was deuiser of that ground,
And of werke also lyke as it was do.
Vppon the quicke Roche thay it sett tho; 1125 building a castle
upon the live rock
according to
Melusine's plan.
The fyrste stones to put thay, and made 1127
In litell of tyme; Masons I-now had.
- The walles hye deuised she echon, 1128 There were two
strong towers
with a huge
dungeon;
Wel founded was vppon the said uayley;
Too strong toures made *with* a huge dongun,
And Enuiron an hy *with* wardes strong that day.
Of it meruelyd strongly the contray, 1132 insomuch that
all the country
marvelled.
hou ful sone men made this said strong repair.
And when thys castell was bastiled fair,¹ 1134
- Thys swete melusine saw it full fair tho, 1135 [Fol. 27]
After hir ryght name gan it she Baptise;
Off hir name she hath taken a part, lo!
lusignen to name yaf after hir deuise,
yut is oueral named in that wise; 1139 Melusine bap-
tized the castle
after the latter
part of her own
name, calling it
Lusignen.
Many bare that name, it aboute gan cry,
And yut is ryght and cried was suerly; 1141
- NOght-withstandyng the good kyng Ciprian 1142
hit cried lusignen euer in his cry,
As the history seith to euery man
Off whom after shal do make memory.
Melusigne is As moche to say truly, 1146 The meaning of
Melusine is, "no
marvels are lack-
ing," she being a
woman *A-per-se*.
Ryght As ho seith, merueles fauti[t]h non;
She was A woman A-per-se, alon. 1148

¹ At the bottom of the page is the catchword—This swet
melusine faw.

When this castle
was built, high
walls and all,

people wondered
how it had been
finished so soon.

Melusine bare a
son, named Urien,
whose visage was
very short and
broad, and who
had one eye red,
the other gray ;

[Fol. 27 b.]
also a huge month
and great nostrils ;

yet well made as
regarded his legs,
arms, and feet.

After that she
made a city,

with high walls
and towers,

well provided
with loopholes.

YE may se here A comfort meruelous, 1149
Moche more then other strange auenture.
Wel was A-cheued this castel benteuous,
Al A-boute reised wonder hy wallure.
Euery man said it was A huge dede sure, 1153
That thys said castel was so sone made ;
The peple wondred and gret meruel had. 1155

Thys fair melusine here in hir tyme bare ; 1156
At nyne monthes ende childed she A sone,
vrien named, the soth to declare,¹
Which that after was of ful gret renone ;
But hys uisage was strange to uision, 1160
For it was full short And large in trauers ;
On ey was rede, Another grey dyuers. 1162

EVery man myght se it openly, 1163
Huge mouth And large gret nostrelles also ;
neuer man sain non to hym egally ;
But of body was inly wele made tho,
Off legges, of Armes, of feete therto, 1167
In it not failed thing thouchyng nature,
And at the ful made vnto hys stature. 1169

After that tyme made she ful huge honoures, 1170
Fourged the brought in mounst of bew-repair,
The walles bild hye, and als tours,
The goinges and comynges wroughten fair,
All couered and made, non might ben gair ; 1174
At louers, lowpes, Archers had plente,
To cAst, draw, and shete, the diffence to be, 1176

That non wordly man myght no wyse it take ; 1177
So strong *with* peple Acompanyed was,

¹ "Vryen" is here scrawled in the margin in a later hand.

- That strenght ful strong *with* peple gan make,
 The diches profunde large brede gan purchas,
 With this toure couerid hye and bas ; 1181
 The yates Iumelles, mighty and strong,
 To sain the trouth, ful large were and long. 1183
- A**twixst the borough and thys strenght myghtly 1184
 A place ther fourged meruelously strong,
 The toure trompe som callyd it daily,
 In lusignen town so named tham among ;
 For Sarisins trompers tho were put ful long, 1188
 To ende this said toure thay sold kepe and ward,
 And al enuiron aboute to rewarde 1190
- T**hat peple noght approch neither to com ny, 1191
 But tho of that strenght shold it know and se.
 That yere childed she the secunde sonne truly,
 Oede¹ named ; a fair semblant had he,
 As shynyng fire his uisage semyng be, 1195
 With wonder rednesse so resplendising ;
 his membres ful fair formid in makyng ; 1197
- I**N that same yere made that lady fair 1198
 The castel and brought which men callen mel,
 Vauuant and meruant made she, non gair,
 The tour of seint Messent after made ful wel ;
 The Borugh fourged, the abbey gan echdel, 1202
 Where pat our lady is serued alway ;
 And After the town of noble partenay. 1204
- A**Nd Als the castel fourged she roial, 1205
 With good lime and stone freshly vnto sight,
 Toures, torettes, pinacles, and harde wall ;
 The craftismen wrought As tho perfight.

The ditches were
of great breadth,

and the gates
large and long.

Between the town
and the fort was
made a strong
tower, called
"Trompe ;"

for it was gar-
risoned with
Saracen trumpet-
ers.

[Fol. 28]

The second year
Melusine bare a
son named Oede,
who had a face
as shining fire,
resplendent with
redness.

That year she
made the castle
and town named
Mel,

and some others,
including Par-
thenay.

She also made the
castle of Parthe-
nay with good
lime and stone,
towers, turrets,
pinacles, and
wall.

¹ Oede is also in the margin, written in the later hand.

By that, Raymound was doubted of ech wight, 1209
 Into gret honour risen is A-hy,
 And worshipped is in ech company. 1211

Her third son
 was named Guy,
 who was of great
 beauty, saving
 that he had one
 eye a little lower
 than the other.

After she had the third son fair withall ; 1212
 A more fairer neuer say[n] with ey,
 Off beute ynow vnto him gan fal,
 hit cowde noght ben withsaid certainly ;
 Sauyng þat on ey had he more basly 1216
 Then þat other a litel¹ ther semyng,
 Men callyd hym Guy, which doubted no-thing.²

[Fol. 28 b.]
 The same year
 was founded
 Rochelle ;

and soon after
 she built a great
 bridge, for which
 she received
 great praise.

Then that said same yere founded was Rochell, 1219
 In peito, by fair melusine this lady.
 After taried noght, but litel gan dwel,
 That A ful faire brigge made she vnto ey,
 (As ther cornicles³ shewith openly), 1223
 And in talmondois fourged was to se,
 Of which werke gret loos ther resceiued she. 1225

Her fourth son
 was Anthony,

who had on his
 jaw a mark like a
 hurt made by a
 lion.

Non after had she born in certain 1226
 The fourth sone, callyd and named Antony,⁴
 But in hys iaw bare A hurt ful of pain
 Off A lyon, which al hys life bare ful sighty ;
 To hym A gret stonyng was it verily, 1230
 To moche skin grow, A long seme cutting ;
 But hardy man was, noght drad ne fering. 1232

All these things
 are true.

And when it
 pleased our
 Sovereign Lord,
 this lady had
 the fifth son,

All Is trouth that I outre you or say, 1233
 Doubt ye noght of it that I you do tel ;
 In luxenbrough fair thyng made that day.
 Thys lady norished thes children ful wel 1236
 Till thay wer growyn ryght large, wyse, and fell ;
 And when it pleased our lord souerain,
 The fyfte child thys lady had again, 1239

¹ MS. "alitel." ² In the margin is *guy* in the later hand.

³ *Sic* in MS.

⁴ In the margin, *Arthuri*.

- Which in his hed had on ey and no mo, 1240 whose baptismal
Moste hieste set, wonderly to se. name was Ray-
hys name of Baptyme Raynold called tho;¹ nold. He had
his sight more clerer uerfyle then he but one eye,
Whiche to eyes had, for al their plente; 1244 but his sight was
Merueles gret gan do, after ye shal hire, clearer than that
So it may be hurde thys tale hole entire. 1246 of a person who
has two eyes, for
all their plenty.
- G Affrey with gret toth Afterwarde she bare,² 1247 [Fol. 29.]
Which growyn in mouth A wonder toth hade, The next was
Which without issued pasing gret and square; Geoffrey with the
he meruelous strong, of nothyng Adrad, great tooth, which
Blacke monkes he slay, to mortail deth lad; 1251 issued from his
Off mallers Abbay were thay, lef or loth, mouth, great and
Which causyd hys fader strongly to be wroth.³ square.
- A gain melusine wrothed he ful sore, 1254 It was he who
That to hir sayd moch repref and velony, slew the black
That hir company lost for euer-more; monks of Mall-
Which causid a fal fro hys Astat hy lezais abbey;
To hys gret repref, ryght to shamfully, 1258
As after wyl make declaracyon, and was the
Of al ther warkis the conclusyon. 1260 cause of all his
misfortunes.
- The seffe child Ffromont that tyme callyd was,⁴ 1261 The seventh son
Of stature of persone hie, gret, and long, was Fromont,
Inly wel formed, pulcrisous of face, who had a
Sage, subtile, wel taught, myghty and stronge; blemish on his
But vppon hys nosse such a tach had fong, 1265 nose.
Ryght As A wolfe's skyn row was it tho, It was rough as
Ful strange vnto sight to se hys nose soo. 1267 a wolf's skin, so
that his nose was
a strange sight.

¹ In the margin, *Raynold with on ye.*

² In the margin, *geffrey with the gret tothe.*

³ MS. "wroght."

⁴ In the margin, *Froymonde w[as] a monke, and w[as] burnd.*
PARTENAY.

The eighth son
was Horrible; he
had three eyes,

Then the eighteth sone borne of Melusin, 1268
Thre eyes hauyng on in front uisible;¹
Moche peple meruellyd and wonderd ther-in,
Thys child named and called horrible;
For hym vnto se was thyng terrible, 1272
And also he was of wycked doing,
In no goodnesse, thought but to do ille thing.

and was of a
very wicked
disposition.

[Fol. 29 b.]
We now return
to Uriens, who
was grown big,
mighty, strong,
and light; and
was fond of war.

Now retorn Again vnto vriens, 1275
Which of tham was the most auncion.
Eche shal declare by ordres diligens,
That men may perceiue dul am not ther-on.
vriens was A fair squier of person, 1279
Grown ful bygg, myghtly, stronge, and lyght,
Willing to know where by see and lande ryght.

He took ship at
Rochelle in a
barge,
with Guy and
much people;
intending to go
and acquire lands.

At Rochel toke A shippe ful fair and large, 1282
(And for she was long, wide, hole, sounde, entire,
I founde in scripture that it was A barge),
Sayng þat he wold go land to acquire,
So god hym warde fro perel to plesur; 1286
Moche peple with hym had, the barge ful was;
Ther Guy with hym went landes to purchas. 1288

They took with
them much silver
and gold,
and went to sea.

IN many places preuid was hardly 1289
Thys forsaiden Guy trully manyfold.
And to wel find ther peple only,
The fair melusine of siluer and gold
Gret plente toke, in tresour store to hold. 1293
Into see thay went, the sayl vp gan reise,
To cipresse contre ther shippes gan teise 1295

Soon came they
to Cyprus.

The king of
Cyprus was then
being besieged in

Streight to that place wher fair auenture funde. 1296
Of Cipresse the kyng tho beseged was

¹ In the margin, *horrible with iii yes.*

- In A myghty towne, which owyd that stound ;
 Named Famagouce¹ that cite and place ;
 Which, enfaimling, Almoste gan purchase 1300 which the Sultan
 The soudan bigly the town beseking, had nearly taken.
 With an hundred thousande men fightyng. 1302
- Off it knew vriens the uerite, 1303 [Fol. 30.]
 Off Famagouce¹ the Cite roial ;
 land toke, refershing² hym and hys maine.
 Forth-with declarid to hys peple all,
 And to thys Cite his peple gan cal, 1307
 Wher-vnto thai had An euyn streight way ;
 And beforen them his baner gan display, 1309
 Uriens lands,
 and, calling his
 men together,
 displays his
 banner.
- Whych of Fine silke was enbrauded freshly. 1310
 The Sarasins knew and saw ther comyng ;
 Als tho in cite knew them uerily,
 And ther ooste myght see ful fast herbiging,
 The peple of Armes ther dislogging. 1314
 Nye to the soudan thai re[n]gid tho were ;
 As to the Cipriens to sight semyng there, 1316
 Both Saracens
 and citizens see
 them coming.
 Soon were they
 arrayed against
 the Sultan.
- That the Soudan cast Away for feere to flee ; 1317
 That said to othir, "we most after sew."
 The kyng Armed was with fair Ermynee,
 hys swet doughter ful maydenly to vew,
 hyr honourous fader with harnois new ; 1321
 Ther hym conueing ryght ful curtoisly,
 Vnto hys courser ful debonairly. 1323
 The Sultan medi-
 tated flight ;
 which the king
 perceived, and
 was at once armed
 by Ermynee his
 daughter,
 and mounted
 his horse.
- Trompes, clarions, blew up fast sounding, 1324
 The kynges baner lifte, vp-reised hy ;
 Ther full gret affray was at ther mellyng,
 The paynymes saw the kyng cam freshly,
 Trumpe and
 clarions sound.
 A hard conflict
 ensues,

¹ MS. "Samagouce."

² MS. "referfhing ;" the *er* is blotted.

and many Christians
and Saracens are
slain.

Anon Assembled that full hastily ; 1328

Many A cristyn Approched deth in haste,
And Sarasins many to mortal deth caste. 1330

[Fol. 30 b.]

The sarisins were myghty, fers, And strong ; 1331
The Cipriens shewed ther strenght and myght.

The king is shot
with a poisoned
dart,

The king withe a dart¹ toxicat poison fong,
Such A malice stroke his foes hym dight
That in garison hym wold take no wight. 1335

and the surgeons
fear that they
cannot heal him.

Tho Sourgeons doubte, As thay gan report,
Wherfor the peple were tho discomforth. 1337

The Cyprians
thereupon retreat,
closely followed
by the Saracens.

The² Cipriens went for fere euermore, 1338
The sarisines after full fast fleing,
Into the thowne thay bete thaim before,
Many ther slain And many don castyng.

Great clamour in
the city.

In that towne was horrible crying, 1342
As for tho wounded And Als tho slayn ;
And for the kynges hurt, ther souerain, 1344

Ermynee bemoans
her father,
and tears her
goldish hair,

Fvll dolorous wo ther enforced was ; 1345
Ermyne by-ment hir good fader sore,
Gret torment to hir ther gan she purchas,
hir goldish herre tering, breking, euermore,
For hir fader and lord lying hir before, 1349
Whom perceiued riued at dethes port,
And that no man³ cowde yif theroff comfort. 1351

Meanwhile
Uriens and Guy
had displayed
their banners,
✧

Off kyng Ciprian leue we shal and rest, 1352
And of vriens speke and talke we shall,
Which was wurthy, uailant, and gentillest,
Full semly to see, lusty ouer all ;
And of his brother, that Guy men do cal, 1356
Of fader And moder As befor is said ;
Ther baneres were openly displayd, 1358

¹ MS. "adart."

² MS. "Thy."

³ MS. "nomā."

- A**Nd in ther handes full faste gan to hold. 1359 [Fol. 31.]
 A fers and hardy stoure ther a man¹ shold se, and attacked the
 When to-geders mete *with* sperys manyfold. Saracens.
- The petyuins tham bare As warly men fre ;
 For ther good vitail and wines plente 1363 The men of
 The more strenger were And the more semly ; Poitou, owing to
 Assautes tha[y] gafe dyuers And sondry. 1365 and plentiful
 stronger than
 their foes.
- T**her vriens shewed his noble prowesse, 1366 Uriens and Guy
 Many be-gan sle and hurt manyon ; are dredded by
 his brother Guy in lyke besinesse, the Saracens ;
- Men hym doubted As thai wold A lion ;
 Paynymes hym drad, fered hys person ; 1370 and, at last, the
 After wiste noght the soudan what to do, Sultan presses
 But *with* spores priked hys coursere tho. 1372 forward at full
 speed,
- H**Is forbeshed swerd of stele faste holding, 1373 smiting down a
 To A peiteuin wightly smote he faste, Poitevin with his
 So that neuer myght² be purchassyng, furbished sword,
- With*-in litel while stande was in haste ;
 The timbre And yre thorough hys body wraste. 1377 so that both
 hyt perceiued tho gentile vriens ; wooden hilt and
 Semyng fro hym-selfe, *with* gret uiolens, 1379 iron blade pierced
 through his body.
- I**N hys handes twain hys swerd fast gripte he, 1380 Uriens grips his
 Such A stroke ther yaf the Soudan vnto, sword in both
 To teeth cliue his hed for hys cruelte, hands, and cleaves
*With*in the Soudan entred his swerd so ; the Sultan to the
 Vnto mortall deth fell this paynym tho, 1384 teeth, at which
 The paynymes All abashed heuily. the Paynims are
 Such-wise vriens wrought dedes Army, 1386 distressed,
- T**hat both paynymes, turkes, and suriens, 1387 [Fol. 31 b.]
 That As A larke fro A hauke doth fle, so that Paynims,
 And hare fro grohund As for ther diffence, Turks, and Syri-
 ans

¹ MS. "aman."² MS. "nyght."

flee fast to their
 ships, hard
 pressed by Uriens.

So fleyng thay vnto thar naue.
 Vriens which had to thaim enmyte 1391

As for to dystroy the sarisins all,
 Smote vppon thaim As vppon cures shal.¹ 1393

Ther by² vryens And curtois Guy 1394
 Were slayn of paynymes the myghtiest.

Uriens determines
 to rest awhile in
 the tents of the
 conquered foes;

Vriens in ther tentes thought long surely,
 Thens thought not go, but ther take to reste,
 Sin vppon paynymes had he such conqueste. 1398

but, before long,
 come a troop of
 Cyprians,

Ther ne taryed he nocht ouer³ long,
 That the Cipriens cam besily strong 1400

who beseech him
 to visit the king,

Off the kinges part to hym send, and come, 1401
 Besechyng thaim com to the cite,

as the king cannot
 visit him,

Off frendlyhed the way to hym nome,
 For vnto thaim come certes myght not he;
 For vnnethes myght speche on hym be, 1405

being so sorely
 wounded.

Strayned *with* seknesse such wyse was tho,
 Wounded and hurt *with* hys enemyes soo. 1407

He answers that
 he will come
 gladly.

When vriens was thaim vnderstandyng, 1408
 he Answerd thaim ryght ful curtoisly,

Uriens and his
 brother dight
 themselves freshly
 in noble array,
 and set off.

That gladly wold he Approche that hy kyng.
 In noble Aray greithed thaim freshly
 Vryens And hys brother in company, 1412
 Towardes the kyng whent thai forth Anon;
 Moche went Cipryan, beholdyng the person 1414

[Fol. 32.]
 Many a Cyprian,
 seeing Uriens'
 face, said that he
 would conquer
 all lands by his
 appearance,

Off vriens, which he saw moche, large, and grett, 1415
 Ther seing he had A ful strange uisage
 In horrible wyse, As he went by strett,
 Euery man blessed, sayng in ther passage,
 That neuer such a man⁴ saw in al ther age; 1419

¹ "fmal" (?).

³ MS. "oure."

² MS. "Therby."

⁴ MS. "aman."

“By reson,” said, “he shuld do conquere¹
All landes with hys semblant and chere ; 1421

NOn shold to fight² hym attende ne biile, 1422 for that none
Which fro hym may Any wyse diffende ; would dare to
stand against him.

ho, lord god, ho? noght A geaunt no tide!
I you ensure, meruelus is to attende!”
At the gret paleis gan thay to dissende ; 1426 On arriving, they
ascend the palace
steps, and find
the king’s nose
and mouth
swollen,
On grice went vp, the kyng on bed thay founde,
Hys nose, hys mouth bolned gret that stounde,

With toxicat uenym replete was certain ; 1429 and the king re-
hym ther complaynyng and ful sore bement. plete with venom.

humbly vriens salute thys souerain,
Thys kyng which in body this poison hent ;
Anon hys saluz yild forthwith ther present, 1433 Uriens salutes
him humbly, who
returns his saluta-
tion, and great
thanks also.
Sayng, “ye haue me seruyd nobilly,
And to me ye haue done gret curtesy ; 1435

NEuer in my lyf no such ne had.” 1436
Thes wordes outred the kyng of Cipriens,

After demaundyng vriens ful sad,
“What be ye? what is your name þis presentens?”
“Worshipful kyng, men cal me vriens ; 1440 The king further
demands Uriens’
name,
who answers that
he is Uriens of
Lusignen.
Off lusignen am naturally grow,
I wyll that my name to all men ben know.” 1442

“**I**N faith,” sayd the kyng, “of it am I glad 1443 [Fol. 32 b.]
That dressyd and come ye be to thys place, The king is glad
to see him, but
tells him that he
feels he is incur-
ably wounded,
being stuffed
full of venom ;

And that your wyll were truly to be hade.
Swet frende, I fele mortal dethe me brace,
Neuer After thys comforth to purchase 1447

Off surgery-crafte ne with medicine,
For stuffed I am ful of uenyme, 1449

¹ MS. “conquere.”

² MS. “fight.”

wherefore he
besought him
to please to con-
descend to ac-
cept his gift,
which Uriens
does.

Whereof helth neuer shal I not conquere, 1450
But of my days shortly to make end ;
Wherefor you bes[e]che *with* me accorde here 1452
That to my gift you please to condiscend,
Whereby noght shal lese, vriens, gud frend ;
honour shal ye haue, worship, and profite."
Vriens graunted hym *without* respite, 1456

The king thanks
him for his assent,

and sends for his
barons and his
daughter Er-
mynee.

That hys commaundement wold he do gladly, 1457
Agre and Accorde hys sayd gyft vnto ;
The kyng hym thanked, And sayd full humbly,
"Thys is wel sayd, and the more gladder, loo !
I shal mortal deth take ;" commaundyng thoo 1461
That Al the Barons After send shold be,
And hys fayr doughter the swet Ermyne. 1463

He tells his
barons he expects
not to live longer,

and that he wills
to leave his
kingdom to his
daughter,

To hys barons said, "now ye vnderstande, 1464
More longer liff noght in me attend ;
lenger may not liue here *with* you in lande,
My noble Rewme Cipresse ; now say you at end,
Whom, to my power, haue warded and diffend 1468
Ffro paynymes at point of swerdes cru[e]lte,
Now it wyll I leue my doughter Ermyne, 1470

[Fol. 33.]
she being the
true heir.

The barons there-
upon do homage
to his daughter ;

and the king
adds,

IN me noght had no poynt of medicin ; 1471
For therof she is enheritour of ryght."
Thai saying hym *with* contenance good and fin,
That gladly wold do hys plesire eche wyght.¹
Ther homage made to hir do in sight, 1475
So takyng of hir ther landes and fe.
Then toke to speke this noble kinge fre ; 1477

that his subjects
cannot be de-
fended by a simple
woman against

"The barons All here me vnderstande, 1478
ye warde And kepte truly may noght be
By simple womanⁿ gayn Sarisins hande ;

¹ MS. "wyght."

- your neighbours thay ben wonder ny to se ;
 Such fers stoures of huge cruelte 1482 such cruel neighbours as the Saracens ;
 As off Armes bere, ne the sharpe shoures ;
 Here Auised haue to you good socoures. 1484
- Uppon thys dede here I haue deuised 1485 that Uriens is puissant and mighty,
 That vriens is pusant and myghty,
 Off lusignen uaillantly franchised,
 Which that the Soudan discomfith manly,
 And hys men gan sle by dedes Army, 1489 and has discomfited the Sultan, as they all saw for themselves ;
 By the huge prowess off hys body strong ;
 Off thys knewlych non hath by mene of tonge ;
- W^hat demaunde or aske here of hym now wold, 1492 and that he therefore asks them to beseech Uriens to grant him all his request ;
 To pray hym I you here beseche hertly,
 That he me noght wern, but my requeste hold."
 Thay hym besought and prayed swetly ;
 To ther request Acorded he humbly ; 1496 which the barons at once accede to.
 To the kyng reportyd thay that he wold do
 What-someuer he wold hym demAunde, lo ! 1498
- T^heroff was the kyng Full ioyous And glade, 1499 [Fol. 33 b.] The king is glad thereof, and tells Uriens that he wishes to ask nothing of him,
 To vriens said, " me request hir ye,
 And here perdon me of my wordes hade,
 For nothyng wil ne of you for to gyf me,
 Off youres nothing sall demaunded be ; 1503
 But you wil I gif gentilly, sire, of myne
 Thys Rewme *with* all enheritaunce fyne, 1505 but to confer on him something of his own,
- W^hith my fair doughter in franke mariage ; 1506 namely, his kingdom and his daughter.
 For other haue non discended of my lyne.
 you besech to take here thys fair Image."
 When the Barons knew to that wold inclyne,
 Strongly ioyed all off that discipline, 1510 The barons are of the same mind.
 Ther loue to vriens strongly gan draw,
 For the gret goodnesse that thay on hym saw. 1512

Uriens thanks
the king,
and says he would
not take the gift if
he saw in the king
any respite from
death.

Uriens the king full well understode, 1513
A lytell mused, after gan Answer; ;
“ I thanke you hertly, gracyous lord goode,
Off that ye me haue don such honour here ;
But iff respite of deth in you saw were, 1517
Full litill or noght wold I your gifte preise ;
But, lord, syn it doth your hert so to pleise, 1519

The marriage is
performed :
and, as the priest
was raising the
host at the masse,
the king yielded
up his soul.

Syn your will it is, Full wele lyketh me ; 1520
Wherfor shold I, lo ! lenger it delay ? ”
Thys mariage don plesantly to see,
And ryght As the preste reised god þat day
Off the holy masse, þat þe preste gan say 1524
Where thys sike kyng lay in such maner wise,
yild vpp hys good soule in-to paradise, 1526

[Fol. 34.]
Their great joy
is thus turned
into wo.

Where our lordle will resceyue hym of hys grace, 1527
And off all hys syn yeuyng hym pardon ;
For I witnesse you And say in thys place,
That he was A trew catholike person.
Ther gret ioy changed in-to wo Anon, 1531
full dolorous was tho the espouse,
With heuynesse loke was hir good hert fre. 1533

The king is buried
royally ;

The kyng After entered was goodly ; 1534
long taried noght or put were on graue,
hys obsequie don ryght worshipfully,
And, to say the soth, As reson wold craue ;
For A kyng shold roiall obseque haue. 1538
That time noght had plays ne tornement,
For the gret dolour whych for the kyng hent, 1540

and there were
therefore no plays
or tournaments at
the wedding,

which was, never-
theless, honestly
done.

Which At mortall deth was ther presently. 1541
But not-withstandyng honestly was don
The mariage And weddyng greably ;
Blame ne reproche certes nedith non

- Tho melled of thes dede passed and gon ; 1545 No blame at-
 So wyll was this thing At poynt don þat day, tached to those
 At which time ther was full noble array 1547 who were busy
 about that matter ;
- A ppertaynyng wel to A kinges dede. 1548
 At thys mariage was nobles ful many, for many nobles,
 Of sondry townes peple in that stede, knights, ladies,
 knyghtes, laydes, damycelles worthy, damsels, and
 yonge Squiers, And maydens goodly, 1552 squires, honoured
 the marriage
 feast, and danced
 thereat.
- Where-with thys said feste gretly gan honour,
 Which ther daunced At that tyme and hour. 1554
- Ryght¹ thus the peple merily ioyng 1555 [Fol. 34 b.]
 As off the good rule noyseal of thaim to, Thus joyed the
 Of the espouse full noble gouernyng, people on account
 And of the good lordes renomyng also. of the good rule
 of those two, viz.,
 Anon was she made vnto bedde go, 1559 of the bride and
 Uriens.
- For vriens wold in no wyse tary,
 With hir went to bedde As man ful hastily. 1561
- IN that night Greffon ther engendred was, 1562 Their firstborn
 Off whom I shall declare, outre, and say ; was named
 Greffon,
 Which in payny conquered hye And bas, who conquered
 Gret seignories And contrees that day, many countries,
 And of Colcis quitte the contre Alway, 1566 including Colchis,
 Where playnly no man in no wise passe myght.
 Many merueles of tought cam ther ryght, 1568
- EVery moneth twenty And mo. 1569
 An Ile was ther had full fair to deuise,
 Wheron conquered was the flees tho,
 Which conqueste was made by medee auisse,²
 By Iason Away it bering such wise. 1573 where was an
 isle, in which the
 golden fleere was
 gained by Jason,
 with the aid of
 Medea.
- he it conquered by the hy prudence
 Off medee the fair, And by hir science ; 1575

¹ In the margin, [*Vr*]yen kyng of [*Cip*]re by ermyne [*ky*]s wyf
 hathe a boy [*cal*]led gryffon.

² MS. "medeeauisse."

It would take up
too much time to
tell all that story.

FVII long tyme wold be it to rehers here. 1576
ho in-to thys boke thys mater draw wold,

The meruailles huge had in that ille there,
A thousand ther hau[e] fall, come, and unfold ;

I should then be
going aside from
the matter in
hand.

A thousand sayn, A thousand tymes told, 1580

As wele opin plain As said by straitnesse ;
Out of my mater issue shold expresse. 1582

[Fol. 35.]

Off thys Ile to speke thys tyme shall I reste, 1583
And vnto Greffon retorn here me shall.

Greffon was quick
and ready in war,
and conquered
many places.

Greffon with swerdes fors was redy and preste,
Off maree the prince, chef, And principall ;
After the porte yaffe conquered he all. 1587

At last he came
to Tripoli (?),

So Aboute went purchassing dayly,
That the uaillant Cite of Triple cam by ; 1589

which he assailed
and took.

BI hys huge prowessse went it to assaill 1590
In ryght werly wyse, For manly was in breste,

That both his penon And baner sanfaill
Put within the town, so making conqueste.

Thus he acquired
laud, honour, and
praise.

Neuer At no day taried ne reste, 1594

That he [ne] went by land And by ssee,
laude, honour, preising so conquered he. 1596

Off hym we shall reste And tary now, 1597
And to our purpos here retorn shall we

Uriens is crowned
king of Cyprus.

Off vriens, kyng which is full know,
And crounyd lorde of Cipresse was he.

His wife's uncle
is king of
Armenia.

Vncle¹ to hys wif, the king of hermyne ; 1601

When hir Fader in lif was being,
Brother to hym was of hermyne the kyng. 1603

Thys full noble kyng of Arminiens 1604
In his days was man of grett goodnesse,

¹ In the margin, *kyng of hermy[ne] vnkull to vriens, brother to her fa[ther]*.

- But Ay myght not be in liffes existence ;
 Tho feble and stronge dethe takyth expresse.
 Ther ware hys peple full of heuynesse, 1608
 With that sorow had many mortalite,
 For whyle he regned, well ruled the contre. 1610
- A** douthter he had gentile And full fayr, 1611
 A more gentelere was ther non then she,
 Off hym discended was non other hayir.
 A concell ther hold off the hermyns fre
 That thay wold send to cipresse contre, 1615
 Requiring the kyng that hys brother Guy
 Sol[d] send in-to ther region only, 1617
- A** nd¹ he shold haue that gentile damycell 1618
 To hys wedded wife, flourye the fair.
 Thay thys ordinaunce Amonge thaim held ful wele ;
 To Cipresse cam thes messyngers debonair, 1622
 Without taryng or Any retrair
 Vn-to the kyng declaryng ther message,
 For euery off thaim was full wyse And sage. 1624
- W** ith full gret ioy resceyued thaim the kynge, 1625
 And thaim fested wonder nobilly.
 When thes nouelles vriens knowyng
 Off the fayr debonair, the gentile floury,
 Off hys barons toke concell hastily. 1629
 Thay All accorded² And to hym thay said,
 That hys brother shold send *with* jam pat braid.
- T** hat thys thyng were done hasted he bigly ; 1632
 Guye after send, Accorded All ther-to
 That which vriens commaunded hym only.
 Into sse thay went *with* moche peple tho,

This king of Armenia dies, to the great sorrow of his subjects, many of whom died of grief.

[Fol. 35 b.]
 His daughter was his only heir ;

wherefore the Armenians send to Cyprus, requesting Uriens to send them his brother Guy,

who should have the damsel, Flourie, to wife.

The messengers come to Cyprus.

Uriens takes counsel with his barons,

and they agree that Guy should be sent at once.

Guy agrees to the proposal, takes ship, and arrives at Armenia.

¹ MS. "AAnd."

² MS. "occorded."

Off Armes doubty, noble, And gentile, lo ! 1636

Ariued thai were In hermeny, 1638

Wher enherite shold the full fair floury. 1638

[Fol. 36.]
Disembarking, he
soon meets some
lords, who receive
him gladly;

AT erthe discended, so thay forth going, 1639

lordys of contre contring thaim Again,

With A wilfull hert full gentilly rescceyuyng,

And ioyusly brought forth thys souerayn.

Off hys comyng gret ioy had sertayn, 1643

and marries
Flourie,

All the estates made hym full gret feste ;

he married floure without other reste,¹ 1645

and is king of
the country ;

The king After was of all the contre, 1646

Thes to Rewmes put As thay befor were.

so that two
brothers are once
more kings of
Armenia and of
Cyprus.

To brethers Afor of trouth had it be,

So ben thay now in to brothers powere,

By fader and moder, in like manere. 1650

Thes kynges to regned, As it is sayd,

And ther tyme strongly gan thay aid 1652

The two kings
aided those who
were descended
from them, and
the people of
Rhodes too.
They had many
children,

To tho which of thaim discended were ; 1653

As I understande, tho of rodes to,

That in mischef ye know, And uisite there.

Full many children had thes brethers tho,

Which leuid till thay were large woxen, lo ! 1657

Many fair dedes in ther tyme thay wrought,

That fele paynymes to discomfiture brought. 1659

and ruled well,
trampling under
foot those who
annoyed them.

A fter dicesse of ther fader good, 1660

Which vnto tham both gentill fader was,

Ther Rewmes ruled well while in lif stood,

And ther noyours underfote put bas.

Fro thaim to ther fader torn wyll by grace, 1664

I will now turn
to Raymond
and Melusine.

As vnto Raymounde And fair melusigne,

Ther noble moder with all honour dygne. 1666

¹ In the margin, *Guy marryd flou[re] kyng of hermy[ne] dogter,*
& ys kyng hymself.

- When that thay hurde the nouvelles And tiding 1667 [Fol. 36 b.]
When these heard
of the success of
their two sons,
Off ther sones too, goode, fair, and gentill,
how conquered had to gret Rewmes hauyng ;
Wherefor thay sayd the sept psabulmes until
The kyng of glorie, enpreising with vos shill, 1671 they said the 7
Psalms to the
King of Glory,
By whom thai haue had the huge victory,
And conquered ther foes many ; 1673
- And that in so gret honoures put be 1674 because each of
them was called
a king.
That Ayther of thaim claymed is A kyng,
And of sogettes loued in eche degre,
Then was she sette in desy[r]ing
Our lord for to serue, hertly hym thankyng. 1678 Moreover Melu-
sine, for her soul's
health,
Thys noble lady called Melusine,
As for the helth of hir soule deuine, 1680
- Thys fair Melusine, without taryng, 1681
Of our lady A minstre fourged she
Which was ful fair, gladsom in seing ;
hit edefied Melusine the fre,
And full richely it founded to se ; 1685
Thorough All peiters, by hir owne deuyse,
Many churches founded in glorious wysse. 1687 and founded also
many other
churches.
- To euery place yaff she gyftes grett. 1688
After Oede hir son gan she to marie
The fair daughter, of the noble Erle gett.
For soth Raynold, whych had but on eye,
Full gret, thikke, And fers wax he wonderly ; 1692 Next she married
her son Oede to
the earl's fair
daughter.
Anthonye And he parted lusignen fro,
For peple went thens when dined had tho. 1694 Raynold and
Anthony set out
from Lusignan.
- For Anthony was ayne and eldeste, 1695 [Fol. 37.]
They soon came
to Luxemburg,
Towardes Brehain toke he the streight way,
Till that luxemborough Approched ful preste,
A famous town of gret renon that day.

which was then
being besieged by
the king of Alence,

Beforn whom many A penon gan display, 1699
The king of Ausoy it besegied had,
Almoste it toke, *wit/in* thay sore Adred. 1701

who had nearly
taken the town.

They asked the
cause of the war,
and find that it
was for the duke's
daughter, an
orphan,

When thes brethren to in feld comyn were, 1702
The town vnnethes gayn Ausoys myght hold ;
Ther Aither of tham had hurt¹ the manere,
Wherefor thaim werred thys myghty kyng bold ;
For A mayden it was that haue wold, 1706
That *wit/in* the towne was gentil, curteys, & faire,
Doughter of A duke,² Orphelyne debonair. 1708

whom the king of
Alence wished to
marry forcibly.

BI strenght to wife haue wold hir the kyng, 1709
Remeue wold he nocht thys said Cite fro
Til the dukes doughter he were hauyng.

The brethren defy
the king by a
herald,

But Anon cam A-place thes bretherin to, 1712
Which *wit/h* thaim brought A wonder huge host tho,
Vnto thys said kyng send thay diffiance,
By An heraude of theres that instance. 1715

whereof the king
is glad, as he is
fierce and cruel.

From afar the
brethren per-
ceived the host,
armed with
knives and
halberds.

Wherof the king was ioyus And glad, 1716
For he was lusti, yonge, fers, and cruell ;
A-ferrome thay perceyued the strenght had,
Seing the baneres with the wynde ful wel, 1719
Which blew thaim A-lofte *wit/h* many A pensell,
Of Army peple seing grett fuson,
With Custiles And Gisarmes manyon ; 1722

[Fol. 37 b.]
The Lusignens
attack the foes
boldly,

Then thay stafte³ thaim, putt in-to ordinance, 1723
Goyng to smyte ther enemies uppon,
huge noyse and crye Assembled that instance.
The lusignens went, faste crying tham on ;

¹ "hurd" (?).

² MS. "guke."

³ MS. "stafte."

- To-geders dreuing cam *with* gret randon, 1727 so that the earth
And when thay cam the Assemble to, trembles at their
The erth made thay to tremble and quake tho. encounter.
- Ther entre-sembling don wonder fersly ; 1730 The men of Alsace
A gret Abashment was it tho being ; assail the Poite-
Ausoys peityuyns assailing bigly, vins, who hammer
Peiteuyns vppon Ausoys faste knakking, at them in return.
Manyon ther slayn, mortally deyng ; 1734 The Lusignans
Ayen lusignens crying¹ were Ful faste, abide their taste of
"Theffes Ausoys ! byde our swerdes taste, 1736 their swords.
- For escape no wyse mow ne shal ye noght ! " 1737
Ther army dedes the peiteuyns gan do,
Fro fele bodies pertid the soule in brought.
Then thes brethren, ech by thaim-self, tho,
So ful werrely wrought, can noght be said, lo ! 1741 The two brethren,
Off o side and other so departed there, each by himself,
That the peiteuyns Ausoys gan conquere. 1743 behave in so war-
like a manner,
that their men
are the victors.
- Anthony the kyng toke with handes to, 1744 In Anthony's
In his hand he semyd hym no-thing, hands the king
hym wold he haue slayn, but he yilde hym tho, "seemed no-
thing."
A-non hys swerd forth-*with* presenting.
When Anthony saw to hym so yilding, 1748 Anthony receives
he hym resceyued And his swerd gan take ; his sword in token
And tho the Ausoys gret flight gan to make ; 1750 of submission.
- But peyteuyns Full ny gan thaim to sew, 1751 [Fol. 38.]
And Raynold strongly full faste gan to fight, The Poitevins
Many ther were slayn And fele gan subdew, pursue the men
The Ausoys takyng all And slayn don-right. of Alsace till they
Raynold was full sage, And wel taught perfight, 1755 are all taken and
slain.
In like wyse was hys brother Anthony,
Full gentill And connyng vnto mannys eye. 1757

¹ MS. "eryng," *e* being mis-written for *c*, and *i* omitted
PARTENAY. F

Anthony and
Raynold take
their ease in
their tents,

Where that day thay toke to ease thaim surely 1758
As for ther repare in the tentes and place.

In-to the town After send quickly

To se if thay were reioed in thys cace ;

and send six
knightes, with
the captive king,
to the fair maiden.

knightes sixe made go vnto the good grace 1762

Off thys fair mayden, hire to present the kyng,

Ther thens departyd, lenger nought byding ; 1764

The kyng presented to thys fair creature, 1765
vnto do with hym at hir owne plesance.

The fair creature
inquires who are
the two noble
lords who have
thus come to her
assistance.

Then thys fayr mayden, fresh shappe of figure,

Which was full gentile, Fair, swet of semblance,

And to tho said which had hir in gouernance, 1769

“Fro whens comith this noble lordes thys hour,

That me thys day han don so gret honour!” 1771

An aged knight
tells her they are
the “sons of
Lusignan ;”

“Madame,” said on which was an Aged knight, 1772
“With A herty will ye shal know gladly ;

These bene the sones of lusignen ryght ;

Men thaim so name, certes, by ther cry,

and that their
names are
Anthony and
Raynold.

That on of thaim is called Anthony, 1776

And that other hath vnto name Raynold,

To full myghty men, manly And full bolde.” 1778

[Fol. 38 b.]
She is very grate-
ful for their
services,

Thys Fair mayden said, “god off his mercy 1779
Off ther socour thaim thanke for hys hy pusance,

For me haue thay don dedes Full worthy.

What so I haue shall be to ther plesance,

and expresses
a wish to counsel
with them ere
they go.

For ther consell wrought and good gouernance, 1783

With thaim shall I concell, er thay goo,

Off all thyngis that I haue to do.” 1785

She tells her
council she shall
invite the
brethren and

Then she ther demaunded hir concell ; 1786
After commaundyng thes brethren come hir to,
lenger myght not she it withhold well,

- And with ther hoste shall¹ come loge also, their host into
In thys said towne ther herbigage haue tho, 1790 the town.
- And in especiall the Barons moste hy.
hyr peple said, "it shal bene done truly." 1792
- T**oward thes brethren went thay forth anon, 1793 The messengers
Within the tentes merily tham founde, find the brethren
In place where was the kyngys pailon in the king's
For time that the sege was hold in þat ground. pavilion,
Ther founde thay I-now of goodes þat stounde, 1797 where they had
But of it thay wold take ryght no-thing, found much
But to men off armes All was yeuyng. 1799 treasure and had
distributed it
among the
soldiers.
- W**hat-someuer thing in that place was founde, 1800 When the mes-
Fyrste gaf to tho gret, After smal vnto. sengers from
When fro luxemborough where come þat stounde Luxemburg had
Thes messengers Ful Apertly tho, arrived at the
Ther message sagely And wightly gan do 1804 pavilion, they
To thes to brethren off full huge prowesse delivered their
Fro the part off thys lady And mestresse.² 1806 message to the
two brethren,
- T**hes³ brethren to resceyued tham humbly, 1807 [Fol. 39.]
Ryght so As thay k[n]ew full well for to do. who received
When thes messyngers vnderstod uerily them humbly.
All thare Answer, no lenger taried tho,
That of thes knightes fife hundred and mo 1811 The messengers
Went thaim to loge there, were noght dangerous, receive their
knowing that ther was al thyng plenteuous. 1813 answer, and at
once 500 knights
set out to lodge
within the town.
- T**he hostes marschall lefte thai þat instance, 1814 The brethren
Ther forigers⁴ A-forn gan to send leave their
For ther hostes to make ordinance, "marshals"
with the main
army, and send
their foragers on
before them.

¹ MS. "sholl."

² At the bottom of the page is the catchword—"Thes brethren to resceyued."

³ MS. "Thyes."

⁴ MS. "forigers."

- Of whome the Instrumentes sounded at end,
Off luxemborught entre moche to commende; 1818
- Every place and
cross-way are
filled with people. No place ther had, neither carfoukes non,
But peple shold se ther come many one, 1820
- The nobles of the
city convey the
brethren to the
castle. **T**O the sounde that thes instrumentes gan make; 1821
The nobles and gentiles comyng thaim agayne.
Tho moste worthiest thes brethren gan take,
Vnto the castel conueing thaim certayn.
To thys assemble peple cam ful fayn, 1825
Where appered thys cristin creature,
Whiche cristian was named, be ye sure. 1827
- She is accom-
panied by many
ladies,
both married and
maiden, who re-
ceiue the brethren
nobly. **T**her Acompained was she nought ill 1828
Of laides had ful gret company,
With noble damyselles longing hir until,
Als of tho married As of maidens many.
Thai thes brethren reseyued nobilly, 1832
And ful sagely ryght so As thay shold,
Ther vitail redy As to plesire haue wold, 1834
- [Fol. 39 b.]
A feast is pro-
vided; they wash
their hands, and
sit in order;
the king of
Alsace highest,
Anthony next,
and Raynold
and three barons
next. **W**ith-out taryng to wash ther handes went; 1835
After went to sitte ther ceriatly.
Sche made thaim ther A ful fayr sight to hent,
The kyng of Ausoy sette was he moste hy;
After the brother to Raynold, Anthony, 1839
After thre gret barouns of the same place,
Enmyddes tham Raynold ther sette wace. 1841
- A more "honest"
feast was never
seen. **T**her tho had was An excellent feste, 1842
A more honeste neuer sayn with eye,
Of vitail and als wines of the best;
The peiteuyns were at ease merily.
When dined thay had, ther handes wash clenly; 1846
The tables raysed After tho anon,
And graces saide with gret deuocion, 1848
- After dinner they
washed their
hands;
and, grace being
said,

- T**he kyng of Ausoys to thes brethren to . 1849 the king said to the two brethren, "I am your prisoner, and ask to be put to ransom."
- Said, "I am your prisoner thys instance,
In your handes take at thys iourney, lo!
I you here besech to make ordinance,
In such wyse I may be put to finance." 1853
Anthony hym said in fayr, "lord and knight,
Our prisoner be ye noght of right ; 1855
- H**ere haue we done And shewid curtesy, 1856 Anthony replies that they have been as courteous as he has been villanous,
Where to wrongously uillanous ye doo,
To thys noble damicel and lady.
Owr dedes we haue put now hir vnto,
your body we haue yeuyn hir also ; 1860 and that they now put his body in the lady's power,
Now by hir moste be all the ordinance,
Other-wyse ryght noght but to hir plesance. 1862
- I**n hir standeth all your deliuerance, 1863 [Fol. 40.] because he had annoyed her wickedly.
Or elles your deth without doubt Any"—
(When the kyng it hurd, in hert had noisance)—
"for that ye haue hir noyed wekkidly."
Forsoth tho anon spake thys fayr lady, 1867 But the fair lady at once, without any prompting,
(Neuer cancelled by mannys langage,
For she was well thought, inly wise and sage),
- "M**I lordes," she said, "I thank you hertly 1870 returns thanks to the two lords, and says in return that she leaves the king at their disposal,
Of honour and seruice that ye haue me do ;
But by my feith As to that dede surely
Off kyng Ausoys, I wyll not ordayn, lo !
he is yours, I leue hym you vnto ; 1874
here all that I haue you¹ gyf you thys day,
For you to guerdon² certes can ne may, 1876 as she could not "guerdon" them
- A**nd hepes of gold had in tresory, 1877 if she had heaps of gold.
That which ye haue yusterday me do,
By your gracios noble chialry.

¹ "I" (?).

² MS. "guerdon."

The king's life
and death are
therefore in their
power.

In you lyth hys lif, And his deth also.
No other thyng shal I do ther-to ; 1881
So to your goodnesse am I bounde & hold."
hir wordes hurde Antony and Raynolde, 1883

They answer, "If
so, he shall have
a quit-claim of us,

Thai hir answering, "sin ye wyll do so, 1884
Of vs shal he haue A quite-clayme fully,
With-that he Amend that he hath misdo.

provided he kneel
down here de-
bonairly, and cry
you mercy,

Then here shall he knele ful debonerly,
here Afor vs al, crieng you mercy 1888
Of trespas and wronges he hath done here ;
And vppon hys feith truly you to swere 1890

[Fol. 40 b.]
and swear he will
never do you
annoyance, dis-
turbance, or
damage.

That neuer you il after thys shal doo, 1891
No noisance, distourbance, neither damage ;
Surete And hostage shall you take vnto."

The fair maiden
sweetly consents.

Thys fair maden said with full swet langage,
" Ryght As ye haue said, it pleasith my corage ; 1895
Vnto you I wyll Agre in all thyng,
As ye wyll, so wyll I, by consenting." 1897

The king is full
glad, and cries
mercy at once.

The kyng was full glad, ioyng merily, 1898
For he trowed wel exiled to be.

She accordingly
consents to his
freedom.

To thys lady went, cryng hir mercy,
lyke-wyse As was said by Anthony fre.
Thys womanly thyng ther resceyued she, 1902
Ryght As it pleasid ther thys brethren to,
She Accordid in semble wyse tho. 1904

The king next
cries with a loud
voice,
that he should be
glad to have such
chivalrous men
for neighbours,

When the kyng had made hys othe & swrete, 1905
Then ful lowde he spake And ful hautaynly,
And sayd the Barons, " ful glad mow ye¹ be
yif such a neighbour puruely myght I
As on of you to to haue uerily, 1909
Which bene so chivalrous in your doing,
And which for to do is preisable thyng. 1911

¹ " myght I " (!).

S Eith here now thys pleasant debonair	1912	and he bids
Gentile Cristian, thys nobyle duchesse,		Anthony look
Which holdeth contrees and rentes fair !		on the pleasant
Anthony, me hire besech your hinesse,		Christian, this
ye don haue gret curtesy and gentilnesse,	1916	duchess, with
Hit is gret reson ye were satefied		fair renta,
Off your ful good will don And Applied.	1918	and consider that
		it is reasonable
		that he should be
		repaid for his
		kindness.

I say thys to ende that it myght be wrought	1919	[Fol. 41.] He thinks that Christian might be given to Anthony,
As that we App[r]oche that I thenke fully, Ryght noble Barons, sin wel I haue thought, ¹ To my semyng, Cristian might mary As to be yeuen vnto Antoni.	1923	
A man no better myght hit employ nay-where, For this knight is A worthi baculere." ²	1925	as he is so worthy a bachelor.

Off luxembrough the Barons and eche lord,	1926	The barons and lords of Luxemburg applaud him;
Thay sayng, "ful wel here hath said the kyng."		
All Agreeable sete in one Accorde,		
To thys werke the kyng was thaim there saing.		
The mariage had <i>with</i> all the weddyng, ³	1930	and the marriage feast is held, and lasted for eight days.
Which endured eight days plenerly,		
Ther had ioustes and tornementes myghty.	1932	

There iousted tho ful nobilly the kyng.	1933	
At eight days ende finished the feste,		The feast ended,
Then euery man redy faste hastyng		every man is
To go And leue take of tho semyng best.		about to take
Anon ther cam, <i>without</i> bode or reste,	1937	leave,
A messenger, streight fast As he myght goo,		when a messenger
Which longing was the king of Brehayne to.	1939	arrives from the
		king of Brehayne,

¹ MS. "thoiught."

² MS. "baiulere."

³ In the margin, *Antony ys [duke] of luxemb[ourgh] by marry-[ing] Crystyme, eyr yerof.*

with a letter to
the king of
Alsace.

TO the kyng of Ausoys lettres he brought. 1940
Anon the gate opened hym vnto,
Forth-with þe kyng brake thes strange lettres wrought.

Having read the
letter, he begins
to sigh and weep
tenderly;

As sone As he had radde thes letters tho,
There gan he to sigh and sowghid for wo, 1944
And Als for to wepe ryght ful tenderly;
Then thes brethren to demaunded for why 1946

[Fol. 41 b.]
and, being asked
the reason,
says he has had
hard news;

that the Saracens
have besieged a
town in Brehayne,

and th at he pities
the king his
brother.

That he weped so, And wat tydinges he hade. 1947
Vnto tham he sayd, "reste wil noght to tell;
Full ill me is come, hard nouvelles and sad;¹
Besegyð haue the sarysins cruell
In Brehayne with the tyranny fell. 1951
Off my brother kyng haue I gret pete,
Which sore displeasith and hurteth foule me. 1953

Anthony listens
to his appeal,
and bids him not
be discomforted;

For your lordys sake, take therof pete, 1954
And if it you please to hys socour goo,
I thynke it deserue atwixst you and me."
When Anthony vnderstode hys wordes tho,
Full goodly he said thys hy kyng vnto, 1958
"Sir," he sayd, "for thys be not discomfort;
My brother you ful wel shal recomfort. 1960

for that he will
send his brother
aid;

and that Raynold
should go and
slay the Saracens.

For certes Raynold my brother shal go, 1961
My good knightes with hym shal he bring,
And your brother put Away fro wo,
Ther many Sarisins shal be deing."

The king here-
upon pledges his
life that Raynold
shall marry his
niece;

"I thanke you hertly," to hym sayd the kyng; 1965
"I Afferme And plegge here vppon my life,
My brothe[r]s doughter shal he haue to wyfe; 1967

Raynold shal so emploed be and sette, 1968
Then in your brother better may noght be;
So god me ayde, he shal hir haue without lette

¹ MS. "fayd."

After my brother, kyng of hy degre ;
And he shal gouerne noble Brehayne ;
For non other hoir hath non my brother,
But only hir ; ne may haue non other."

and, after his
brother's death,
succeed as king
of Brehayne ;
as his brother
had no heir but
this one daughter.

When Antony vnderstode thys nouell,
Which was ful fayr and inly gracyous,
To the kyng he said hautaynly and wel,
"Go hens, ye noble king vertuous,
your hoste Assemble with peple plenteuous,
Al your ful hoste vnto þat place bryng,
Within thys Auynsime¹ be ye retornynng.

1975 [Fol. 42.]

Anthony bids
the king go
and assemble
his army,
and return again
to Luxemburg
within a fort-
night;

1979

1981

MI peple ye shall finden al redy,
Noght ouer ferre, but ny by shall ye ;
Raynold my brother to you shal come truly,
In propre persone me ther shal ye see."
The king hym thanked goodly As myght be,
Fro thens departed he ful hastily tho,
hys peple to Assemble fast gan to go.

1982 for there should
Raynold meet
him.

He himself also
(Anthony) would
appear there.

1986

The king hastily
departs,

1988

And when Assembled hys peple hade,
Then forth-with As sone As he goodly myght,
To luxemborough A retorn he made,

1989 and soon returns
to Luxemburg
with all his
people.

And then to that place came hys peple raid ryght,

A noble Baronage hauyng ther to sight ;

1993

Then he made to come A messengere

He next sends a
messenger to
Anthony

Fro king Ausoys to Anthony there ;

1995

Which ther cam tho in ful noble aray,
With A shil vois said to duke Anthony,
"Sir, I pray your lord you salute thys day ;
The king of Ausoy And hys company

1996 to say that he
was all ready to
go to Brehayne,

¹ Read "quynsime" ; see Note.

and that his hosts
were beneath the
town in the fields.

here comith to go to Brehayne hastily ; 2000

By-nethes ar thai in the fayr medew,
With ful noble company hym to sew." 2002

[Fol. 42 b.]
Duke Anthony
says he is wel-
come;

The duke hym sayd, " welcom shall he be." 2003
Raynold forth he send, moste no lenger byde.

and tells Raynold
that the king of
Alsace is come,
and he must find
his army good
lodging,

Raynold cam Agayne, ther taried noght he ;
Sir Anthony sayd, " brother, goth thys tyde ;
Into thys faire medew forth most ye glyde, 2007
For ther is comyn king Ausoys roiall,
Makyng to loge hys peple gret And small, 2009

and make them
take their ease.

His pailon piche vnto Auantage;¹ 2010
To that done was he inly sage and wyse.

Raymond obeys,
and all is well
provided.

let tham take ther ease after ther corage,
Then make the kyng come of hys hye emprise."
hys commaundement Raynol[d] gan Auise, 2014
And it was wel don to hertis plesance,
The Ausoys loged wel with all circumstance. 2016

The king departs
to Luxemburg to
see the duke.

The kinge departed and for² thaim toke leue, 2017
Towardes luxemborough thys said duk went,

A great feast is
made,
the particulars of
which I need not
rehearse.

The town entred in, ther founde, in breue,
Gret fest thaim Among was to all entent ;
After at borde set conuenyent. 2021
Of ther diner and fayr leue here I shal,
For hit nedith noght As to rehers All. 2023

Anthony makes
all ready to go
to the aid of the
king of Brehayne.

Anthony Anon made tho all redy, 2024
Such peple As were ther in that contre,
he hauyng ther A noble company
As to aid the kyng tho of Brehaigne ;

The number of
the two hosts was,
in all, 30,000.

Nombred thay were thirty thousande fre, 2028
Ther thes hostes too full Assembled were,
And full gret honour to-geders can bere. 2030

¹ MS. "A uantage." Fr. text, "dauantaige." ² "fro" (?).

- N**oble felowship ther A man shold se ; 2031 [Fol. 43.]
 As moche peple the duke As had the kyng. The duke had as
 When that to-geders thay made assemble, many men as the
 In euery parte the grounde faste tremblyng. king.
 But er that made fro thens departing, 2035 Ere the duke
 Thys fayr Cristian called Anthony, departs, the
 Sayng, "you beseche, souerayn lord hy, 2037 fair Christian
 calls him, and
 beseeches him
- T**hat it myght you please me do such honoure 2038 to wear the coat-
 That ye the Armes wold fouchesafe to bere of-arms of Lux-
 Off luxemborough ; noght put non heure emburg, and no
 Other blason, you beseche, to were." other blazon.
 "My fair wet loue," Anthony gan Answer, 2042 Anthony says he
 "Accorde shal I noght your wyll ther-vnto, will not exactly
 But Another thyng for-sothe shall I doo. 2044 do that,
- I**N whatsomeuer place, lo ! that we be, 2045 but proposes
 The shild shal I bere of A Lyon, always to bear on
 Vppon my armure, plenerly to se ; his shield a lion,
 That Armys wyl haue ; other wyl I non ;
 For that when I was born thys wordle on, 2049 because that,
 A hurt of A Lyon tho I gan to bere, when he was
 Vppon my Iawe strongly appering there, 2051 born into the
 world, he had on
 his jaw a mark
 like that made
 by a lion's claw ;
- W**here-of the peple Abasshed was sore. 2052 with this excep-
 Also your plesire certes shal I doo, tion, he will do
 And fulfill your wyll days euer-more." her pleasure.
 She said, "I you thanke full hertyly, lo !
 For yf the Asure be put Away fro, 2056 She thanks him,
 and says that,
 My hole Armys shal ye bere surely, excepting the
 Both youre armys And thes same only, 2058 azure,
 he can bear both
 his own arms and
 hers,
- W**hich ben Armes ryght full Auncion." 2059 [Fol. 43 b.]
 Thes Armes he toke And tham gan to bere, which were the
 And so Assorted thaim ryght thys to gon. old arms of
 Of this fair lady toke he his leue there, Luxemburg.
 He accordingly
 assortis them,

and takes his
journey to
Brehayne at
full speed.

Then fro ther logis thar¹ dressyd tho were, 2063
Towarde Brehaignè went thai fast dreuyng ;
Euery Afore other went fleing, 2065

Bavaria is passed,
and Almaigne ;

PAssyng so Baueres And also Almayn, 2066
Suche progresse forth made ouer the contre,
By huge Iournays, ualey and montayn,

and Brehayne is
soon reached.

Till thay Approched the land of Brehaignè.
At thar owne desyre ther made thay entre, 2070

I must now speak
of the evil
Paynims.

Now shal I say of paynymes the felons,
Which werred dayly thys sayd Brehaignons. 2072

The king of
Cracow was
mighty and
strong,

The king of Craquo² mighty And strong was, 2073
Werryng ful bigly the Brehaignons thoo,
Withe hym Esclauons many had aplace,

and with his men
made great war
against the
Brehaignons.

So os³ we haue founde in old scripture, lo !
For of that lande was lorde and syre also. 2077
To Brehaignons ful gret werre he made,
On A day he went, to scarmish⁴ with thaim sad,

One day the king
of Brehayne,
whose name was
Fedris, armed
himself for a
sally,

Afforne Brehaignè without hodelnesse. 2080
There hym perceyued the king of Brehaignè,
And ther thought display his baner expresse,
Fedris, which held that Rewme And contre ;
Armyng hym ryght faste, taking his helme fre, 2084

and bade the
gates be thrown
open ;

When with his armure coueryd he was,
Ther the gates made opon⁵ And unbras ; 2086

[Fol. 44.]
but the Saracens
beat these free
knights, over-
whelming them
with the number
of their men.

Fro town issued his peple And he ; 2087
Off noble peple had he full many.
And the Sarisins betè these knightes fre,
Many ther caste done And moche peple sly,
But such store was of Esclauons only, 2091
That we can not put thaim As in writing,
Off whom Brehaignons were ryght sore doubtyng.

¹ "thai" (?).

⁴ See Note.

² MS. "Traquo."

³ for as.

⁵ Sic in MS.

Esclaouns Brehaignons put sore Abake, 2094 These men drove
And tham sore chased A-non to the ende. back the Brehai-
But of luxemborught the duke on gan take, guons, and chased
He puttyng Away ther huge debate tende. them into the
Off Brehaignons kyng to fyght¹ was bende, 2098 town.
With the Sarisins faught he in eche side, But the duke of
Which his peple had put Abake that tide. 2100 Luxemburg came
up, while the king
of Brehaigne

But the kyng was noght put Abake only, 2101
But he had ynow hys life to deffende, was fighting for
Here And there caste douz, fighting ful manly, his life, like a
On all for-smete, Another to grounde wende, wild boar at bay,
As A wyld boor deffendyd hym at ende. 2105 smiting and cast-
Ryght As at-bay stode thys manly good knight, ing down his foes.
Full sore were thay hurte whom he Approche
myght. 2107

But with A shotte off A launcegay tho 2108 But by a javelin
Thys noble knyght² smetyn thorough hys body this noble knight
Full felonesly And cruelly also, was smitten
That to mortal deth fill douz sodenly, through the body,
Fro body went the soule ful heuily ; 2112 and his soul was
To our lord An hy commaunded was she, commended to
For A worthy man certes was he. 2114 God.

There vp ros the cry, As seith the scripture, 2115 [Fol. 44 b.]
The Brehaignons wo sore wepte for pite ; The Brehaignons
Tho that myght, ther fled ; but sarisins sure wept sore, and
Thay sued ny, attayning tho gan³ fle. fled ; but the
There swerdes gan take, faste Aboute gan sle, 2119 Saracens pursued,
Fersly on tham went whom þat myght attayn, reaching soon the
Full faste cast thay douz, And many ther slayn. fiercing troop,

¹ MS. "fyght."
² MS. "kynght." ³ MS. "gam."

The few who
escaped came
spurring to the
town, and told
the sad news;

Wherof Brehaignons braid and cried, 2122
And tho which might ther be escaping

Vnto the town come spored And hied,
Declaring thes nouelles of the kyng ;

to the great grief
of the slain king's
fair daughter,
Eglentine.

Wherof At hert had that gret noyng 2126

The kynges doughter, named Eglentine,
Whome all good beute gan fair enlumyne. 2128

Eglentine, thys kinges doughter fre, 2129
Off paynymes had gret fere And doubtance.

The people ran
fast back into the
city for fear of
the Saracens,
when they saw
their king dead.
But the Saracens
are overjoyed ;

The peple ran to town And Cite,

The sarisins moche doubted þat instance,
When the kyng saw dede, whylom of pusançe ; 2133

Wheroff the sarisins had gret ioy tho,
Tristying¹ ther were had be ended And doo. 2135

and, making a
great fire with
bushes and wood,
burnt the king's
body before the
gate.

Tho a full gret fire thay tende made And hade, 2136
With bushes And wod makyng it full hy,

Ful ny to þe gate thys said fire þat thai made,
Byforne hys peple the kyng brend truly.

Those within cry
and grind their
teeth.

Marred therof ben tho within Fully, 2140

Crying And grinting sore with ther teeth tho,
But no remedy cowde thay shap therto, 2142

[Fol. 45.]
But soon came
Anthony, Ray-
nold, and the king
of Alsace towards
Brehaigne, their
basnets glittering
like the bright
sun.

For non other wyse ther myght it nocht be. 2143
But tho cam Anthony And also Raynold,

Which to paynymes made sautes plente,
And of Ausoys the noble kyng hold.

To-Brehaigné-ward cam thes thre told, 2147

Ther bushinentes fayr resplendisig,
As the bryghty² sune light and fayr shinyng. 2149

The Brehaignons
had great need of
succour,

A noble thyng was to behold and se 2150
To-Brehaigné-ward forth faste were passyng,
Which gret nede had to socour and surete,

¹ MS. "Criftyng."

² Sic in MS.

- For gretly thai were thaim ouerpressing ;
 The Brehaignons went out thaim Faste trussing,
 Wheroff Brehaignè was Astoned sore,
 And diffendyd thaim febly euermore. 2156
- and were sore
 astonished,
 and defended
 themselves feebly.
- Off thys Eglentyne had gret discomforth, 2157
 She had more leuer had mortalite.
 "Als ! dede is," said, "my fader, my comfort ;
 Fader ne moder haue I noght, perde !
 here bide And dwell most, orpheline to se. 2161
 What now willt thou don, woful Eglentine ?
 To gret heuynesse off-fors moste thou incline ;
- Eglentine would
 rather have been
 dead.
 She laments her
 father, and knows
 not what she, an
 orphan, will now
 do;
- For now I se here the destruccïon 2164
 Off all my regyon And Rewme roial.
 Als ! caytif ! what shalt thou now don ?
 In what maner forme gouerne the now shall ?
 Thy contre shalt se put in exile all, 2168
 Distroed, robbed, peled, and more wurse,
 By ille sarisins ; god gife thaim his curse ! 2170
- The country
 would be robbed,
 pillaged, and
 worse, by evil
 Saracens.
- I wote nere wat to do, neither what to say, 2171
 Ne I may noght to it shappe remedy ;
 Me moste here-After our lord to renay,
 And in sarisine lau beleue fully !"
 Thys complained Eglentine heuily ; 2175
 For sarisins strong Asseilede faste certain
 The cite And town, And strongly gan thaim payn
- [Fol. 45 b.]
 She would have
 to deny our Lord,
 and believe in
 Saracen customs.
 Meanwhile they
 assailed the town
 furiously,
- To haue it, and take by assaute that hour. 2178
 Such trowed it to dresse, which failed tho ;
 For in lytell whyle, thorough goddys labour,
 Er that pay[n]mes trowid it to do,
 A messengere cam the Brehaignons vnto, 2182
 Entred brehaignè without tarying,
 Ful coyly And preualy within entring, 2184
- and thought to
 take it.
 But soon came
 a messenger
 secretly into the
 town unto the
 Brehaignons,

and bade them
make another
sally,

and look out and
see the king of
Alsace approach-
ing, with Anthony
and Raynold;

and not to talk
of death, for the
Poitevins were
at hand,

so well nourished
with meat and
wine as to as-
tonish the
Paynims.

[Fol. 46.]
When the Barons
of Brehaigne
heard this, they
praise God.

Every man takes
good heart, and
the Saracens begin
to quake,

wondering what
news they had
received.

But soon comes
a messenger to
them, saying,

"Lords, leave off
your skirmishing
and retreat,

for behold the
Christians fast
approaching,

Then escried he ryght full hautanly, 2185
"Now go ye forth, And well shall it appere,
Which that will diffend thys cite truly.

Diffend you now well, se your socour here,
Which comyng is you in ryght swifte manere. 2189
Se ye noght her of Ausoys come the kyng,
Anthony And Raynold *with* hym doth bryng?

Moche ther comyng is you vnto socour, 2192
Ne haue ye no worde deth vnto, sothlesse.
For the noble Duke Anthony of honour,
And raynold hys brother to this place thaim dresse;
With thaim peyteuyns many bryng expresse, 2196
Which norished ben *with* good mete and wyne,
Paynims thay will make to-stoniste incline. 2198

The kyng of Ausoys thaim haue in company, 2199
To socour And aid tho Af Brehaigné."
When the Barons it vnderstode truly,
Thay yildyng thanks to god in trenite.
Eche off thaim diffended scharply to see, 2203
Ther euery man good hert gan to take,
The sarisins it saw, sore gan to quake, 2205

Mvsyng what nouelles or comfort thay hade. 2206
When thai perceiued thaim to contune so,
"Se," on said, "A messyngere comyng sad;"
Whiche *with* full shil vois cried right loude tho,
"your escarmish, lordes, lete passe And goo. 2210
Vn-to your loges make fair retrete Anon,
Withdraw, remeue hens time is that we dōne.

For cristyn peple comyng fast many se, 2213
To comforth tho within, sumdele¹ fered,

³ MS. "famdele."

- Off Army peple Full many here bee,
 (The felde ouerall, lo ! ben couered),
 Which us cometh, by gret wreth stered." 2217
 Then thes paynymes wrethfully ther-thens
 Whent, leuyng Anon ther stourdy uiolens. 2219
- Thens to ther logges went thay retornyng, 2220
 And not-For-pat made clariners vp-blow ;
 And ther batailles Anon ordaynyng.
 Off that other part Anthony so grow
 Hys batail renged, comyng to be know ; 2224
 When entreproched thys huge hostes to,
 Sarisins strongly ther thaim doubted tho. 2226
- The cristin peple tho ran thaim vppon ; 2227
 Persed And brokyng shildes were many ;
 Tho cristin went toward thaim enui[r]on,
 The sarisins went thaim to deffend withly ;¹
 Ther A myghty stour men shold see to eye. 2231
 To off thaim hath ther cast don Raynold,
 Meruelous strokes smote he as man bold ; 2233
- And ther Anthony hys foes caste dōn, 2234
 All peple hym drad And sore hym gan doute.
 A paynym to smyte went he forth Anon,
 hym not warented harnes ne helme About ;
 For hys swerd entred hys hed thorough-oute, 2238
 Which ther rent And cleffe dōn the theth² vn-to,
 he gan fall to erth with gapyng throte tho. 2240
- Tho cristin manly gan do at that day, 2241
 Euery forth went with strokes smyting.
 Tho went lusignens escrying allway,
 " lordys, Barons, Afor here passyng,
 Vppon the paynymes be ye wel fighting !" 2245

by whom all the
 fields are covered
 over."

The Paynims
 thereupon retreat,

returning to their
 tents.

Preparations are
 made for battle
 on both sides,
 and the Saracens
 are struck with
 terror.

[Fol. 46 b.]

Then were many
 shields pierced
 and broken ;

there might be
 seen a mighty
 battle.

Anthony smites
 a Paynim, whom
 neither helm nor
 harness guarded
 from the blow ;
 for the sword
 clove his head
 to the teeth.

Then went the
 Lusignans, crying
 out, " Lords and
 barons, fight
 well !"

¹ "wightly" (?). See l. 2260.
 PARTENAY.

² Sic in MS.
 G

The king of
Cracow, in
great wrath,

The kyng of Craquo¹ ful wroght tho he was,
When hys peple saw such hurtes purchas, 2247

comes to the
rescue, and smites
down a Christian
to the grass;

TO thaim socour hym efforced tho, 2248
With gret strength And myght his swerd gan
enbrace,

hys swerd fershly shone, And by gret vertu, lo!
A cristin hath he caste dōn vppon the grace,
Al deth to ground laid throwen in the place. 2252

then he cries
aloud, "O ye
Christians,

After Craquo¹ hily cried And grad,
"O ye cristin, your dethe now here had; 2254

[Fol. 47]
you shall all die!"

All shall ye dye, escape ye ne may, 2255
Forsoth here by me of-fors most ye dy."

But Raynold
strained his brand
of steel fiercely,
and smote the
king with such
force that he
rent his head
to the teeth.

hys langage greuyd moche Raynold that day,
With spores smote faste his course[r] bigly,
With hand strained hys brande of stile fersly, 2259
And wightly went to smite the kyng Craquo,¹
By such fors And strenght hed rent teth vnto.

To death fell the
king;

Bustesly And rude the stroke gan descend, 2262
Raynold caste hym don, to deth the king fall;
Wherwith hys peple to discomfort wend,

and the Saracens
stayed no longer,
but turned their
horses round

No lenger sogerned sarisins, gret ne small.
With ther coursers ther ways torned all; 2266
When thay perceiued and saw ther kyng slayn,
Thay thaim held tho All discomfite plain. 2268

and fled openly.

In the swift
pursuit, all the
Saracens are cut
to pieces like flesh
cut upon the
stalls.

APertly And Openly torned to flight, 2269
But peiteuins tho pursute after made,
Vppon sarisins smote and bete dōn ryght,
Tham all to-chapped And kerue in pecis sad,
As men don the flesh vppon the stal had. 2273
Anthony, the full noble souerayn,
Off paynyns hath ryght manyon slain. 2275

¹ MS. "Traquo."

- The sarisins thaim held for discomfight ; 2276
 he rent And tare don all he gan attain.
 The kyng of Ausois, Also A good knight,
 He hym bare ful wel And nobilly certain.
 All the paynymes ther of trouth were slain ; 2280
 When ther perceiued the king Ausois bold
 The kyng of Craquo¹ standed and all cold, 2282
- And of painymes so full gret fusion, 2283
 Ther he commaunded hys peple unto
 That unto on hepe put shuld be echon.
 Ryght As he had sayd, so ther was it do.
 The paynyms hepid strongly An hye tho, 2287
 In euery part put to was the fire,
 Ther paynymes were bruled and brend entire. 2289
- Off Sarsons² A man shold venge hym ryght so, 2290
 For of verray trought of Craquo¹ the kyng
 like made hys brother to Askis brend tho.
 Anthony And Raynold ther were logging
 In tentes reised which thei were finding ; 2294
 The peiteuins ther logged in-ly well,
 And sarisins disloged eueridelle. 2296
- The kyng [of] Ausois lefte³ thes holy nightes, 2297
 Vnto the town went he ther forth A-non,
 With hym An hundred of noble knightis,
 Of moste wurthiest being enuiron,
 And moste hightiest goodly of person. 2301
 Ther fair Eglentine comyng hym Agayn,
 What-so she gan do wel be-cam certayn ; 2303
- Hvmbly And swetly salute she the kyng, 2304
 For hir uncle was he naturally ;
 The kyng gentilly hir ther embrasing,
 After hyr gan kysse ryght full curtoisly.

Anthony rent and
tare all he could
attain to,

and at last all
the Paynyms
were slain.

[Fol. 47 b.]

The king of
Alsace bids that
all the dead
bodies should be
laid upon a heap,
and burnt ;
and thus was
it done.

It was in revenge
for the way in
which the king of
Cracow had burnt
his brother's
body.

The Polteuins
lodge well in the
enemy's tents.

The king of
Alsace and 100
knights ride off
to the town.

Eglentine comes
to meet them,

and salutes her
uncle.

¹ MS. "Traquo." ² MS. "Garsons." ³ MS. "lefte."

He assures his
niece that her
father's death is
well avenged;

"Fair nece," said the kyng, "here I you affy 2308
That your fadir Deth auenged is well;
Be ye noyht wroth, displease you no dell. 2310

[Fol. 48]

and that she
should now
comfort herself,
since her enemies
were fully repaid
all their wages,

YE haue sayn hys deth uenged *with* gret fors; 2311
The king of Craquo¹ for hym is ther ded;
Off your fader ne haue mynde ne remors,
Thys said king Craquo¹ brende haue I in-ded.
Comfort your-self, that is wit and womanhed; 2315
iff Any damage don haue in contre,
Off ther wages thay truly payed be. 2317

and had failed
utterly in their
design;

so that no shame
or reproach now
attached to her.

NO more after this nedith noight to doute; 2318
Thay trowed under fote put the contre,
Now haue thai failed of ther art all-out; e
And of shame no-thing certes haue not ye,
Wherfor reproche or repref shold be. 2322
I haue wonnen that nedith you thys houre,
Acquired haue ye worship and honoure." 2324

She replies that
her heart is
sorrowful when
she thinks upon
her father's death.

"Was not he my
brother?" replies
her uncle;

"HA, sir," she said, "good lord souerain, 2325
My gentile uncle, and my ful swet frend,
When I me bethenke on my fader slayn,
A-non my hert *within* wepingly is tend."
"Was not he my brother?" said the kyng at end;
"hyt behouith us sorow to lete passe,
Pray we god on hym haue mercy and grace. 2331

"we will perform
the funeral rites
to-morrow, and
pray for his soul."

A thousand
pounds of wax
were made for
the occasion.

HIS funerall obseque to morn we do, 2332
And for hys good soule to our lord pray we."
Ryght as he sayd, don was al thyng tho.
A thousand pound of wax fourged and made she,
As for the morn to dōn the obseque, 2336
At sodayn warnyng had thay such huge light,
Anthony And Raynolde both were ther ryght;

¹ MS. "Traquo."

- Y**nly will¹ was don that which shold be do. 2339 [Fol. 48 b.]
 Moche the Brehaignons gan vnto behold
 The habillite of thes compaynouns tho,
 Thes said wurthy men, thes to brethren hold,²
 That myght noght be wery, yonge ne olde, 2343
 As thaim vnto see so sette verily,
 Large, long, gret, strong, streight, wel thaught
 truly. 2345
- T**her Abasshed And stonde were many 2346
 Off thys lyons hurt that thai gan behold,
 Setten in the skin strangely, lo! ful hy
 Off hir Anthony, brother to Raynold;
 For the hurt to thaim Appered ther unfold, 2350
 Wherof euery man basshed was samfayl,
 Off gretnesse of it had thay gret meruail. 2352
- N**uer to hym saw non like ne egall, 2353
 Then after said tho of town And cite
 That raynold was habill man with-all,
 As to discomfite well shappen was he
 A rewme or³ empire of full large contre; 2357
 Saf but that o eye had, thay gan complayn,
 Al other membres commanded thay certain. 2359
- L**Enger nedith noght to declare ne tell 2360
 his obseque dōn without doubte Any,
 Worshipfully And honorably wel.
 Then the kyng gan hold A parlement truly,
 Where had tho was A noble company, 2364
 Withe full wurthy men As of Brehaignè,
 The king saing, "Barons, understande me, 2366
- H**it you behouith rewarde and behold 2367
 ho shall doo gouerne And rule this contre,
 [Fol. 49]
 and advises them
 to choose a new
 king.

¹ "well" (?). ² "bold" (?). See note.
³ MS. "of." See note.

- And ho your king shold be know now ye shold,
For presently now *with-out* king ye be.”
- They reply that it is his business entirely,** Ther hym Answering, “good ryght is to se, 2371
But the werke therof fully doth pertain
And all the labour in you hole and plain. 2373
- as he is the next heir, if Eglentine should die.** **F**Or gif Eglentyne were ended And gōn, 2374
you to enherite shold fall the contre ;
The purueaunce therof lith you uppon,
It is therefore for him to choose whom she shall marry. Auaunce you now, for hys loue in trinite,
So that thys contre well purueyed be 2378
Off on, chosen by you, that Eglentyne
May¹ marie and gouerne us and our line.” 2380
- The king inquires whom they wish her to marry.** **T**he kyng Answered, “to my parte you say, 2381
To whom behouith my nece to mary?
Or for whom² wold ye? you besech All-way,
That ye me say your Aulse fully.”
- They reply that they leave it entirely to him.** “Sir, at your deuise,” the Barons said surely, 2385
“Ryght As ye will, so certes will we doo ;
No knight will resceiue but at your plesire, lo !
- He replies that in that case they shall have for a lord one who is a worthy and famous knight.** **A**l the werke therof we put you uppon.” 2388
“Then in goddis name, sires, lete me do ”—
(This Answered thys noble kyng Anon)—
“On shal ye haue gentile And curtois to,
A man of goodnesse and of honour also, 2392
Whom ye shall resceiue As unto your lorde,
Is hardy wurthi knight, good of recorde ; 2394
- [Fol. 49 b.] **N**On other I will certes to you take. 2395
Then to brothers haue, noble kynges to,
And An hye Duke,” to thaim thys the kyng spake,
“In your grette nede you aid hath also ;

¹ MS. “Many.”² MS. “whon.”

To thys place comyn ferre contrees fro ;	2399	and one of them a duke, have saved their city.
Deliuerd hath your noble Cite		
Fro the paynimes And all your contre."	2401	

Raynold called forth by the kyng Anon, 2402
 Sayng, "vnto you will I couenaunt hold."

The kyng <i>with</i> uois hye ¹ said, hurd manyon,		He therefore calls Raynold, and tells him he will perform the promise he made him,
"Come forth here ! Appere ! come forth, Raynold !		that he would make him a king.
Approche, As come nerre, swete frend, As man hold. ²		
here-beforn I haue you be promysing		
That of this contre make you wold A kyng.	2408	

Yill not you lye, but to it consent, 2409
 For A king ne shold lye³ ne be gabbyng ;
 My nece Eglentine to wife shal ye hent
 With all [the] rewme And that to it longing.
 Will ye hir now take, the land diffending ? 2413
 Of hyr And hyrs you lorde shall I make,
 And all longith hir ye As for to take." 2415

Raynold is to have his niece and all the kingdom.

W hen sir Anthony All thys vnderstode,	2416	Sir Anthony thanks the king heartily,
he taried noght to Answere redy,		
he hartly thankyng thys noble king good		
That fair Eglentine Raynolde shold mary.		
"Off your fre kyndenesse And curtesy	2420	and promises that Raynold shall defend the country well.
The contre shall diffende, ruling well the lande ;		
For werre ⁴ he can well, knightly is off hand."		

W hen thes Barons thys Answere had fong,	2423	[Fol. 50] The barons praise Our Lord and Our Lady
To our lorde thankes yeldyng full hyly,		
And to oure lady in thar hertes strong,		

¹ MS. "hyr." Fr. text, "en hault." ² "bold" (?).

³ MS. "by." Fr. text, "mentir."

⁴ Or "werie;" but "werre" is right.

when they per-
ceive how strong
and large a man
Raynold is.

Ther thay perceued hym strong, large, And hy ;
The lande to gouerne thought wold pesibilly. 2427
Thys kyng ordayned his nece Eglentine
All that pertain shold A quene of ray fine. 2429

Raynold and
Eglentine, being
finely arrayed,
are married ;

And Raynold like-wise put hym in Aray¹ 2430
As pertained to kinges hye corage.

and the marriage-
feast lasted fifteen
days.

The mariage don And finished that day
Beforene the syght of all the Baronage ;
Thys fest ther roiall fourged by tho sage ; 2434
Hit days fiftene endured largely,
Full noble gyftes ther geuen frely. 2436

Never were
fairer presents
given than were
then given by
Eglentine.

Neuer was yeuen more fairer thinges, 2437
Robes, coursers, iew[e]lles forth present.

There were 1000
men there from
the country,
besides the
"townish"
people.

Also ther had thes honourous kinges
Ioustes, tornementes full excellent
In presence of ladies courtois And gent. 2441
Presently ther had A thousand of contre,
Without tho townishe peple, vnto se. 2443

Raynold gained
great honour in
the tournamets,

But Raynold ther-thens bare the grete honour 2444
That of Brehaignons lord was tho present ;

and is greeted
with loud acclaim
on all sides.

Ther saing al with O wis² pat hour,
"Lif, lif oure noble kinge reuerent !
For A man hym know vnto All entent ! 2448
And blissed be he hym A-place gan bring !"
At feftene dais end cessed the festing. 2450

.[[Fol. 50 b.]

Peple toke ther leue homeward to repaire, 2451
The ladies And damycelles All,

Duke Anthony
takes his leave,

Off whom there was had manyon And fayre.
The Duke Anthony hys leue toke in hall,
In-to way hym sette at that enteruall, 2455

¹ In the margin, *Raynold marr[ies] Eglentyne, & ys kyng of breh[aïne]*.

² "with O vois" (?). MS. "with .O. wis."

Towarde luxembrough, he and his mayne,
Which were full noble And gentile to see. 2457 and returns home
to Luxemburg.

And in Brehaignè gan to byde And dwell 2458 Raynold acquires
Raynold the hye kyng, whome gan to honoure great honour as
All the wide contre courtoisly And well, king of Bre-
haigne,
And by hys noblesse be such gouvernoure,
Eche man his dedes preised hugely that houre. 2462
In Frise made gret werre Rainold er he reste and carries on
At ortholegne off the grett conqueste, 2464 a great war in
Friesland,

Bi hys strength Denmarke gan he to acquere; 2465 and also conquers
In his tyme regned As man pusantly; Denmark.
Full goodly leuid hys lif here entire;
And As that man non here more wurthy
Was not A-thys-side the romayns truly. 2469
As off hym here no more declare att All,
Off the Duke Anthony talke & speke me shall; We leave him
now, and return
to Duke Anthony.

Anthony the Duke, And off Ausoys the kyng, 2472 Anthony and the
Which were courtois, gentile, connyng, And sage. king of Alsace
Fro Brehaignè tho ensemble comyng, arrive at Luxem-
burg, where they
After at luxemborugh toke ther hostage. part;
Ther on fro other parted of viage, 2476 and the king of
Alsace returns
At luxemborugh king Ausois not wold sogourn, home.
Al streight in-to hys contre gan retourn.¹ 2478

Anthony with hys wife gan vnto remayn, 2479 [Fol. 51]
For litill while had thai married be. Anthony remains
awhile with his
Ful moche hir louing with perfecte hert plain, wife, whom he
loved heartily.
In wil and dede hir loued hertly he,
As any man cowde A-this-side the se. 2483

¹ Here follows the catchword—"Anthony with hys wyffe."

They had two
children, one
named Bertran,

hys wyfe by hym had to cheldren preflight,¹
On named Bertran, which was A good knight;²

and the other
Lochier; who
freed the passes
of Ardennes (?),
bult Givet (?),

The younger had to name lochier the gud; 2486

he delyuerd straytes all and gyed

As of dardane, which plente had wood,

Many A good knight³ ther fortified;

and made the
bridge of Me-
zieres over the
Meuse.

ywon all-ther-first ther he edified; 2490

Vppon meuse the noble brigg made

Off meisiere, after A-conqueste had 2492

Many other places by hug prowessse; 2493

Of al gret noblesse thys said man tho was.

Anthony conquers
the Earl of Fri-
burg, and passes
through Austria,
where he con-
quers many a
region.

Anthony wered with strong businesse

The Erle of Faborugh,⁴ conquest gate by gras;

Passyng Aritrige,⁵ many richesse made purchas, 2497

And all put in-to hys subieccion,

Conqueryng ther many A regyon. 2499

Bertran, An-
thony's eldest son,
marries the king
of Alsace's daugh-
ter, and succeeds
to his kingdom.

After, Bertran the eldeste son became, 2500

Within litell whyle, ful gret And ryght manly;

To wyfe toke the doughter of Ausoys kyng of fame;

A full good knight was, gentile And wurthy,

Entrepreignant, coragious, and hardy,⁶ 2504

And more often-tymes than I can you say;

kyng of Ausoys was after the kynges day; 2506

[Fol. 51 b.]
Thus he and his
brother

Hys⁷ doughter married, As beforne gan tell, 2507

Which lady tho was of all the contre.

Bertran ther regned and gouerned welle.

¹ MS. "prefight."

² In the margin *y^e elder Bertran, Anton[y] sons, & y^e younger lochy[er]*.

³ "brought" (?).

⁴ "Friborough" (?).

⁵ "Autrige" (?).

⁶ In the margin, *Bertran kyng of Ausoys*.

⁷ MS. "Hhys."

Thes brethren to regned As men fre,
 That by strenght & myght put vnder fote in fe 2511
 All tho which thaim made trouble or noysance.
 Off thaim will I reste me here this instance. 2513

put underfoot all
 that troubled
 and annoyed
 them.
 We shall speak of
 them no more.

TO Melusine shall I retorn Again, 2514
 And my mater ayen taken shall bee,
 how that Raymound hym gouerned certain.
 Ther full excellently regned he,
 In places fele, in many A contre, 2518
 By strenght of swerd conquered of corage ;
 For hys noblesse All Barons gan do hym homage.

We return to
 Melusine.

Raymond reigned
 excellently,
 and all did him
 homage.

GAffray with grette toth becam man full grette, 2521
 Ryght myghty, strong, fers, whight, & full pusaunt ;
 In werring A strong werriour ryght fet ;¹
 Dayly his vertu preuyngly gan haunt.
 For he conquered Guedon the huge Geaunt, 2525
 And by knightly strenght hym ther discomfight,
 Which Geaunt wasted the contre don ryght, 2527

Geoffrey with
 the great tooth
 became a full
 great man ;

and conquered
 and discomfited
 the giant Guedon.

Every man strongly gan hym to redoute, 2528
 To Rochel toke sauegarde, for all hym drad ;
 he pateysed² the contre thorough-oute,
 As well in meddes As at endys had.
 When Geffray understod thes nouelles sprad, 2532
 And pat hym called with gret toth tho,
 He swere hys oth Again hym wold he go ; 2534

for fear of whom
 all men were
 taking refuge
 in Rochelle.

When Geoffrey
 heard of this,
 he swore he
 would go against
 him

And in hert thought well hym to discomfight, 2535
 To the swete plesire of kyng of glory
 Which yeuth all tho that wyll victory ryght.
 His fader Raymounde full wo and sory,
 For the Geant he doubted heuily, 2539

[Fol. 52]
 and discomfited
 him.

But his father
 Raymond was
 woful and sory,

¹ "fet" (?).

² MS. "paceyfed."

and in fear for
Geoffrey's safety.

For that he was so horrible grete ;
Off Geffray in mynde ful huge doubte he get. -

Geoffrey arms,
and departs with
nine others.

Geffray *with* gret toth Armed hym full preste, 2542
hym-selfenn the tenth went to that partè,

Passyng forth hys way *without* any ryste,¹
Here shal I hym leue, no more now said be ;

I shall return
now to Melusine,
who had yet two
more sons,

Retorn Againe shall to Melusine fre, 2546

The swet, the courtois, the benigne also,
Which after thys bare wurthy children to, 2548

one called Fromont,
the other
Thierry.

Ryght As we find A litterall scripture, 2549
On called Fromont, Another Thierry.

Fromont was a
great clerk, and
loved religion,
so that he wished
to become a monk

For-soth fromont was A good creature,
An huge gret clerke ful of clergy,
The Abbey of malers louyd feruently ; 2553
Callyng to god, louyng relygion,
So that to hym cam of deuocion 2555

in the Abbey of
Maillezais ;

IN the said abbey A monke hym yilding. 2556
Fro thens departed *without* resting plain,

and therefore
ran to his father,
and besought him
to consent to his
wearing the
monk's habit.

Vnto hys fader faste he cam rennyng,
A-non hym ther made thys requeste certane,
Be-sought the uesture of Malers myght attain, 2560
On monke habite A monke hym to make.
When Raymound hurd thys, wo was for hir² sake ;

[Fol. 52 b.]
Raymond marvels
greatly,
and bids him
regard Anthony
and his other
brethren, who
are all noble
knights.

HE merueled gretly, to fromont³ saing, 2563
“ Fair sone, how is thys ? A ! good lord hy !

Wil ye A monke be nedis be-comyng ?
Reward and behold your brother Anthony,
And all your bretherin being full knightly, 2567
Which ben so noble knightes to se !

Vnto be A monke certes may noght be ; 2569

¹ *Sic* ; for “ refte.”

² “ his ” (?)

³ MS. “ formont.”

- S**O god be pleased, monke shall ye nought be. 2570 He ought not to wish for the order of monkhood, but of knighthood.
- Another ordre to you yiff I shall,
A knyght will you mak of full hye degre
As your brethren ben named ryght roiall.”
- Fromont Answered to hys fader all 2574 But Fromont says he would never take on himself this order,
- That he neuer wold be in ordre of knight,
Neither armes bere, but serue god to ryght, 2576
- “**P**rayng to oure lorde, vnto hys hy empire, 2577
For you, my moder, and my bretherin all ;
Vnto be A mo[n]ke I you here require,
No-thing so moche coueyte ne desire shall
As in maillers Abbay be perpetual. 2581 and covets nothing so much as to remain in the abbey for ever,
That place or cite haue I nought in hate,
For ther wold I use all my lifes fate. 2583 and spend all his life there.
- B**Esech you and pray, cause me not it refuse ; 2584
Cherefull fader myne, in you al the hold.”
- Raymounde saw wele herd was it excuse,
To Melusine sent A messinger bold
Which As for that tyme the beste gan unfolde ; 2588 Raymond sees it is hard to refuse, and therefore sends a message about it to Melusine,
Then the messynger gan declare and tel
Al that Raymounde had told hir eueridell, 2590
- “**H**Ou Fromont A monke of maillers wold be. 2591 [Fol. 53]
Hastily Raymound sent, for ioy of it had non,
To ende that for Fromont ordayn shold she,
If pleased wold be, A crowne his hed uppon,
And *pat* claustrall monke he shold be made on 2595 to the end that she should make Fromont a claustral monk in the royal abbey of Maillezais.
In faire maillers, that ministre roiall,
That lorde for to serue which is eternall.” 2597
- T**he fair Melusine Answerde hym tho ; 2598 Melusine sends back an answer that she always submits to her lord's command,
“ Off my part ye go, vnto my lord say,
At hys plesaunce all ther-of will I doo,
Me submitte vnto hys ordinaunce all-way ;

and will obey
gladly.

At hys plesire be I will, noght say nay ; 2602

For whatsomeuer pleasith hys hynes,
hit liketh me wel, hou-so he it dresse." 2604

The messenger,
arriving next
morning, finds
Raymond ready
dressed, and de-
livers Melusine's
message.

Thens the messinger retorned anon, 2605

No lenger sogorne in that place ne wold ;

Fro thens retornyng vnto Raymonde gūn,

A-morn him found Al redy rayd to behold ; 2609

Al hir answeere the messinger hym told.

Ful gret ioy of hert in hym gan surmount,

Anon Raymounde called after Fromount. 2611

Raymond tells
Fromont that
Melusine has
left the whole
matter at his
own disposal,

HE saide to Fromont, "thi fader vnderstande ; 2612

Sir, for the haue sent thy good moder vnto,

Iff it pleased hir For to be know, and

Where hir will were monke shold be, or no.

Where-of the charge lefte to me hath, lo ! 2616

and he will there-
fore permit him

With the cure and charge enfeffed hath me.

Wherfor, Fromont, behold And see ye, 2618

[Fol. 53 b.]

either to go to
the abbey of
Maillezais, or to
"Merk" minster,
or to "Brough-
dieu ;"

Iff nedis ye will take thys said habite 2619

In mallers Abbay your liffes space ;

Or other minstre to your appetite,

As in Merkminstre, which is A faire place ;

Or iff ye will at Brough-dieu by grace ; 2623

In that ye desire A monke for to be,

yo may full well in on of thes thre. 2625

or that, if he
wished to be a
canon, he should
be canon of
Poitiers and
also of Tours
in Touraine,
and of Saint
Martin's,

FORsoth if ye will be A Chanon, 2626

Of peiters a Chanon certes shal ye be ;

Enherite ye shall As moche As thre Anon ;

Toures in tourayn, poscede it shal ye,

Seint¹ Martins with the Graunt esglise in fe ; 2630

All shall be dōn ryght At my deuyse,

And therof do make dedes in best wise, 2632

¹ MS. "Seing."

- A**nd of our lady of Chartres also. 2633 and of Chartres
 yff ye wyll of trouth fro parys noght scape, also. Or he
 Be noght Abasshed in it for to goo, might go to Paris
 if he pleased,
- With the Pope will be quented for A Iape,
 That nothyng shal be which me shall escape. 2637 Afterwards he
 should have a
 bishopric, or, if
 he liked, two,
- After A Bisshupriche if it lust to craue,
 Anot[h]er Bisshupriche Als shal ye haue, 2639
- B**E it pareys, Bewuais, or Aras." 2640 whether of Paris,
 Beauvais, or
 Arras. But
 Fromont chooses
 to be simply a
 monk of Malle-
 zais, and nothing
 else.
- Fromont said, "shal I be A Chanon?
 Nay, nay, but A monke, by our lordes gras,
 Off Maillers it is myn entencion.
 Other will I noght off wordly good non 2644
 Neuer at no day, while lif may endure,
 For that place haue I chosin to me sure." 2646
- T**hys Fromont outring hys Fader vnto, 2647 [Fol. 51]
 "Then off goddis part," to hym said Raymounde, Raymond at
 last accedes,
 "Sin it plesith you, it shal bene ryght soo.
 And loke that For us your prayers in founte."
 Fromont Anon Answered that stounde, 2651
 "yff it please our lord, my power do shall."
 longer parlement of it nedith noght at all, 2653 and Fromont
 promises to
 pray for him.
- T**he habite he toke, clothed opiny, 2654 He therefore
 takes the habit,
 The monkes ther shewid great gentillesse;
 With huge nobley clothed was to ey
 For hys fader loue, Raymounde sothlesse;
 And for Melusine his moders noblesse. 2658
 All ther hole couent gret ioy made ther ryght,
 And him chered in beste wise thei myght. 2660 and gladly wel-
 comed by the
 whole convent.
- B**y processe therof ful ill after came. 2661 This was the
 source of all the
 evils that after-
 wards befell the
 family.
 Ther-for wer thei all after disherite
 By Gafray with gret toth; After had gret grame,

For Geoffrey,
in his wrath,
set the abbey
on fire,

Which in hert was in full dolorous plite ;
For therof he had A full gret dispite, 2665
Without taryng to Mallers cam he,
hit brende and sett Afire by his cruelte 2667

and burnt there
100 monkes on a
certain *Tuesday*,

the day of Mars
the god of battle.

BOth in the monkes, Abbot, and Abbay ; 2668
A hundred monkes w^{it}hin brende he tho.
Thys mischefe ther had in A tewisday,
For Mars was the god longing bataill to,
Vail that vail might, the monkys brend so. 2672
That don, no lenger ther wold noght sogoürn,
Fro thens he comyng, faste gan to retorn. 2674

[[Fol. 54 b.]

Meanwhile '
Melusine was at
Vouvent city,

whither Ray-
mond came to
visit her.

Off this here shall leue, speking of melusine. 2675
At vavuant cite redily she was,
To sonne And winde puttyng hir robys fine,
Which newly were come by fortunat cas,
Neuer Aforne bonde to such seruice bas. 2679
Bi that Raymounde was comyn to þe porte,
And full gladly sette ther to take disporte, 2681

They see two
messengers come,
who bring letters
from Anthony
and Raynold,

Raymond reads
them,

Ther thay saw come forth messingers to, 2682
Which fele letters brought w^{it}h breffes many
Of Anthony hys part, A pusant man tho,
And of Raynold the suffisant kyng hy.
To Raymounde thai tuke thes letters hastily, 2686
he thaim resceiued And the wax gan breke,
The letters gan rede As humble man and meke.

and laughs for
joy, and calls
Melusine,

who thanks him,
and rejoices with
him,

With a feruent ioy hys hert gan laugh tho, 2689
Melusine Anon forth-w^{it}h gan to call.
She hid hir right noght, Anon cam hym to,
"Thys letters behald," said he ouerall.
"Raymound, I you thanke, my lord principall." 2693
Then vnto Raymound fair Melusine said,
"Certes, this goth well at thys houred braid. 2695

- I** thoroughly know all thes nouell tidinges 2696
 Full good and fair ben vnto vs this hour,
 Wherof thanke our lord the king of kinges,
 Which oure sones han put to such honour.
 Thre¹ of tham ben thorough knightly laboure 2700
 Kynges full myghty, And on A duke ful hy ;
 yut god be thanked, haue we here full ny 2702
- O**n off our sones monke in An Abbay, 2703
 Which daily for vs besechith god an hy ;
 At mallers hath hys byding thys day,
 Wher god he praith to socour vs truly,
 And that so myght pray to hys plesance dayly, 2707
 That neuer vs haue in obliuion ;
 For assigned hath will our sones echon. 2709
- T**hay bene well taught, inly wise and sage ; 2710
 Foure of tham yut ben *with* vs here bydyng,
 Which in thys house ben mery in corage.
 Oure lord of hys grace so thaim be theching,
 That hyly thai may in tyme be regning, 2714
 To that shall thay noght faut no-thing truly,
 So god thaim aide and our lady mary !” 2716
- T**he nouell streight Aboute enuironnee 2717
 And knowen ouerall in eche place and cite ;
 Whereof reioyed euery man to se,
 Fiftene dais were ny in suche delite,
 Making ryght gret ioy, bidding the same plite, 2721
 Where-for ther frendes feste wold merily ;
 In continuaunce thought do it hertly. 2723
- S**o it cam and fill in a scaturday, 2724
 That Raymounde loste the fair melusine, [lo !]
 As at other days don had alway,
 But noght enquered hou the dede gan goo ;
- and praises the
King of kings,
who had raised
her sons to so
high honour.
- [Fol. 55]
She rejoices also
to think that one
of her sons is in
an abbey,
- and prays God
daily to be
mindful of them.
- Four of her sons
are yet at home :
- but they will
want nothing,
if God and our
Lady Mary aid
them.
- The glad news
soon spread
throughout
every city,
- and a fifteen-
days' feast is
held in celebra-
tion of it.
- It befell on the
Saturday, that
Raymond lost
Melusine, as he
had often done
before on that
day of the week.

¹ MS. "There."

To what place she went, or qwhat she wolde do. 2728
 yn absence but good neuer she ne thought,
 But all that to hys plesaunce myght be wrought.

[Fol. 55 b.]
 But that day, his
 brother, the Earl
 of Forest, arrived
 at Vouvant,

the day being
 without wind
 and clear.

Tho it cam and fill As in that mornynge, 2731
 That hys brother, which tho Erle of foreste was,
 For ther Fader dede long biforn being,
 At vavuent that day riuage gan purchas.
 The thyme fair, without wynde hye or bas, 2735
 The morni[n]g ryght fair shuwynge, inly clere,
 Raymounde his brother saw com drawing nere ;

Raymond received
 him brotherly ;

and many barons
 and ladies came to
 the feast which
 was then being
 held.

HE him resceiued uerray brotherly ; 2738
 But after it cam to gret mischef preste.¹
 Vnto this feste cam Barons full many,
 Which notable were And ryght ful honeste,
 Ther welcomynge the Erle of foreste, 2742
 Als of lades cam grett fusion,
 Whos comynge was the festes encheson. 2744

Then said the Earl
 to Raymond,
 " Bid your wife
 appear."

But Raymond
 says she shall ap-
 pear the next day.

Then hym said the Erle of the wild foreste, 2745
 " Raymounde, fair brother, now me here entend,
 lete your wife appere here at thys said feste."
 Raymounde Answerd, As not wold condissend,
 " To-morne shall hir se, chere brother And frend ;"
 Anon conueid to sitte att the table,
 Thys fest plener And ryght delectable. 2751

After the feast is
 over for that day,

the Earl draws
 Raymond aside,

A fter Anon As thai dined hade, 2752
 And fro the table reised up tho were,
 The Erle of foreste Raymound by hand lad,
 A litill drawing fro other apart there,
 Thys gan he to say ther in this manere :— 2756

¹ MS. "prifte."

“Raymounde, fair brother, said is in good feith ; and tells him that
ye be enchanted, As the peple seith. 2758 the people say he
is bewitched,

I can noght say how ye may bere the shame. 2759 [Fol. 56]
Men sayn ouerall, brother, I you say, and that he is
ye not so hardy (in wreth ne in game) never so hardy
Of your wif enquire, certes, at no day, as to ask his wife
(Which vnto you is gret diffame Alway), where she goes to
To what place she torn ne hoder wyll go, on the Saturday ;
Or in what manere hir gouerneth, lo ! 2765

And what knowen ye what she doth *pat* day ? 2766 also that it is said
Men sain ouerall, so god my soule saue, she is unfaithful
That all disording is she All-way ; to him on that
That day hir body Anothir man shall haue, day.
To you trayteresse, other so to craue ; 2770
And som other sayn she is off the fayry. He therefore
Go thys day, brother, And know it verly ; 2772 advises him to
know the truth,

Putteth payn to haue off it knowleching ; 2773
To go And enquire good is ye do so ;
For hide shold noght she As fro you no-thing, because she ought
I say it yow now As my brother vnto, to hide nothing
Now do As ye seme beste vnto be do ; 2777 from him.
I beleue she doth you shame And outrage.” Raymond blushes
Raymound blussched, changing his corage, 2779 for anger,

So malice And wrought, wiste noght what to say ;
For wo And heuinesse full faste swatte he. and sweats for
Anon went thens, hys swerd fet *pat* day ; sorrow.
Full well he knew where his wife made entre ;
There he faste knakked where he had noght be ; 2784 He seizes his
There A dore tho perceiued he certain sword, and hur-
Off yre Aforn hym *with* hys eyes twain. 2786 ries on till he
sees before him
a door of iron.

[Fol. 56 b.]

IN moche thyng thought, And after thought Anon,
That hys wife had do som misdede tho, 2788
And towards hym som wrong or treson.

Drawing his
sword from
the scabbard,
he drove the
point against the
iron door till he
at last pierced it.

Then drawing his sward the¹ scaberge fro,
The poynt gayn the dore put he ther-vnto, 2791
So he shifte And smote here And ther so faste,
That the yren dore persed at the laste. 2793

Looking through
the hole thus
made,

Alase ! full ill labored was that day ! 2794
At the perced hole in beheld *with* eye
To know what ther was besied faste ay ;

he perceived
Melusine bathing,

Certes ouersone know it shal surely,
And then in hert gret dole shall haue truely ! 2798
At the hole beheld, perceyuing full welle
Melusine, hou she bathed euerydell, 2800

her upper part
white as snow,

and her fashion
most fair,

but beneath she
had a serpent's
tail !

UNto hir nauell shewing ther full white, 2801
like As is the snow A faire branche vppon,
The body welle made, frike in ioly plite,
The visage pure, fresh, clenly hir person,
To properly speke off hir faccion, 2805
Neuer non fairer ne more reuerent ;
But A taill had beneth of serpent ! 2807

It was great and
horrible, barred
with blue and
silver.

Raymond, per-
ceiving this,
cried to God,

Gret And horrible was it verily ; 2808
With siluer And Asure the tail burlid was,
Strongly the water ther bete, it flashed hy.
When that Raymound perceiued this cas,
Which neuer befor to sight gan purchas 2812
In such A state to bath, ther hym blissed faste,
Gretly doubted, cried to god in haste, 2814

[Fol. 57]
though he could
scarcely utter a
word. In order
to stop the hole,
he cut a little
piece of cloth,

But nocht-for-that so moche of drede had, 2815
That vnnethes myght outre wurde ne say.
But to Ende the hole were stopped & faste made,
A litell cloute cute he *with*-out delay.

¹ MS. "ther;" Fr. text, "*du fourrel*."

With wax melled, stopped the hole Alway, 2819 and fastened it
That by it myght noght man perceiue no-thing. in with wax.
Fro thens departed he tho, faste going. 2821

Towarde hys brother thought he to repaire, 2822 He returns to his
Dolorous of hert, full of wrath that stounde. brother, who, see-
Hys brother the erle knew at hys retrair ing him sad, asks
That he better wo in hertte had profounde, him what he has
Trowing uerily that his wif had found. 2826 discovered,
"your wife, had she don gain you As men said, and where he
In som dishoneste place where he¹ shold no braid?" had found her.

Then Raymounde gan speke *with* vois full hautain, Raymond tells
And hym said, "therof ye lye vntrewly, him he lies in his
By your fals throte And youre teeth plain ! throat and in his
In An ill houre here ye entred in surely ; teeth, and bids
Fro my hous ye goo *with* [y]our felony ; 2833 him depart ;
Off my lady no more² speke ye for shame, for that his lady
Sche is pure And clene Als *without* diffame. 2835 is pure.

A more wurthier woman is ther non, 2836
ye haue made me do such A manere thyng
Torn contrary will Again my person.
A-non part here ; hens, foule rebaude being, He tells him that,
For, by my feith, full litill is failling, 2840 unless he departs,
That presently here that I you not sle ; he will slay him ;
Forth depart you hens, by concell of me. 2842 and that he ad-
vises him to go
at once.

Cursed be the hour that euer heder came, 2843 [Fol. 57 b.]
And that tho wurdes saide were Any wise ! He curses the
Neuer toward me retorn noght for shame ! " hour in which
Raymounde semede all witlese to deuise, his brother came,
All merueled that gan it aduertise,³ 2847 and seems all
witless.

¹ "fhe" (?).

² MS. "nomore."

³ MS. "aduerfite," a curious inversion.

The Earl, sore
amazed,

That to his brother so spake and saide.
The Erle, Abashed And foule dismaide, 2849

departs home,
cursing the hour
in which he thus
spoke out.

There thens retournyng in-to his contre, 2850
Full often crussing¹ the hour and the day
That thes wordes scapid or mouthed he.

He laments
bitterly that he
has made Ray-
mond so wroth.

hys brother perceued he haue shold ne may
Neuer pees ne lufe for this gret affray ; 2854
More neuer ne² was woer at no stounde
Then off that he hade wrethed so Raymounde.

Afterwards
Geoffrey came,
and slew the Earl,

HE stroied And made exile the contre ; 2857
For when Gaffray with gret toth it knew,
Ryght deliuerly ther Ariued he,

and gave away
the country he
thus gained to one
of his brothers.

Sette it Afire, the Erle gan sle ther trew
Full vilously *with* huge shame to vew ; 2861
After the contre yaffe of the Foreste
To on hys brother, so gete by conqueste ; 2863

Off the foreste Erle made hym entirely. 2864
Off Gaffray *with* gret toth leue shall now present,

But to return to
Raymond.

And retorn I shall to Raymounde fully,
Which *with* heuinesse sore hym doth torment.
He wepte, he wailed, wofully lament ; 2868
Wonder pale he waxe, wanting his colour,
For ende hade he none of this grett doloure. 2870

He wept and
wailed, and waxed
pale, having no
end of his grief.

[Fol. 58]
"Alas!" he cried,
"there is no
poorer man on
earth than I am!"

Alas! Melusine!
I have lost you!

"Alas! alas!" thys ther saide Raymounde, 2871
"A more purer man in the wordle ne is
Off verray tought then I am this stounde!
Alas! Melusine! this day haue donñ Amys,
That by my diffaute you haue I loste this!" 2875
(For sorow therof so quaked and swat),
"Alas! shall I you leue, loue delicat, 2877

¹ *Sic* in MS.

² "he" (?).

MI swet hert, my good, my loue, And my life? 2878

By the, full dolorous fortune,

Now shall I lese my ioyous thoughtes pensif,

Which me hast made such As I contune.

I shal, lo! caste me in som pittie hume. 2882

What shal I now doo, lord god glorius?

Neuer shal I lagh,¹ neither be ioyous 2884

Now shall I
lose my Joyous
thoughts, and
cast myself into
some pit.

Never shall I
laugh again!"

With that swete lady whom I loued so. 2885

She was my solas, my ioy in ech stede,

My plesaunce, my comfort, my delite to!"

Ther hym dispoilled, entring in his bed;

But slepe myght he noght when that he was led;

he sighed, soghed, wepte *with* teres many,

"lord, wat shal I doo, lord?" said, "lete me dy!"

Concluding his
lament, he un-
dresses and goes
to bed; but can-
not sleep.

He sighs, and
cries,

HA! swet Melusine, yf I you this lese, 2892

I shall go vnto som desert Cite,

hermite or recluse become, god to plesse,

yn som forain place where non enchabite.²

ha! Melusine, my hertes Appetite, 2896

Fair lady, my hert, my loue, my plesaunce,

That you this shold lese by such ill mischaunce!"

"Ha! Melusine,
if I lose thee, I
shall go to some
desert place.

Ha! Melusine!
that I should
thus lose you!"

The hier off his hede tere of with gret pine, 2899

With fist his brest smote, heuily gan mourn,

Full ofte wailed, by-weping Melusine;

In his bed turny[n]g, And efte gan retorn,

In on estat ne myght he noght sogourn; 2903

here on bakke laide, efte the bely vppon,

Torning And wendying euer enuiron. 2905

[Fol. 58 b.]
He tears the hair
off his head,
smites his breast,
and wails.

He turns from
side to side on
the bed.

Then in-to chambre Melusine made entre; 2906

When she was comyng, forth-with Anon

Swetly all naked hir dispoilled she,

Courteisly she went ther the bed vppon,

Melusine then
returns, un-
dresses, and lies
beside him.

¹ *Sic* in MS.

² *Sic* in MS.

- She embraces him, and finds his neck cold,
 With Raymounde she lay in conclusion ; 2910
 She enbrasing hym, collyng amouresly,
 Fynding his nekke cold *with* all the body 2912
- as he was all uncovered.
A cause that he was All uncouered tho, 2913
 And that by greuous beting And turnyng,
 Full ill was he raid, plunged sor in wo.
 In base wise Melusine ther hym sayng,
 "Dolour or anguish be ye ought feling? 2917
 An ouer pale colour haue ye to eye;
 Tell me the truth, I pray.
 Me say ye the trought, besech you hertly. 2919
- Am I not your love? tell me all.
A las ! Am I noght your loue eueridell? 2920
 Fro me shold ye noght hide no maner thing.
 Say me how it is, hele you shal I welle,
 For no wordly thyng not your-selfe hyndryng.
 Confesse ye me if Any il be feling, 2924
 Delyuer you shall A-non openly,
 All hole shall ye be here now presently." 2926
- [Fol. 59]
 Hearing this, he rejoices, thinking she knows no-thing.
When Raymound tho wourdes with eres gan here,
 Reioyed merely, thought no-thing she knew
 Off all that dede which had do entire ;
 Yut knew she it wel, thow noght said of-new,
 Yet she knew all, but would not speak of it, seeing his repentance.
 For he discouered noght (but kepe it trew) 2931
 The dede vnto no person that instaunce,
 And that therof he had uerray repentaunce 2933
- Raymond says, "I have felt great heat :
A hundred tymes more then I can say. 2934
 Raymound hir said, "gret hete haue I had
 In maner of continuauce alway.
 and now the fever has changed to a shivering."
 Now is this brennyng whereof Am Adred
 Torned and changed, into coldnesse lad." 2938
 "helth shall ye purchas," unto hym said she ;
 "Stoned ne basshed of no thyng be ye." 2940
- She embraces and kisses him, and he feels at ease.
She embrased hym And swetly gan kisse, 2941
 Where-*with* Raymound approched gret ease.

- long tyme he regned in such state of blisse,
 And such lif gan led, ech other gan please.
 Off ther beyng here will I leue and cease, 2945 I must now leave
 To declare and say make me will redy, them.
 As of my samplere to procede plainly. 2947
- T**hen this to my mater here retourne I. 2948
 Gafray with long toth gouerned hym so,
 That to Guerrande¹ Gafray faste gan to hy,
 Demaundyng the way the Geant vnto
 Where he myght be founde, to fight with hym
 wold go ; 2952
 The Roche perceiued myghty and pusant,
 Wherto repaired thys cruel Geant, 2954 and at last sees
 the rock whereon
 his castle is built.
- C**alled Guedon,² that so orgulous was, 2955 [Fol. 59 b.]
 Gret, thikke, longe, stronge, meruelous to se. Geoffrey alights,
 arms himself, and
 again mounts,
 Gafray fro his hors discended apas,
 Armed hym A-non, lenger bode not he.
 When Armed he was, to hors lepe a-ye, 2959
 The geant doubted noght, A staf toke of stile,
 Which at hys arson made faste for A-whyle. 2961 making fast to his
 saddle-bow a steel
 mace.
- A**nd sin After sesid his shild and shoke, 2962 He takes also his
 shield and his iron
 spear, and leaves
 his men,
 Which besides it had shildes many.
 After his spere of sharpe yren toke,
 Sauyng goddys grace, gret thyng toke surely.
 hys men commaunded vnto god an hy. 2966 commending
 them to God on
 high.
 But for thare master wepte thay in þat place ;
 Thay trowed neuer se hym in liffes space. 2968
- G**effray thaim said, " stil you, noght dismay ; 2969 He bids them
 farewell, and
 departs alone,
 I beleue I shal this Geaunt discomfith
 By aid of god And hys moder this day."
 Anon than Geffray parted fro thaim ryght,
 Adieu tho thaim said, thens went Alone to fyght.

¹ MS. "Gueruande."

² MS. "Suedon;" see l. 3011.

ascending the
mount to reach
the castle.

The Roche passed he, goyng vp Anon
Vnto the castell, sette the mount vppon. 2975

He waits at the
drawbridge, and
in a shrill voice
defies the giant.

Unto the brigge cam, *with* shil uois gan cry, 2976
“ Where Art thou, fals traytour, where Art thou?
To deth shalt thou be cast by me truly,
Which in my contre And in my lande now
So long were haste had ; to god I A-uow, 2980
Neuer here-hens shal I depert no day
Till uenquished or dede haue the I may.” 2982

[Fol. 60]
The giant, hear-
ing him, rises and
puts out his head,

On A donIon hid was this huge Geaunt, 2983
In the Galaries being ther *with-in*,
The uois hurd of hym noble and pusaunt,
hastily Anon vp rising gan to win ;
his hede put he out, uisage large and chin, 2987
(Which was All so gret As A bole his hede),
Gaffray *with* gret toth be-held hym in-ded ; 2989

showing his
visage and his
chin.

The giant thinks
himself sorely
disgraced that a
single man should
wish to fight him,

Horrible gret was, A forwoxen grome, 2990
Such Another neuer had he sain ;
Which his goddis swere that full hym come
Sore uilloined gan hym hold certain,
When a soule man lust *with* hym were plain, 2994
And into hys hous to seke hym comyng.
lightly hym armed, Anon discendyng ; 2996

and at once arms
himself,

taking a falchion
of steel, three
flails of iron, and
three great sledge-
hammers.

A Fauchon of stele went he unto take, 2997
Well grounde or whet, but tendre was it nought ;
After flaelles thre¹ of yre toke for hys sake,
In hys bosom put thre gret slegges wrought ;
The bridge Aualed, to issue out thought. 3001
Ful gret and large was formed of body ;
When in his being mustred unto ey, 3003

He lowers the
draw-bridge, and
issues out.

¹ MS. “ ther ; ” Fr. text, *trois*.

Fiftene fote long this Geaunt was expresse : 3004 He is fifteen feet long;

And when Gaffray nehed hym in-dede,

Strongly merueled of his huge gretnesse,

But yut for all that of hym noght gan drede,

Neither fere had for gretnesse, lenght, ne brede, 3008

But that Anon diffied hym boldly,

And towarde thys Geaunt drew hym lightly. 3010

yet Geoffrey
fears him not,
but defies him
boldly.

"What art thou?" said Guedon, "trusse hens,"
said he.

[Fol. 60 b.]
"Who art thou?"
asks Guedon.

Hym he answered, "sir," said without blame,

"Gaffray with long toth so men callyn me ;

At no day ne hour neuer hid my name ;

Thine¹ hed come to haue, diffende þe for shame !"

"Caytiff," said² Guedon, "wat caste thou to do ?

The will sle³ Anon with o soule stroke or to ; 3017

"I am Geoffrey
with the long
tooth."

"Wretch," says
Guedon, "I will
slay thee with
one sole stroke.

Hens ye now retorn, my fair sone," he saide, 3018

"Off the in my hert renneth gret pite,

your yongly person seing at this braide,

And that ye er or⁴ gret habilite ;

Gaffray, go hens of frendlyhede," said he. 3022

hym Answered he, "foly, is no nay ;

haue thou pite non but of thi life this day, 3024

I pity you,"
says Guedon,
"and advise you,
as a friend, to
depart."

But Geoffrey bids
him rather pity
his own life,

For withoute diffaute she shall ende Anon. 3025

Fro keruing of my swerd here now diffend the ;

In mortall deth dye shall here thi person ;

Escape maiste thou noght in no wyse fro me."

Thys Geaunt noght told of hym in no degre, 3029

Gaffray cam faste contring the Geaunt then,

As moche And As faste As hys courser myght ren.

which should
soon end,
as he cannot
escape.

Geoffrey advances
to the encounter,

¹ MS. "Thime."

² MS. "And."

³ MS. "fhe."

⁴ "ar of" (?).

and overthrows
the giant.

Now god hym socour! in breste ther hym sett, 3032
Thys cruel Geant A fers stroke yaff he;
By hys wurthinesse so gan do and bette,
Without any damage he caste don to se.

The giant, as-
tonished, rises
up, and tells him
his stroke shall
be repaid.

All astoned of that aduersite, 3036
Thys Geaunt rosse vp; "hast thou noght," he said,
"Take me such offering, it yild shall be this
braide." 3038

[Fol. 61]
Being wrath at
having been thus
struck down by
a single blow,

On fote hopte he up, malice and wroth was 3039
That don to grounde so caste in that Ile
By a soule stroke of knyghtly manace.

he seizes his
steel falchion,

Then he in hand toke hys fauchon of stile;
As Gaffray wold torn, sogernyng no whyle, 3043

and cuts the
legs off Geof-
frey's horse.

The fauchon of stele, the Geant in hand,
Off Gaffray curser the legges trenchand. 3045

The horse falls,
Geoffrey leaps off,

The courser fill don, fro hors lepte¹ Gaffray, 3046
No-thing hym lette, Fro scaberge his swerd drew;
To the giant went with raundon gret that day,

and at a blow
nearly severs the
giant's left arm.

The sinistre Arme smote he vppon trew,
Ryght As belonged to knightly uertew, 3050
hys fauchon he made to fall the hand fro,
That neuer After ned had non ther-to; 3052

But Guedon, to
end the fight,
deals Geoffrey a
blow on the helm
with his flail,

For Gaffray such stroke sette, he failed noght; 3053
In the hanche sour hurt grenously he was,
But to hym Guedon Approched ny, thought

which almost
fells him,

So that mortall were ther hym gan purchas,
his flael ther toke myghtly A-place, 3057
To Gaffray therof gaf on the helme hy,
All Astoned Almoste At ground truly. 3059

Geoffrey runs and
fetches his steel
mace,

Into his scaberge the swerde put Gaffray, 3060
To his courser ran, his staffe ther takyng,

¹ MS. "lepete;" but see l. 3070.

To thys Geant caste A huge stroke that day,
 Stager And stomble made *with* hys sore striking ;
 hys Flael fro hand caused ther fleing. 3064
 On off hys [s]legges¹ Guedon² toke in haste,
 To Gaffray wightly And sharply it caste, 3066

and with it
 strikes the giant
 so that he stum-
 bles and drops
 the flail.

Guedon seizes a
 sledge-hammer,

With the said stroke cast of myghty vertew 3067
 Off Gaffray the stafe or axe gan attain,
 Fro hys handes made to fle and remew.
 This Giant lepte forth, the stafe toke certain ;
 To Gaffray noght had twixste hys handes twain,
 But Gaffray his swerd gan to draw Anon,
 And vppon the Arme it sett of Guedon ;³ 3073

[Fol. 61 b.]
 and with it knocks
 Geoffrey's mace
 out of his hand,

and then picks
 it up.

Geoffrey draws
 his sword,

And so huge A stroke geuyng hym was tho, 3074
 That quite clene the arme share off throughtly.
 Gaffray full manly ther Auenged so
 Off Guedon² the Giant strong and myghty,
 Where Arme, stafe, or Axe, done fill hym ryght ny.
 Where-thorught for wo the saide Geant suatte,
 For Anguisshe And sorow lefted his Arme & bede.⁴

and shears Gue-
 don's arm com-
 pletely off.

Down fall all his
 weapons.

Full moche the Geant was Astoned tho, 3081
 When off hys Armes on had loste of-new ;
 haused his swerd, trowing Gaffray smitte to ;
 But the stroke uoided And somwat *withdrow*,
 A litell blenched enmyddes the medew, 3085
 Vppon his legge smote *with* swerde wonderly,
 A meruelous stroke gaffe, Ato carf⁵ hys thy. 3087

The giant strikes
 at Geoffrey with
 his sword, but he
 slips aside,
 and with a mar-
 vellous stroke
 cuts his foe's
 thigh right in
 two.

This Giant fill, crying his goddis aide ; 3088
 Gaffray A stroke gaffe tho his sculle vppon,
 he offeryng so, the helme rent And foulle raide,

The giant falls.
 Geoffrey cleaves
 his head to the
 teeth,

¹ MS. has "legges," a notable blunder.

² MS. "Gouedon." ³ MS. "Suedon."

⁴ Indistinct.

⁵ MS. "craf;" but see l. 3092.

- The helme cutte And rent till the teth Adon ;
 The swerde so cutting, the hede carf Anon. 3092
- and, seizing his
 Saracen horn,
 blows it loudly.
- After that hys horne sarisin toke he,
 hyly it blowyng times to or thre. 3094
- [Fol. 62]
 Geoffrey's men
 come up, and find
 the giant slain.
- His peple the sounde full wel vnderstode, 3095
 To hym hied, taried noght certain ;
 Enmyddes the medew founde where he stode,
 Thys cruell Geaunt which þat he had slain.
 When this meruelous Geant ther was sain, 3099
 Off his faccion Astoned thay were,
 hys lenght, his brede was so ouermette there. 3101
- They marvel at
 his length and
 breadth.
- The lords com-
 pliment Geoffrey
 highly,
- TO Gaffray the lordes toke vnto say, 3102
 "Off this Geaunt huge misgouernaunce
 ye vnto thys man meued were thys day,
 As hym to uenquish thoght in remembraunce,
 Thys enemy discomfite this instaunce ; 3106
 Truly ye haue doñ An inly good ded."
 Gaffray Answered ther, "faire lordes," sed, 3108
- and tell him he'
 has done "an inly
 good deed."
- Geoffrey says he
 has but done his
 duty.
- "Hit us behoud, were it wrong or ryght ; 3109
 For it putt abake I ne myght, parde ;
 My lif to diffend I shold, yff I myght ;
 And so haue I done, our lord preised be,
 hym conquered haue here As ye may see." 3113
 They entred there, to castell gan repare,
 Which was well billed to sight, And full faire.
- They enter the
 castle, which is
 well built and
 fair.
- Huge joy is made
 both by small and
 great,
- because the giant
 was discomfited
 and stone-dead.
- Men all this knew thorough that region, 3116
 For-why shold we then speke therof more ?
 huge ioy and solas therof made and don,
 Bothe tho gret and small gret ioy made therffor,
 That the Geant was by Gaffray don bore, 3120
 So discomfite, standede, And all cold ;
 hug[e] ioy and gladnesse in contre tho hold. 3122

- O**ff this lande made lorde he by this uiage, 3123 [Fol. 62 b.]
 Werby manly had ended the werre tho.
 Ther-thens to uauent A man sent in message,
 Which full courtois was, inly wise also ;
 Thys said messinger Raymounde said unto, 3127 A messenger tells
 That by Gaffray the Giant fers and bold the news to Ray-
 Was descomfite and put to deth, he told. 3129 mond,

Raymounde laughed tho, hym preising faste there. who laughs ; and
 Melusine *without* othir taryng Melusine gives
 Made right good chere vnto the messinger ; the messenger
 When hym chered had *with* all maner thyng, 3133 a rich gift.
 A ryche gifte hym gaffe ; Raymounde tho writyng, He next takes
 Peper And wexe toke to hys secretory, paper and wax to
 Anon A letter conceued hastily, 3136 his secretary, and
 dictates a letter,

The tenure of which was well deuysed ; 3137 which he seals
 By Raymounde seled were thai in *pat* place ; and sends to Geof-
 So forth send by Raymounde, so auised, frey in Guerrand,
 Vnto Gaffray which in Guerrande tho wace,
 "hou that Fromount his uesture gan purchase 3141 telling him how
 At Maillers, And ther resceiued gan say, Fromont had be-
 And that A monke was in that saide Abbay ; 3143 come a monk in
 the abbey of
 Mailliezais,

Where that he wold use All his liffes space, 3144 where he would
 And for his frendes pray to god An hy, spend his life in
 For that it was an inly deuout place." prayer for his
 friends,
 Alas ! thes letters il hour wrought truly, Alas ! this letter
 For thai torned to the contrary. 3148 was written in
 He therthorugh loste the fair Melusine, an evil hour,
 Whom that he loued *with* parfite loue fine.¹ 3150 for thereby did
 Raymond lose
 Melusine !

Now shall we leue at thys tyme the lyffe 3151 [Fol. 63]
 Of Raymounde the swete And courtois only, I shall leave the
 life of Raymond
 and Melusine,

¹ Here follows the catchword—"Now f shall we leue at *pis* time."

- Of Melusine als hys ful noble wyfe,
 Which at þat hour was A woman worthy.
 Of Gaffray with gret toth declare shal I ; 3155
 After thys I shall you outre and say ;
 In Guerrande contre tho was Gaffray, 3157
- and speak of
 Geoffrey, who
 was now in
 Guerrand
 country,
- where he was
 royally feasted
 for killing the
 giant.
- While he was
 there, came a
 messenger from
 Norbeland to
 him, and having
 found him
- and presented
 his letters,
 he proceeds to
 tell of a giant
 who had come
 to Norbeland,
- savage, cruel,
 and dangerous,
- and had brought
 war on all the
 country.
- He begs Geoffrey
 to help them
 speedily, as the
 nobles of the land
 have great trust
 in his might.
- [Fol. 63 b.]
 Urging him he
 adds that all the
 country will be
 given up to him,
 as he may see
 from the letters.
- The people trust
 wholly to him to
 destroy the giant.
- All the contre hym fested roially 3158
 For thys Geant sake that he distroid there :
 Gret ioy ther had of peple ful many.
 With that cam to hym ther A messengere,
 To gaffray comyng in humble manere, 3162
 Fro Norbelande After Gaffray demanding
 Where þat he was ; many him shewing, 3164
- To Gaffray presented thes letters there. 3165
 " My lord," he said, " for goddys hy mercy,
 That it myght you ples me vnderstande here.
 Vnto Norbeland is comyn truly
 A man more gretter then other Any, 3169
 Which is A Geaunt, wonder meruelous,
 Querthwart cruel and ryght perilous ; 3171
- He hath brought were [on] all our contre. 3172
 Werfor I am come to seke you thys hour,
 Here requeryng you for all loue may be,
 ye of Gentillesse wold be ther socour ;
 Tho of contre, the lordes of honore, 3176
 In your person haue ryght gret affiaunce,
 Wilnyng you to come hastily thys instance. 3178
- So that ouer-lang ye mow noght tary ; 3179
 For you will thai yild all the hole contre,
 Ther landes to hold of your estate hy.
 For sothe your letters, if opened be,
 ye may wel know the trouth And ueryte. 3183
 Thay haue caste ther loote certes you vpon,
 Off thys strong Geaunt cause distruccion." 3185

- G**effray the letters After breke and rayd, 3186 On reading the letters, Geoffrey swears that he will go,—
 Fro¹ wurde unto wurd, And sithen hym said,
 “Messinger, trouth is, no ly on you had ;
 By the holy crosse swere I you this braid,
 That men cal Geffray *with* long toth displaid 3190 but it is not for lands or possessions, but for the sake of helping the people,
 hens wold noght remeue for lande ne hauour,
 But for the contre only to socour. 3192
- F**Or off the peple haue I gret pitte, 3193 on whom he has pity, because he has great zeal for Christianity.
 For the good zele haue to cristine entyre,
 Wherin I haue grette affinite :
 Als honour And worship to acquire.
 Off me the werre the Giaunt doth desire, 3197 Also he would win honour ; therefore he prepares at once.
 Anon shall I go hym Assail quikly.”
 To thys forth-progresse Geffray made redy. 3199
- A** messynger the men tyme gan discend 3200 Meanwhile a messenger from his father brings him letters to tell him that his brother has become a monk, at which he is angry and sad.
 Off hys fader part, forth-*with* hym taking
 The letters, al which that he hym send.
 Geffray thaim rad, And when he was knowing
 That his brother was A monke hym yilding, 3204
 leuer had hym be honged were As thef ;
 Wherof to hert had dole of gret myschef : 3206
- H**ou-were-it that ioy of hys fader had, 3207 [Fol. 64]
 And of Melusine his moders welfaire,
 Thay were hole and sounde, of *pat* was he glad.
 When of hys brother Fromont hurd declare, 3210 He was pleased to have good news of his father and mother,
 That he monke was shorn, dole had And gret care ;
 Off the dispite hys witte gon And loste,
 Vermail rede As blode, *with* wreth tende hys
 goste ; 3213 but he lost his wits at the disgrace of Fromont being a monk, and he grew as red as vermillion.
- O**ff malice And wreth had in his body 3214
 he uomed And swatte, A swine resembling ;
 Neuer man non hym beheld ueryly
 But of huge drede ther he were tremblyng.

¹ MS. “For.” Fr. text, “de mot en mot.”
 PARTENAY.

Then in his
passion he ex-
claims, "These
vile monks

"Ther tho ill," he sayd, "thys lechorus being, 3218
Thes fals monkes, which full uicious be,
Thay haue now, by the holy trynite, 3220

have surely
enchanted my
brother, to make
him turn monk
and have a
shaven crown.
But they shall
suffer for it.
The errand into
Northumberland
must be put off
a while.

My brother Fromont haue enchanted sure, 3221
A monke haue hym made, certes, in ther town.
To thaim might yut come som misauenture :
hym haue thay shorn *and* made to bere A crown ;
In shall tham put into gret mischef down. 3225
Of this other erande bide Awhile will I ;
Thys monkes will se, long er that I dy. 3227

I will go at once
and burn up all
these monks
together."

Ferre of shall noght be or to that place go, 3228
Thaim shall I brenne to-geders in A fire."

He bids the
messengers from
Northumberland
await his return,
when he will go
with them as he
promised.

The messengers of norbelande said to :
"you commaunde al abide me here entire,
For shortly with you go wil at desire, 3232
That cruell Geaunt As to discomfight,
So shall it be don As gaunted haue ryght." 3234

[Fol. 64 b.]
They promise to
guard his house
in his absence,
and to wait till
his return.

Thai, which durst noght with-say hys hy renon, 3235
hym Answered : "we will, lord honourous,
Sin it plesith you, it is good reson :

He sends them
away without
further parley,

In your absence, schall warde and kepe þis hous,
Without departing, to be laborous 3239
Till the tyme approche A-gane you shal se."
Geffray answered : "wele saide here haue ye ;

and summoning
his people, rides
with all speed
till he reaches
Maillezais Abbey
on a Tuesday.

GO forth," said he, "with-out sayng-Again." 3242
To hys peple said, "vnto hors ye goo ;
I shall nothyng spare ualey ne montain,
Till that I come Maillers Abbay vnto."
Then Geffray hym put forth on hys way tho, 3246
Thys fers, cruell, hardy, the Tewisday,
So rode that he ryued at the Abbay. 3248

- The monkes were in their chapitre-hous, 3249 He finds the monks in the chapter-house.
 And Geffray Anon entred ther within :
 When thes monkes knew thys man honorous,
 To ryn him Again Alfaste gan begin,
 As wel gret As small towar[d] hym gan wyn, 3253
 All the hole couent ther hym saluting,
 Full gret ioy thay had As of hys comyng. 3255 They are delighted at his coming.
- Then to the abbot, which that balled was, 3256 But roughly and angrily he demands of the Lord Abbot why they have so foolishly made his brother leave chivalry and turn monk.
 I hath Gaffray spokyn rude and bustesly,
 As A man chaufed¹ with yerfull manace.
 "Ha ! dan Abbot," toke hym to say an hy,
 "Abbot, forwhy haue ye made folylly 3260
 My brother A monke in thys said Abbay
 To leue chiualry, takyng your ordre Ay ? 3262
- IN good feith, full is mused and thought, 3263 [Fol. 65] He threatens them all with death,
 For your mortall deth ye tho gan purchase :
 ye schal dy for your wykkydnesse wrought,
 Both ye And all your couent in thys place." 3266
 Then sore he grint And strayined his teeth apace.
 All tho which were the Abbay within
 Thai had gret drede, seing hym so begin. 3269 and grinding his teeth savagely, puts them into great dread.
- Thes monkes wepte, And sighed ful sore there 3270 They weep and sigh for fear,
 Of the fereful drede which that time thai had.
 Then dan Abbot of the hous gan answee,
 "Sir, by me noght was it forth broght ne lad ;
 By hym-selfen was it, trow I shall ful sad ; 3274
 he so meued with good deuocion
 As Entre into this religion. 3276 and the Lord Abbot declares it has all been done of Fromont's own free will.
- Here Fromont may se ye, lo ! personally, 3277 He may see Fromont, who, coming to his brother,
 yff it like or please you hym demaunde, lo !"
 Fromont thys hym said, " brother, verily

¹ MS. "chamfed. Fr. text, "eschauffez."

bears out the
Abbot's account,
and adds that he
will be nothing
but a monk.

By non is it wrought, but by my-selfe do :
A monke for to be, Am, And shall be to ; 3281
Wher *within* for you to our lord shal pray,
To other dedes attende wil no day, 3283

His father and
mother, he says,
had consented,

But only to god, to whom I am yild. 3284
hit pleased my fader, to hym acceptiff,
And to Melusine, my good moder milde :

and were glad that
he should enter
on this life, that
they all might
benefit by his
prayers.

Full gladly thay wold I shold use my life
here As for to pray our lord celestif 3288
For thaim and for you in especiall,
That in paradise he vs do put all." 3290

[Pol. 65 b.]
Geoffrey, almost
mad with rage,
replied to him
sadly.

Geffray vnderstode Almoste in wode rage, 3291
Thaken¹ with A meruelous corage tho,
Moche ther resceiued to hym delefull langage.

Then departing,
shut the doors,
and savagely
orders fuel to be
collected,

Fro-thens deperted, the dores after drew to,
All tho within closid and shitte also, 3295
After send to fecche, of ferosite,
Straw And berres² wonder gret plente. 3297

which he has
piled about the
Abbey,

To all ilnesse do lust had and talent, 3298
Thys bruschet made put in-to on hepe,
What cause eche merueled, in ther entent.

and then sets it
all on fire.

Fire hath he taken and put in therto ;
That in litell while se shold not man, lo ! 3302
For the smoky fume smotherting so was,
The Abbay it toke, sore gan it enbras. 3304

The Abbey, the
Abbot, and a
hundred monks,
are consumed.

The fire so kindled thorough all certainly, 3305
The monkes all betrapped and forshend,
That neuer on soule³ scaped outwardly.
The Abbot And A hunderd monkes brend
On tew[i]sday, by fortune, so ther end : 3309

¹ "Taken." Fr. text, "Esprins."

² "breres" (?) Fr. "busche." ³ MS. "foule."

All that ther within wasted to huge grame,
To gret sorow And wo, vnto full huge shame ;

And als the moste parte of thys said abbay 3312 Most of the
By hym stroied, bruled and scorched tho : building is de-
Ther not lefte ne bode o soule man that¹ day, stroyed,
Thoroughly brende it was to gret shame and wo. and not one soul
When better remembred² hys diffaute, lo ! 3316 Geoffrey, on
With shill voce cried þat time hautaynly, coming to him-
" Alas, caitife !" saide, " doñ haste folily, 3318 self, laments what
he has done,

Which thys minstre undo and so brend." 3319 [Fol. 66]
his brother ofte bement dede so, noght in graue ; the burning of the
After the Abbot And all the couent. minster, and his
Foltish he was, For tho thaim might not haue, brother unburied,
Neuer for golde ne for hauour craue. 3323 and the Abbot.
he thaim complained And waymented sore,
Off pite sighed, lamenting euermore. 3325 For there was no
getting them back
again.

Fro-thens departed, on his coursere lepte, 3326 Leaving Mall-
He right noght sparyng ualey ne montayn, lezais, he rode
In paynfull wo was, musing thoughtes kepte, hard, thinking
Of his brother brende sore hym gan complain ; much of his good
So god³ religious As he was certain. 3330 religious brother ;
Then to hym-selfe said ; " fair god lord an hy,
What may me become or what do shall I ? 3332 and then up-
braids himself,

NE to what ende come, certes, know ne may 3333 that he is more
Neuer man born fro Adam to thys hour worthy of damna-
Ne war so well wurth to be dampned ay ! tion than any
Wel shewith I am An ill fals traitour, man,
I here more wurse then Iudas the synnour. 3337 even than Judas
Isacariot,
Neuer shall I see, visage to visage, and shall be
Off god our Fader semyng in corage. 3339 shut out of God's
sight.

¹ MS. "thai." ² MS. "remenbred." ³ "good" (?).

He prays for
death.

Mortall deth, now com bering me away !” 3340
Such discomforth had Gaffray in corage.

Forsoth so rode An easy pace that day,

In this sorry
frame he reaches
Guerrande,
and finds the
messenger wait-
ing for him.

That to Guerrande came forth so in viage,
Full malice And wrogh[t] of thys huge damage 3344
Which that tyme had don, And sore gan com-
plain.

The messingere lefte contred hym Again : 3346

[Fol. 66 b.]
Geoffrey is pleased
to see him,

When Geffray hym saw, in hert was full glade ; 3347
Fro-thens departyd vnto vnderstande.

Of no creature demaund leue ne had.

and goes at once,

he ther-thens wende towarde norbelande,
Where-hens the messenger of the saide lande 3351

taking but ten
retainers.

Which to Gaffray cam requiring hym then :
And off his maynee had he but ten. 3353

He was feasted
by the people
before he went
on board.

HE thought he wold noght ouer slow to be : 3354
Anon As he Approched the port there,
Men hym made gret feste or shippe made entre ;¹

And off the contre the said messynger, 3357

Which condute this knight the way and manere.

With a fair wind
he sets out at once
on his voyage.

The saill reised vp, the winde softe gan blow,
Anon disancred the shippe in a throw ; 3360

The people bless
them as they
start,

The maryner thaim put in-to the se, 3361
And at departson thaim blessed all tho.

and with a fair
wind and good
ship they go on
their way.

The winde was good, the shippe welle sailed sche,
In a litill while ferre passed And goo,

A kennyng thaim was but A Jape vnto. 3365

I shall now
leave Geoffrey
and speak of
Raymond.

Ryght thus of Gaffray shall rest and still me,
And declare And speke of Raymounde the fre.

He was living
merrily at Vou-
vant with his
wife, Melusine.

Raymounde at vauuent lad a mery² lif ; 3368
Wher hym gan to hold, As long As he myght,

¹ MS. “entire.”

² MS. “amery.”

With fayre Melusine hys full noble wyffe.

Thys gentill Raymonde was A courtois knyght.

At vauuent were both, os¹ reson was and ryght. 3372

Anon had thay full dolorous noysaunce ;

As at diner sate, at ther owñ plesaunce, 3374

At dinner one day
a great piece of ill
news is brought
them.

A ferrom thai saw com A messingere, 3375

Which in humble wise thaim were saluting ;

But hys colour changed sodainly there,

For thys cause that hē the dede was doubting

Of that message behofull hym doing. 3379

And Raymound to hym tho ther said anon :

“Gentill messingere, welcom to vs echon.” 3381

[Fol. 67]
Afar off they saw
a messenger, who
humbly saluted
them ;
but in doubt
about how to give
his message, he
changes colour.

Raymond bids
him welcome.

Off noueles Anon gan hym to enquere ; 3382

Where-hens he cam ; And fro what place pat day.

(Alas ! outre moste noueles in strange manere,

Tham vnto declare wo is me alway ;

For such tydinges And nouels shall say 3386

Which ben full ill, ryght noght, full of yre,

And ryght hiduous, Any man to hyre. 3388

They inquire
his news.

(Alas ! I must
utter strange
news, for which
I am sad, for the
message is right
naught,

Where-thorough Raymounde shall lese the company

Off faire Melusine, fro that for all-wais,

Neuer after with hys wife be truly :

Where she no point had off diffame no dais.)

Then the messinger spake with-out delais, 3393

“Sir, vnderstande, my wordes and entent

To say behouith, wherof Am dolent ; 3395

owing to which
Raymond shall
lose his wife's
company.)

Then he tells
them

On of youre children take hath mortall.” 3396

“Which is he ?” said Raymounde : “sir, Fromont
it is.”

that one of their
children, Fro-
mont, is dead,

“hou is he dede ? good sir, say me all.

¹ For as ; see Glossary.

and Raymond
asks if he is
interred in our
Lady's Abbey at
Maillezais.

Is noght the body bered of hys ?
On his soule mercy the lord do of blis ! 3400
Entered in churche is of our lady
In Abbay off Maillers full sollemply." 3402

[Fol. 67 b.]
But the mes-
senger replies
that Fromont
had not been
buried,

but burnt by
Geoffrey in the
Abbey.

Thys messinger said with shill vois hautain, 3403
"That blissed man neuer had sepulture ;
Wilbeloud sir, this you say certain,
Afor all will declare the Auenture,
hou Gaffray hym put to shameuous oppresseure, 3407
Fired and byrnde, stroyng the Abbay
Off Maillers, for Fromont hys sake Alway, 3409

The abbot and
monks were all
scorched and
burnt to ashes ;

Geoffrey shut
them in and
burnt them, out
of spite against
Fromont.

The Abbot And monkes conuentuall, 3410
That ther o soule man escapid noght,
But scorched and brend were to Askes small ;
And hou the doures made faste As cowde be thought ;
For drede non durste fle, to-geders brende and
brought, 3414
For the gret dispite which in hert he had¹
Off Fromont, that in monkes wede was clade.'

Raymond, at the
news, bathes his
heart in sorrow,

but sternly com-
mands the
messenger to be
sure he is not
lying.

When Raymound it knew, blissed with ryght hand,
In sorow And wo hys hert bathed he.
yut Another tyme he gan to demand,
Commaunding hym straitly As myght be,
That he hym say the trouth and verite. 3421
"Se here," he said, "gret cruelte shewyng,
Is it this? ward the that thou ly no thing!" 3423

He replies that
he saw it with
his two eyes.

HE hym answerd, "sir, it is ryght this ; 3424
I dare wel say this, so god me do aid ;
With my eyes to saw it, soo haue I blis !"
When Raymounde it hurd, colour changed pat braid,

¹ MS. "hed."

- For ende had he non in his dolour laid. 3428 Raymond, in
To hors lepe he tho with-out taryng, great dolour,
In hert was ryght wo And full sore mornyng. leape upon horse-
back,
- IN pensif muses hym faste beseyng, 3431 [Fol. 68]
He rest noght to ryde, so to Maillers cam. and rides at once
to Maillezais.
- Such A pace rode, yut ther the fray finding,
Raymounde perceiued the gret losc[e]¹ And shame.
Ech man complayned on Gaffray by name. 3435 There he hears
men complaining,
The Abbay saw brend And woxin desert, and sees the
abbey reduced
to a ruin.
- Which causid gret wo hym to haue at hert. 3437
- HE beheld Aboute euery part sure, 3438
Seyng the Abbot And monkes brend were ;
Als seing the meruelous auenture,
“By god died in crosse,” Raymound gan swere,
That “Gaffray shold dye in cruell manere, 3442
yff atwixst his handis he hym haue myght,
He wold make hym ende, And shameuous deth
dight !” 3444
- There lepte vp Again hys coursere vppon, 3445 Again he mounts
his horse, having
no wish to stay
there,
So inly malice, full of wrath and yre,
In shuch cAs broght, wiste not wat say ne don ;
To sogerñ At Maillers more wold not desire.
Fro-thens departed, tornyng hole entire 3449
hamwarde in iournay ryght full besily. and rides fast
homeward.
Al day ther he rode faste And spedfully, 3451
- So the myghty strenght attained he was 3452 He reaches the
fort of Vouvant,
Of vauuent castell, entred in and wend ;
hys coursere As the wynde forth went apace.
When within was, After gan descend ;
lenger wold he noght bide ne attend. 3456 and alights from
his horse.
In-to the chambre entred he Anon,
The dores to hym drew And cloydy echon. 3458 He enters his
chamber, and
shuts the door.

¹ See L. 3608. Fr. text, “perte.”

[Fol. 68 b.]
Then he begins to
lament and wall,
saying,
"Ah! Fortune!
thy dealings are
too manifest,
thou art not secret
enough.

There began he wonder waymenting; 3459
Complaynyng, wayling, And lamentyng to see.

"Ha!" he said, "Fortune, to riue art being;
Ne haste thou not be with me full preue.
Aboue All other haste¹ thou hated me! 3463
Alas! this for-whi hast thou me in hate?
To tech me were thou contrary þat date, 3465

When I put Earl
Amery to death
by moonlight,
thou wert the
cause.

When thou me madest that murther to do 3466
Off the noble Erle of peiters being,
Amery the good notable knyght tho;

I hym put to deth by the mone shynyng.
By the, lady Fortone, thou were it causing! 3470
Alas! he was man in tyme full worthy!
Hys pere noght founde Athissid Rome truly! 3472

Alas! he was a
peerless man!

And next, thou
madest me marry
this infamous
serpent;

After me made by thy will and uolente 3473
To take this woman of the Fayry,
This² here diffamed serpent vnto se;

and one of my ten
children by her,
a holy monk, is
dead,

I am not wronged³ thow it bewayle surely.
Then⁴ fair children haue I had hir by! 3477
But on is dede, whereof Am I pensiffe,
Which was A monke leuyng holy life. 3479

and his brother
slew him.
Her children will
do no good.

Ther now his brother hat[h] put hym deth to. 3480
I trow thes children which that she bare
In this worle ne shall no maner good do.

I could not have
believed it, had
I not seen her in
the bath.

The begynnyng noght, of trouth to declare,
And, by the teres off uandosme hys fair, 3484
hit I to beleue is but fantasies,
Ne hade I hir sain in the bath only; 3486

[Fol. 69]
I saw through
the hole in the
door that she

I not ferre fro thens, the trouth vn-to tell, 3487
By the litell hole of the dore gan se
Fro the hed adon vnto the nauell

¹ MS. "baste." ² MS. "Thes." ³ "wrong" (?).

⁴ "Ten." Fr. text, "dix."

- A full fair and gent woman there was she ;
 But under was A serpent of verite, 3491
 A taill burled had of siluer and Asure,
 Ther bete that all the water flasshed sure, 3493
 Full grett hiduou[s]nesse to my hert made. 3494
 Neuer was ther man if hir gan to se
 In the estat that I ther saw hir clad,
 But that wold Anon Away fro hir fle ;
 For it was thing dredfull As myght be. 3498
 God me ward and kepe fro werk diabolike,
 And stedfaste me hold in feith catholike ! " 3500
 Fair Melusine tho the dore gan unshit, 3501
 Well cowde it vnloke, in gan she repaire,
 Also to the dore the key had of it.
 Knyghtes, ladeis, damicelles full faire,
 Squiers, yongmen, maydens debonair, 3505
 With Melusine ther entre made þat stounde
 Into the chambre where Raymound was founde.
 In the saide chambre entred thai Anon. 3508
 Raymounde saw hys wife, marred was he tho.
 Ther hauing no¹ point of colour hym vppon,
 There be-gan of-new hys dolorous woo.
 Off Raymounde And of hys fair loue also 3512
 Ther strange depa[r]tson approched full ny,
 Ryght As ye shall hire declared shortly. 3514
 Then Melusine said to Raymound hir housband, 3515
 " hauith not your hert so marred for wo,
 For þat ye may noght amend at no stonde.
 Men shold such sorow lightly lete slip and go.
 yff Agayn our lord Gaffray haue mysdo, 3519
 And þat he hath distroid that faire place
 Off Maillers by hys misdoing, percas 3521

was a woman
 from her head to
 her middle, but
 beneath a serpent,
 with a tail striped
 with blue and
 gold.

No man could
 have beheld her
 as I did, and not
 have fled for fear.

God keep me
 from diabolic
 works ! "

Melusine unlocks
 the door,

and brings with
 her into the cham-
 ber a company
 of squires and
 maidens.

Raymond is
 much vexed at the
 sight of her,
 and begins to
 lament anew.

The moment of
 their parting
 was now nigh
 at hand.

[Fol. 69 b.]
 Melusine says
 to him, " Be not
 vexed.

Even though
 Geoffrey has thus
 sinned, and has
 destroyed the
 abbey,

¹ MS. "to." Fr. text, "neust point de couleur."

he may yet,
perchance,
make his peace
with God by
repentance,
and suffer pain
in the body;

for God's mercy
is at all times
ready.

For God willeth
not the death of
a sinner,

but that he
should live to
repent and to
do good."

But Raymond
was spiteful and
angry,
and his reason
awhile departed.

Soon shall he
say a word
which he shall
never retrieve.

[Fol. 70]
With fierce look,
proudly wroth,
he spake plainly
his foolish
thought,
uttering aloud
the fatal word,

"Ha! SERPENT!
Behold and see

what Geoffrey thy
son hath done!
He hath scorched
and burnt a hun-
dred monks,

Yut may he his pees Full wel do to make 3522
Towardes our lord by grete repentance,
And for his trespas pennaunce may he take,
Therfor suffer pain in bodyly substaunce.
For goddis marce is¹ redy ech instance, 3526
So in hym he haue good contrecion,
And efter veray pure confession. 3528

O ff verray trouth my beleue is soo 3529
That our lord god on hym will haue mercy,
For of the synner wold not deth shold go,
But louith better that lif shold truly,
To haue time And space, being here wordly, 3533
To effecte And end that he shold repent
And to All goodnesse also to Assent." 3535

Thys lady wisely And sagely gan to speke, 3536
But Raymounde malice And full angry was;
At hys hert gret noysaunce gan he steke.
Reson departed tho fro hym apas.
Such A word shal say, repent can not purchas; 3540
Neuer shall ne may, vnto þat he dy,
Conquere that he shall And moste lesse ther-by.

O ff A fers behold, orgulously wrought, 3543
Als *with* the behold of his eyes twain,
And when that he had A litell thought,
his foley thought spitfully spake plain,
And afore all said he *with* uois hautain, 3547
"ha! serpent! thy line in lif no good shall doo!
Sè here now A noble begynnyng, lo! 3549

What Gaffray *with* long toth thy son hath don! 3550
A hundred monkes scorched² and brend plain,
And after fro-thens made he departson.

¹ MS. "his."

² MS. "scroched"; see l. 3678.

- Where-of on was Fromont thi son certain,
The which to cherish euer was I fain ! 3554
Alas ! thes monkes slain hath thi son Gafray.
But thay died noght Al cold, I may fery,¹ 3556
- Euery of thaim so gret An hed² had. 3557
I haue ther be, I saw it verily,
Thaim al hath he brend, Gafray thi sone made ! "
Alas ! the sorow don so disordinatly
Off that wurde which he pronounced openly ! 3561
For ther-in gan do gret ill and sin plain.
Melusine Anon loste, neuer saw Again. 3563
- When Melusine hurd thys said wurde this stounde,
After hir sustain forsoth she ne myght.
Zownyngly she fil wofully to grounde ;
The sorow so gret, the hert fro hym-self ryght.
Well ny so half hour she lay, this swet wight, 3568
Prostrat to the erth, stoned, so zownyng
For that heuy word he was ther outring. 3570
- The barons ther cam, vp gan hir redrese 3571
Goodly, without hurt or blecere Any.
Anon A knight Approched hir hinesse,
hir visage moisted with fresh water goodly,
Trowing A fiftene times or twenty. 3575
By that resorted hir good hert Again,
Vnto Raymound said soberly certain, 3577
- Forsoth to hym spake full peteuously, 3578
" Alas, alas, alas, Raymounde, this day !
Ill saw I the euery times any !
Ill saw I the beute of the, I say ;
Ill saw I thi ful gracious Aray, 3582
Ill saw I the vppp[n] the Fontain,
Ill saw I thy vertuous demenyng playn,³ 3584
- of whom Fromont
thy son was one.
But they died not
all cold,
but every one was
not enough.
Geoffrey, thy mad
son, burnt them ! "
Alas ! the sorrow
caused by that
fatal word, which
lost him Melu-
sine !
When Melusine
heard that word,
she swooned
away,
and lay in that
swoon a whole
half-hour,
prostrate and
astonied.
[Fol. 70 b.]
The barons raised
her up,
and a knight
moistened her
face with cold
water.
She revives,
and exclaims,
" Alas, Raymond !
Ill for me that
ever I saw thee !
Wo is me that
ever I saw thy
beauty,
thy array,
thy virtuous
conduct.

¹ "say" (?).

² "het" (?). Fr. text, "chault."

³ MS. "playng."

Alas that ever I
saw thy precious
body,

Ill saw I thy werking amerous, 3585
Ille saw I thy precyous body,
Ille saw I thy iourne dolorous,

that ever I loved
thee!

That *with* the was in loue Amourously !
Ille saw I thi fair contennaunce truly, 3589

Evil was the hour
and season

Ille saw I thy gracious body gent,
Ille saw I the hour And mene season present 3591

wherein I first
saw thy treason
and falsenesse!

That the saw first, thi treson, thi falsnesse ! 3592
Thy fals vntrew spech, thy huge cruelte,

Thine unmeasur-
able language has
condemned me to
eternal pain.

Thy fals tonges unmesurabelnesse,
Me put to paynes perdurabilite,
That frothens neuer shall I depart me, 3596
But full moche pain shal I suffre Alway,
For pain shall I haue vnto the laste day, 3598

[Fol. 71]

That it like or pleasee our lord soueran 3599
To come iuge And deme tho both quikke and
dede !

Never shall you
see my face again,
O false, perjured
traitor,
murmurer, liar,
betrayor, and
false knight.

Neuer shal ye se my clere uisage plain,
Most fals traytour And fals forsworn in-ded,
Replet with uices, full of murmerhed, 3603
Fals amerous, fals lesingmonger ryght,
Fals betrayer, And in-ded A fals knyght ! 3605

Thus hast thou
caused us huge
loss.

Full ill haste thow, lo ! my couenaunt hold, 3606
That thow me promysed in the begynnyng ;
Thou haste made us haue huge losce many-fold.

Yet I could for-
give your seeing
me in the bath,
because you told
it to no one.

yut myght I all this full wel be suffryng,
Off that in the bath me so were seyng, 3610
Acause ye ne it said no creature.
The fende knew it noght, the misauenture. 3612

Your revealing it
has brought mis-
fortune.

As son As made was reuelacioñ there, 3613
knawen was A-none For it shalt misfall ;
Yf that my¹ body to the Abode here,

¹ MS. "by." Fr. text, "mon corps."

- Thow sholdest perceiue ryght brefly *with-all*
 All thy full fals periury disceiu[e]!¹ 3617
 yf truly ye had the couenaunt hold,
 Vnto Mortall deth me to haue ye shold, 3619
- Had you kept
 your covenant
 truly,
- Ryght As A woman born here naturall, 3620
 A feminine thyng, woman at al houres,
 To end of my days here terrestriall.
 By me² myghteste haue had huge socoures.
 After the hy kyng, full off honoures, 3624
 Wold haue born Away the soule of me,
 When that Fro body departed were she, 3626
- and, at death,
 the King of Glory
 would have borne
 away my soul,
- After beried in sacred sepulture, 3627
 And *with* gret honour entered shold be.
 Alas! my fortune now putt Away sure!
 In payn, in wo, in tormentes cruelte
 Till day of iugement to se. 3631
 By thy-selven disceiued art in all,
 Thou art fro hinesse into lownesse fall. 3633
- [Fol. 71 b.]
 and I should have
 been buried with
 great honour.
- Alas! I must now
 suffer pain till
 doomsday.
- Knowith thys, to you shall come greuous pine, 3634
 Ne neuer goodnesse shal resceiue certain;
 All-way thy dedes shall go to decline,
 Ne neuer shal be wrought ne made again,
 And thi land shal be, After thi discesse plain, 3638
 Parted in partes I beleue shal be,
 Neuer to-geders hold in seueralte, 3640
- thy great deeds
 shall decline,
- and thy land, at
 thy death, shall
 be divided.
- By A soule man neuer maintayned be; 3641
 Many of your men shal fall, sir Raymounde,
 Neuer it acquire As in certainte.
 Som of thaim shall lese both ther land and ground.
 By fin fors of werre *with* many A wound, 3645
 Fro ther dwellyng full faste shall thay fle,
 Neuer shall resorte A-gane to contre. 3647
- Some of your
 posterity shall
 lose both land
 and ground,
- and never return
 again home.

¹ See note.

² MS. "my."

Remember thy
sons, for I shall
be with thee no
more!"

REmembre thy sones, the besече And pray, 3648
For I shal neuer hold the company,
To whome haue hert peteuous and tender ay,
I may no langer Abyde ne tary!"

Then she draws
three barons
aside, speaking
to all sensibly in
an under-tone.

Thre¹ of the Barons Apart drew hastily 3652
Off moste gretteste, sayng in wyse pesible
As woman full sage And ryght sensible; 3654

[Fol. 72]
"Raymond, it
behoves thee to
beware of Hor-
rible.

"**R**Aymounde, understande, horrible thy sone gete
Do hym for to dy, neuer be he found.

If he live, war
shall never cease,
nor bread nor
wine increase,

Off it houith the to entremete,
Thre eyes shal bere he vppon the grounde.
yff he life, werre neuer shall faille nostounde 3659
In all the contre off peiters to deuin,
Shall neuer encesse neithir brede ne win, 3661

for he shall lay
waste all the
country.

He will destroy
all I have made,

and bring his
brethren to
poverty.

All the contre he shall waste, vnderstand, 3662
So that no-thing encesse shal ne may.

And all thes places that I gan do make,
Distroy And undo, certes, is no nay;
And hys bretherin to porete put alway, 3666
All tham, of tought, and all of the lyne,
Wherefor I you pray, lete hym dy with pine. 3668

Thy sorrow for
Geoffrey's deed is
needless;

it was a punish-
ment upon the
monks for their
misdeeds.

The dole that thou haste for Gaffray thy sone, 3669
That the monkes brende so disordinaitly,

knowith thys, that it was for punicion
Taken vppon tho of religion hy,
For ther misgouernaunce wroughten so dayly, 3673
Off our lordes part, for þat thai do wold
Many of thingys that they do ne shold, 3675

It is for that
reason they are
scorched,
exiled, and
destroyed.

NE ought of ryght ne of reson doo. 3676
In that place our lord example hath shewed.
Off goddis parte is thai ben scorched so,

¹ MS. "Ther;" but French text, "Troia."

- All dede, exiled, And foule distroyde.
 Many with lechery haue hym sore noyed ; 3680 They have harmed themselves with lechery.
 Fals monkes, synners, holdyng at no day
 Ther ordre ne lif of the said Abbay. 3682
- Iff your sone be dede with thaim outerly, 3683 [Fol. 72 b.]
 haue ye no routhe, ne of thaim neuer mo.
 ye know what men sain moste, lo ! comynly,
 For A synner perish shall An hundred, lo !
 An hundered hath brend, nombred vs unto, 3687 If your son be dead with them, pity him not.
 Wit/out the Abbot which nombred is noght,
 Which maister is of thaim, As of reson ought,
 A hundred men perish for one sinner's sake.
 So here 100 died, besides the abbot.
- Iff ther were cause, parcas he myght be. 3690
 Iff Gaffray tham haue so destroyed all,
 It may be by hym restored, parde,
 A more fairer minstre fourge¹ and make shall
 Then that which he hath caused so to fall. 3694 If Geoffrey have destroyed them, he may easily rebuild a fairer minster,
 This said Abbay full well may he restore
 With many mo monkes then were before. 3696 and place in it more monks than before.
- O ff tought so he will in ryght good manere, 3697
 Which then shall be good peple verily,
 Prayng for the line *with* myght and powere ;
 Which church he shall welle redyfy ;
 The place shall be to sight more plesantly, 3701
 And more better then euer was before ;
 Thys Gaffray shall doo gret goodnesse euermore,
- M Oste specially whan he comyth to Age. 3704
 But A thing I shall you declare truly,
 Ar I me departe fro your compernage,
 To ende that all therof haue memory
 Which after An hundred yere surely 3708
 That yut ben unbore shall hir speke of me ;
 Off trouth in the air thar men shall me see 3710 But, ere I go, I tell you one thing more.
 In order that men may remember me, they shall see me in the air.

¹ MS. "fourgee."

[Fol. 73]
I shall be seen
whenever the
castle is about
to change its
master;
if not in the air,

on the earth, or
by this fountain.

For, as the castle
was baptized after
my name,

it may be con-
sidered as my
goddaughter.

Three days before
the castle changes
its lord,

I shall certainly
appear.

Raymond, when
first we loved, we
had all joy and
solace;

but now is our
solace turned into
vexation.

[Fol. 73 b.]
Now is our good
fortune turned
to mischance,
and our surety
is in doubt.

A Boute the castell off lusignen so, 3711

Thre dais befor in the same yere ryght
That the casstell shall change hir maister, lo!
yff in the air men not se me myght,
And that thay mow not percciue me to sight, 3715

I shall me Appere vppon the erth playn,
Or at the leste besides this Fontain. 3717

Know thys, Raymounde, for so shall it be, 3718
Ass longe As thys said castell shall endure,
For with my name baptised was she

And such As it is deuides I sure,
My goddoughter I may calle¹ hir in vre. 3722

Fule wel may it say Afor peple All,
And, for Melusine men me do to call, 3724

Lusignen named, to name doth calange. 3725
yut will I now say without taryng,

When that of the lord shall come þe eschange,
Thre dais be-forne me shall be seyng;
Certainly I shall ther be appering. 3729

But loste is now al my solas and ese,
Sin so behouith me it leue and lese; 3731

FOr now may it be in non other wise. 3732
Raymounde, vnto you then at beginnyng,

When ye and I entreloued in louers gise,
Al maner plesance we were finding,
Joy And solas As loue And louer hauyng; 3736

Alas! contrary now se thys instance,
Our solas torned into gret noysance, 3738

And in-to sorow transport our gladnesse, 3739
Our huge uigour to feblesse this instance,
Our plesire into displesance expresse,
Our full good fortune into gret misc[h]ance,

¹ MS. "called."

Our vertuous goodnes into curced chance ; 3743
 In doubte is all our surete to deuise,
 And our noble And blissed franchise 3745

Is full strangely changed into seruice, 3746
 By peruers fortune labored and founde,
 Which on reisith, Anothir don brise,
 But noght gain our lorde þat causyng me pis stound ;
 ys only by your dedes, sir Raymounde, 3750
 Als by your labbyng tonges iongling,
 ye shall lesse your loue for your large speking.

Our freedom is
 turned to service
 by perverse
 fortune,
 and all owing
 to the jangling
 of your blabbing
 tongue.

Now more lenger here may I not to dwell, 3753
 Fair loue, me behouith hens As for to go.
 your misdedis god perdon euerydell,
 Whereof Agayne me ye haue so mysdo,
 For by you shall suffer torment And woo, 3757
 vnto the dredfull day of Iugement ;—
 And by the I was fro¹ sorow ex[e]mpte, 3759

Now must I go.
 God pardon you
 for being the
 cause of my suffer-
 ing torment."

And into yoy entred !—Alas ! wo I Am, 3760
 For now Am I caste into dolorous woo,
 Fro-whens² that I issewed and came !"
 Such ful sory dole Melusine lad tho,
 That body off humayn creature, lo ! 3764
 Which hir complaint hurd wth huge sighes sore,
 Ne shold withhold fro weping euermore. 3766

Such grief had
 Melusine that
 none that heard
 her could with-
 hold from weep-
 ing.

Raymounde heuily wrang his handes twain, 3767
 Such greuance toke tho, Almoste gan he dy,
 So was he take wth heuy wurdес plain,
 That o soule wurde coude not bryng forth truly.
 She hym Approched enbrasing swetly, 3771

[Fol. 74]
 Raymond was so
 grieved at her
 words that he
 could say no
 word himself.

¹ MS. "for."

² MS. "For whens."

The two kiss each
other sadly.

To-geders kyssing thes to Amerous
In o torment ther were both dolorous.

3773

They both swoon
away,

Fvl greuous Anguish in ther hertes loke, 3774
That for heuinesse both gan fall to grounde,
zowning ther full long A maner dethis stroke,
Without takyng breth or wynde any stounde.

and the barons
trow they are
both dead and
cold.

The Barons trowing Melusine and Raymound 3778
That thes louers to were both dede and cold ;
For long space And tyme such wise gan thai hold,

Recovering from
the swoon, they
sighed and wrang
their hands.

And when fro zowning that thai came Agane, 3781
And that thai myght breth, to sigh be-gan sore,
To waile, to wepe, to sorely complain,
Ther handes wrange And strained euermore,
Non knew the sorow by thaim lade and bore. 3785

All the whole
rout who see
them weep.

Whereof all thay wepte standing ther Aboute
With teres many, All the ful hole route. 3787

Raymond en-
treats Melusine
to pardon him,

And melusine, to whome was full greuous, 3788
Ryght piteously she releued tho.

Raymound hir praid, as man generous,
Ther knelyng, that she hym pardon wolde, lo !
Off hir courtesy, that he hade mysdo ; 3792

but she says that
this cannot be.

Which by gret mischefe don gain hir hath he.
Thys lady hym saide that it myght not bee, 3794

[Fol. 74 b.]

She bids him es-
pecially think of
his son Raynold,

Hit please ne wold the king celestiaall. 3795
“ But, fair loue ! I you here beseche and pray,
Thenke on your loue here terrestriall,
your sone Fromount in obliuy put ay,
And in Raynold loke ye thenke Alway, 3799

for that he should
be Earl of Forest.

For of the foreste Erle shall he be, lo !
In all goodnesse thenke, And wel shall ye doo.

The Earl of Forest
would soon die.

The Erle of foreste here long shall not byde 3802
In this worlde here After my departson,

- Also will thenke for Thierry prouyde,
 For yut shall he ¹ doo thynges manyon.
 At norish pappes yut is his person ; 3806
 Fro² partenay to Rochell the lande shall iustice,
 An inly good knight shall he be and wyse. 3808
- He is also to provide for Thierry,
 who would afterwards rule the land from Partenay to Rochelle.
- And all which fro hym linially issew, 3809
 Shall be knightes good, hardy, and wurthy,
 Full of gud corage and of all uertew,
 And his linage shall longe endure truly.
 Fair loue, know thys well, that noble Thierry 3813
 Wurthy and hardy Also shall he be.
 I shall thenke on you, swete loue, pray for me
- Also Thierry's lineage should be good knights, and long endure.
 She asks Raymond to pray for her,
- All dais while lif in worle here haue ye. 3816
 Off me shall ye haue both ayde and comfort
 In all your nedes of necessite.
 Off aduersite engree³ take the porte.
 Neuer in femine forme to you shall resorte, 3820
 Neuer shall ye se Melusine truly,
 That so was wont to hold you company !"⁴ 3822
- He must bear his adversity well.
 She must now go.
- Innepee she lepte the fenestre vpon, 3823
 Aboue beheld she uerdures flouresshing ;
 Without taking leue Away wold not gon,
 For the Barons, of whom after shall be speking,
 Off lades, damycelles, knightes beyng, 3827
 Squiers, And maydens, off all leue toke she,
 For whome euery man wepte of pette. 3829
- [Fol. 75]
 She then leaps upon the window,
 but will not yet depart before she has bidden all farewell.
- Afterwarde she said, "adiou ! sir Raymounde, 3830
 Whom I so loued with hert Fyn And plain,
 Neuer shall youe se at no day ne stounde.
 Adieu, my hert ! Adieu, my loue certain !
- "Adieu ! Sir Raymond, my heart, my sovereign joy, my gentle jewel !

¹ MS. "ye." Fr. "Il fera."

² MS. "For."

³ MS. "engree."

⁴ At the foot of this page are the catchwords, "innepee she lepte the."

- Adieu, creature, my ioy souerain ! 3834
 Adieu, myn entire loue moste gracious !
 Adieu, my gentile Iewell precious ! 3836
- Adieu ! my sweet nurse, my grace,
A dieu, my swete norish And noriture ! 3837
 Adieu, my plesaunce And gladnesse worly !
 Adieu, full meruelous swete creature !
 Adieu, my grace ! Adieu, my ioyes hy !
 Adieu, what that in worle loue moste hertly ! 3841
 Adieu, the moste good ! Adieu, the moste faire !
 Adieu, the noblest yongling debonair ! 3843
- Adieu ! my sugar-sweet sovereign lord !
A dieu, the beste ! Adieu, swetteste All Aboue ! 3844
 Adieu, my gracyous spouce of recorde !
 Adieu, I say, myn owne vertuous loue !
 Adieu, suete housbonde by lousis concord !
 Adieu, my sugret suete souerain lorde ! 3848
 Adieu commaunde, my ioy and boldnesse !
 Adieu commaunde, your suete lif to drisse. 3850
- [Fol. 75 b.]
A dieu, my solas And iewell roiall ! 3851
 Adieu commaunde all peple here, sothlese !
- Adieu ! Lusignan ! Adieu, lusignen, fourged fair in all ;
 Adieu, al that which may A lady plese !
 Adieu, the gladnesse, mirthes ioy and ese ! 3855
 Adieu, the suete sound of ech Instrument !
 Adieu, I say, disportes reuerent ! 3857
- And adieu, sweet sounds of instruments !"
A dieu, wurthieste ! Adieu, *with* all honour ! 3858
 Adieu, my suete loue prented in hert sad !
 Our lorde the aide And be thi concellour !"
With-out more spech A lepe ther she made,
 (Seyng the Barons all that ther were had), 3862
 Thourght A fenistre so passed and wend
 When of hyr wurdes thys had made an ende. 3864
- Thus having said, she leapt out of the window, and so passed away.
Through the fenistre in such wise gan fle 3865
 Melusine *with*out tariing Any.

- In-to A serpent changed tho was she,
Of huge grettnesse and lenght was verily,
Wherof all were Astoned strongly ; 3869
With siluer and Asure ther burlled was,
Thys fairy woman such tail gan purchas, 3871
Which presently was become A serpent ; 3872
Whereof Raymound bement hir hugely.
Thre tymes the castell enuironnee went ;
At euery tour A ssounde yaf she lyly,
Wonder meruelous cast she vp A cry 3876
Full strange vnto hire, And ryght piteuous,
Hyr cry full heuy, wonder dolorous. 3878
Which I writte is trouth, therof ly no thyng. 3879
She thens forth went, vnto the air gan fle.
Ther hir lost Raymound, " Alas !" lowde crying,
Ful moche complained And ther wailed he.
Hys heres¹ faste drew, sore hir bement, parde, 3883
Cursing the houre that euer he was bornē,
Raymound, out fro wit for wo almoste lorē, 3885
In² hy shill uois the Barons said before, 3886
I " Adieu, my lady, with heres yowlownesse !³
Adieu, all debonerte for euermore !
Adieu, I say you, my fair suete maistresse !
Adieu, my ioy, my grace, And my richesse ! 3890
Adieu, my goodes and all my surete !
Adieu commaunde, all the disporte of me. 3892
Adieu, my iewell ! Adieu, my solas ! 3893
Adieu, you say, my lady precieuse !
Adieu, the fair whilom the prise gan purchas !
Adieu, my wife ! Adieu, my trew spouse !
Adieu, my lady verray graciouse ! 3897
Adieu, I you say, my full doucet floure !
Adieu, my lady of full gret valoure ! 3899

She was at once
changed wholly
into a serpent,

striped with ar-
gent and azure.

Three times she
went round the
castle,
uplifting a loud
cry at every turn.

[Fol. 76]
This that I write
is truth ; I lie not.

Raymond tears
his hair and curses
his hour of birth.

" Adieu !" he
cries, " my fair
mistress,
my joy, my
goodes, and my
surety !

Adieu ! my jewel,
my sweet flower !

¹ MS. " heree." ² MS. " IIn." ³ MS. " yow lownesse."

Adieu! fair rose,
fair violet!

Adieu, suete throte of soundes clerenesse! 3900
Adieu, fair Rose! **A**dieu, violet¹ also!
Adieu, the tree of louers feithfulnesse!
Adieu, I say my gentile lady vnto.
Adieu, my glory! **A**dieu, my ioy, lo! 3904
Adieu, the fair that so hath loued me!
My goode days gon, shall I neuer you se." 3906

[Fol. 76 b.]

What shall I
now do?
Never had man
such sorrow!

Ryght this Raymounde bewaled and bement 3907
his noble wife, for whom felt dolour,
Which thorough the Air hir flight tho hent,
Wherefor he hath A sory hert pat houre.
"Alas!" Raymound said, "wat do shall or labour?
For certes I haue sorow ynow at hert,
Neuer man had at the full so smert. 3913

I myself made the
ditch wherein I
now fall;

now am I sadder
than any 'ghost'
alive."

Forwhy shold I noght be A plain man, 3914
yff I fele at hert noysaunce mondiall?
Hit to declare good reson if I can,
For the diche haue made wheron now I fall.
Now Am I Acursed, to wo am made thrall, 3918
Now I am dolorous And full pensiffe
More then Any goste felt in his life." 3920

His barons com-
fort him,

and bid him bear
his burden softly.

But ther had he A noble company, 3921
Which full gentilgy gan hym to comforth,
And many hym said And shewed hertly,
That thay hym wold gladly recomfort,
That softly shold bere that dolorous port, 3925
Many examples to hym exort said,
Causyng sumwhat lesse hys sorow pat braid. 3927

A baron advises
him

After hym said A sensible Baroñ, 3928
"Of your son horrible behouith, lo!

¹ MS. "violent."

- To ordain As ordained to be doñ
 Melusine, when concell you gaffe vnto.
 Anon þat men shold make hym to deth go, 3932
 Or perish he wold the contre and grounde.”
 “My lordes present,” ther tham said Raymounde,
- “YOu beseche And pray tary noght ne bide, 3935
 As therof do ye hir commaundment ;
 So he be dede, I charge not how no tyde.”
 “To plesire, And will do all your entent ;”
 They wold no lenger ther tary, but forth went. 3939
 Raymound, which strongly wroth angry was
 For thys sorowfull And mischeuous cas, 3941
- WIch that ceason conquered was and gett, 3942
 As A sory man thens gan he renew,
 Into A chambre ther made he retret,
 hit unshit entring, the dore after drew,
 Ther lamentacion be-gan he of-new 3946
 In this said chambre ther, all soule, aloñ.
 No more of Raymound, but passe forth and goñ,
- Off the Barons hy say shall of contre. 3949
 Full sensible were, inly wyse and sage,
 Orrible toke by on Assent and gre,
 In A caue hym shitte *with*-out othir damage,
 Off moisty hay made bring to thys uiage, 3953
 The fire put *with*-in, so with fummy smoke
 Was the caue Anon full As myght be stoke. 3955
- THen loste horrible both breth and power, 3956
 Stifled he was Anon *with* smoky fume sure.
 After thay hym put into A faire bere,
 Nobly beried, hauing sepulture.
 The obsequie¹ doñ And compleshed pure 3960

to slay Horrible,
 as Melusine sug-
 gested.

[Fol. 77]
 Raymond com-
 mands them to
 do so,

and they depart
 to find him.

Raymond retreats
 into a chamber
 alone,

and there renews
 his lamentation.

The barons shut
 Horrible up in a
 cave,

fill the entrance
 with moist hay,
 and set fire to it,

so that he was
 soon stifled.

Then they put
 him into a fair
 bier, and buried
 him nobly.

¹ MS. “obsequire.”

After the wurdes And noble doctrine,
As lored and thaught had good Melusine. 3962

[Fol. 77 b.]
They then com-
mend him to God,
depart, and return
to Raymond.

Entered in church, non for hym can mourñ, 3963
After vnto god thay hym commaundyng,
Fro-thens departed without other sogourñ ;
Again to Raymounde were thay retornyng,
Which dolorous wo At hert was feling, 3967
With eyes sore wepte he in mornying plite,
A man can ne may hys sory dole write. 3969

Raymond again
laments, saying,

"It was all
through my
cousin that I
became a for-
sworn man.

Many tymes ofte, "my swete loue," sayng, 3970
"The haue disceiued And betrayed, lo !
By the exort of vntrew man makyng,
Al this me hath made my cosin to doo.
I Am by hym fals And als forsworne to, 3974
Ful of vice am and of Iniury ;
For ill chaunce me fell unfortunatly 3976

I was unfortunate
at first, when I
slew my sovereign
lord ;

and, secondly,
when I was false
to my lady.

At my firste gynnyng And commencement, 3977
When in the wode my souerain lord sly.
A gretter mischef neuer men gan hent,
And sithen when me sewed periury
Off that I had sworn to my fayr lady, 3981
That so loued, by whom good and honour had,
By whom I was susteyned and lord made ; 3983

False fortune's
cruel envy has
brought me to
this,
whereby I have
lost all my riches,

By whom all goodnes me cam suffisantly, 3984
By whom, vnder god, lif had and comforth.
But the Fals fortune, by cruel enuy,
Me hath brought to thys full sharpe & hard port,
Wherby¹ loste haue I all my hole disport, 3988
Where like-wise loste my mirth and gladnesse,
Wherby Also lost my hole rychesse ; 3990

¹ MS. "Bherby."

- W**herby loste haue I yoy of eternite ; 3991 [Fol. 78]
 That is, Melusine the fair suete wyght, and eternal joy.
 Whom I loued wel, As myself, parde ;
 She allwais loued me *with* hert parfight, Melusine always
 And the dede thereof shewid she to ryght. 3995 loved me ;
 In time togeders we haue be ensemble, my heart trembles
 Where-of of pete my hert doth trimble ; 3997 with pity.
- W**hen I bethenke the trouth and verite, 3998
 Therof shold I well haue gret pite,
 And so shall I haue all the lif of me,
 Of whom holdeth he to non end shall go.
 I luf better to dy for euermo 4002 I had rather die
 Then for to suffer so greuous A pain for evermore than
 vntill so be that ende shall attain. 4004 suffer so grievous
 pain.
- F**ull cruell pain I haue, but yut shall not end, 4005 My sorrow will
 Ne yut shall not ende Al myn ille truly never end till I
 Till I diffynid be, and fro¹ the worle wend. die.
 Time is for I may no lenger fructefy
 As in thys worle, neither edefy 4009
 Thyng but that it goth vnto decline,
 Rather or later to an endly fine. 4011
- F**Or Melusine, whom god do warde and kepe, 4012 For so Melusine
 Me ther said full well at hir departson, told me."
 Which causith my sorow in hert part and lepe."
 Parcelly, As the heres of eyes don,
 With teres makyng sprancles manyon, 4016
 Ryght so is Raymound tormented full sore, Raymond is sore
 Sore wepyng, teres making euermore 4018 tormented.
- F**Or Melusine, the woman off Fary, 4019 [Fol. 78 b.]
 Which thar-after cam full many A nyght But Melusine
 came often by
 night into

¹ MS. "for."

Thierry's cham-
ber, and often
dressed and fed
him.

Into the chambre right full secretly¹

Wher norished was Terry suetly to ryght,

That she Full ofte hym raid and dight, 4023

She was often
seen by the
nurses,

Chaufed, milked, And rechaufed Again.

Ther many tymes by the norish sain, 4025

But thay durste noght in no wise vp-rise, 4026

Neither o soule wurde to outre or say,

who told Ray-
mond of it, to his
great joy.

But vnto ther lord told the maner wise,

Wherof Raymond had full huge ioy alway.

In hys hert said with softe vois that day, 4030

"That yut Melusine hope and trust to haue;"

Full ill in hys breste such thoughtes gar craue.

Vanishede is she fro hys syght for ay, 4033

Remedy non, gold, siluer, ne honour.

Thierry grew
more in one
month than other
babes in four,

Thierry cherished Amendid Alway,

(Men merueled gretly off it that hour),

In a moneth more then other in four. 4037

but it was due
to his mother's
nursing.

Hys swet moder on hym such wyse thought,

Norished with hir milke And forth full wel

brought. 4039

She was often,
too, in his father's
chamber.

Ofte in his fader chambyr she was ; 4040

To norish no pappe like moders neuer-mo,

As beforñ is said, ho many it purchas.

I must now
leave speaking
of Raymond,

here cesse I and leue now, ferther will not goo

Off wofull Raymounde And hys sones two, 4044

here thys time not say vnto your presence,

But vnto declare will do my diligens 4046

[Fol. 79]
and tell you about
Geoffrey.
Remember that I
am not lying.

Off Gaffray with long toth you outre And say. 4047

Where I ly or no, god knowith An-hy ;

I lerned it noght certes at no day ;

A lier to be founde shame were outerly.

¹ MS. "fecerly."

- Gaffray went noght ouer tarynly, 4051 Geoffrey sailed
Thorough the se went, ouer pase rowing, swiftly on,
By fors of people so forth ther failling. 4053
- HE tho ariued And taries noght 4054 and reached
In norbelande, sesing both land and ground, Northumberland,
Where this Geant were procured and wrought, where the giant
And when Gaffray discended was þat stound, made war.
The Barons bode noght, gain hym went hole & 4058 The barons come
sound, to greet him,
Grettest and wurthiest of the said contre, 4060
Comyng to hym, *with*-out excused to be.
- THE gret, the meene, the litell, soth to tell, 4061 both great and
Approched And cam to hym, gret and small. small.
A gret Baron then, witty were and fell, A baron tells him
Ther hym rehersing the Geant dedes All, how their country
Ther liberte loste, ther contre made thrall 4065 was enthralled by
With that fers Geant huge and comerous, that fierce, huge,
Horrible, myghty, strong, And orgulous. 4067 troublesome, and
proud giant.
- IN A iourney, to certefy you all, 4068 In one day he
An hundered knightes of this said contre slew a hundred
Distroed and slain, put to deth mortall. knights,
So orgulous sette, full of cruelte,
Gret uengaunce gan do to the comynte ; 4072
As cursedly sly A thousand As on, and could as soon
The st[r]engest mortal eschew wold hys person. slay a thousand as
one.
- G Affray Answered, "then is he a Fend,¹ 4075 [Fol. 79 b.]
A dredful deuill full of cruelte. Geoffrey answer-
ed, "Then is he
But noght-for-that fro hym me will diffende, a fiend,
By me sonly distroed shall he be, but nevertheless
hys byding-place shewith unto me, 4079 I will soon destroy
him.

¹ MS. "affend."

I must find this
soldier.

For non othir cause comyn Am this houre,
But only to fynde this said soudiour, 4081

He shall fare ill
ere seven weeks
pass.

Which so goth Aboute, you sore distrussand. 4082
This knoith uerily, ill shall he betide
Or wekes seuyn ben passed to comaunde.

Provide me a
guide, that I
may see him to
discomfit him."

Do me vnto take here som maner gide,
To this place and stede me conuey to ride, 4086
So I may hym se for to discomfight."
As he desired, like gan to hym dight, 4088

Geoffrey takes a
debonair guide,

A gide hym taken, knowing the contre, 4089
With all the places where-to gan repair,
Where this Geant was wont dwellyng to be,
hys habitacion And mancion fair.

and commends
himself to God.

Such A gide hym toke which was debonare, 4093
After hym commaunde to our lordes grace.
Gaffray went thens, departing fro þat place. 4095

He and his guide
at last spy the
giant under a tree,

HE And hys gide Apace forth riding, 4096
Till that on full hy thai gan well Auise,
Both of tham faste ther coursers sporing ;
Then ny approached, Aboute gan deuise.

sitting on a marble
stone.

Vnder A tre sate this Geant in strange wise ; 4100
On a marbre stone at that ceason satte ;
The Gide for gret drede trembled and swatte. 4102

[Fol. 80]
The guide is
frightened.
Geoffrey laughs
at him, and says
he has not been
mislad.

HE sore Abasshed, changing his colour. 4103
Gaffray it saw, and gan to laugh sad ;
After in laughter saide to hys Gidour,
As for ryght noight drede and fere he¹ hade,
For thought should not mistriste god to be mislad.

The guide wishes
to be off,

"Good be in pees," said to Gaffray the gide,
"Behofull is me to uoide and go wide. 4109

¹ MS. "the."

For all riches and gold worly being, 4110

More nerre wold approche noght this said montain,

Ne lenger *with* you be here sogernyng,

Sin to you haue I shewed here certain

Grimold the Geant most meruelous plain. 4114

Sir Gaffray," he said, "here this is no iape,

To god you commaunde, me will hens fast scape."

as he has shown
him Grimold the
giant;
and he assures
Geoffrey that re-
maining there
is no jape.

Gaffray laughed faste, after to hym said, 4117

For all loues desired and besought,

A litell while bide hertly hym praid,

That he wold behold what wise that thai fought.

"For in litell space knowlich shold be wrought 4121

As ho of us to the better shold haue,

And at this iourney ho hym best can saue." 4123

Geoffrey laughs,
and asks him to
remain and see the
battle,

which will be soon
decided.

This gide answered, "no charge of your bataill, 4124

you gided haue to point, lenger will noght bide ;

yff ye win, no part wil ne to myn auail.

Fro¹ you will depart, Again wil I ride."

Gaffray therof laughed suetly that tide, 4128

Then to the gide said, "now vnderstande me,

In thys place abide vnto that ye see 4130

The guide says
he does not care
to see it.

Geoffrey laughs
sweetly,
and again begs
him to wait till

Ho bering hym best and ho better haue ; 4131

That sain And don, torn my men vnto.

Without Any doubte yut may ye go saue,

Our Army dedes declare, all we doo,

And al my gouernaunce telling thaim also." 4135

Then hym said the gide, "do shall your entent,

My lord, I am at your commaundement. 4137

[Fol. 80 b.]
he sees who gets
the best of it.

He can then
return and tell
the others.

The guide con-
sents,

¹ MS. "For."

but declares he is
in great dread,

D Eliuerly to hym ye procede, 4138
Assured am noght, ne haue hert non bold.

Of verray trouth I haue such fere and drede

and that if Geof-
frey knew the
giant as well as
he did, he would
think twice about
it.

Of this horrible fende, Geant Grimold,
That almoste my herte faillith lif to hold, 4142
And if ye knew hym lik-wise As I doo,
Auised wold ye be or to hym wold goo." 4144

But Geoffrey
promises that the
giant shall die.

Gaffray answerd, "of hym haue ye no doute; 4145
Grimold here shal dy, no-while shall endure."

But yut Gaffray shall fynd hym stoute,

Now our Lord aid
him.

Ful strong was Grimold in werly scomfiture.
Our lord Gaffray gyf aid and¹ conforture. 4149
Nedfull was to hym at that ceason ryght
More then euer had Any other knight, 4151

Grimold had,
singly, slain a
thousand or more
men.

Which swerd gan bere or garde with Any. 4152
For² A thousande or mo of contre

Grimold the Geant slain had he sowly.

Where-for peple had wonderly to se
huge heuinesse And gret iniquite. 4156

Never was there
a worse man
seen.

Neuer wurse man sain, truly to rehers,
For meruelous was in dedes diuers. 4158

[Fol. 81]
Geoffrey mounts,
leaves the valley,
and rides up the
mountain,

Then Gaffray hasted, A horsebacke ryding, 4159
The montain gan take, leuing the ualay,
Which that vppon was A fantain walling,
leuing the medew And the playnes ay.

leaving the guide
below.

Als the gide lefte ther in that place alway; 4163
God wold not þat ill Grimold shold hym doo,
Which so was to doubte in euery stour tho. 4165

Grimold, perceiv-
ing Geoffrey,

Gaffray on hym toke vp go the montain; 4166
Grimold perceiued it, moch gan he meruail

¹ "werly" is repeated after "and." ² MS. "Fo."

- That O soule man greithed hym to attain,
 As to that place come hym For to assaill,
 Saying hym wold hate without any fail. 4170
 But when in musing A litell had be,
 he said, "this worthy man cometh to me 4172
- wonders how one
 sole man dare
 come to assaill
 him,
 but he thinks he
 must be coming
 to propose a
 peace.
- Here, As I beleue, for to trete A pees." 4173
 The path went he up wonder bustesly.
 "Off fine fors," thought he, "moste speke, not tonge
 lese,
 Such on entreth vp, don shall hastily."
 A huge leuer toke in handes plainly, 4177
 To sight semyng noght no body humain.
 hym *with* for to aide, this leuer shoke plain 4179
- Then he takes in
 his hands a huge
 lever,
- In such maner wise As man A staf wold, 4180
 Or A lytell body of sixe or sef¹ yere age,
 And better then, I say, seff² tymes fold
 As a proper staf to walk in viage.
 For the which after his strenght & corage, 4184
 Ryght noght is to syght *with*-say again,
 But that the stafe³ was more then Any sain, 4186
- which he uses
 as a staff, or as
 a little child
 would a stick.
- Without gain-
 saying, the staff
 was huge,
- Which lightly ne wold to bow ne aply. 4187
 yut it behouith that A staf ply shold
 To the pley of such at som tyme truly,
 When in his handes this stafe gan to hold.
 Seing that Gaffray towarde hym come wold, 4191
 In shill hautain uois toke hym lowde to cry,
 "how comest thou now me As to diffy? 4193
- [Fol. 81 b.]
 and could not
 easily be bent.
- Seeing Geoffrey
 coming, he cries
 aloud, "How
 comest thou here?
- What art thou, say me, what gost thou to seke?
 Off deth no warant neuer shalt thou haue."
 Gaffray anon An Answere oute gan breke,
- Thou shalt have
 no warrant from
 death."

¹ MS. "of fef."

² MS. "feff."

³ MS. "ftafte."

PARTENAY.

L

Geoffrey answers,
"Ribald, look
that thou save
thyself;
I shall smite off
thy head."

"Therof shall the werñ; Rebaude, loke the saue;
For to scomfite the souly I the craue. 4198
Off thi hed shall smite; dy shalt thou by me
Mortally Anon, now here diffynde the, 4200

Grimold, hearing
this, began to
laugh,
and ironically
asks Geoffrey to
spare his life.

The unto warant, certes, thou ne may." 4201
Grymold, this hiring, to[ke]¹ hym to laugh tho.
Ther hym said Grymold, "you beseche and pray,
Fair sir, saue my life, lete me ou-lif go,
Taking this peple to ranson also!" 4205
Geffray vnderstode, "cherle!" said hastily,
"Scornest thou with me? certes thou shalt dy!

But Geoffrey
sternly replies,

that he trusts to
rend his head to
the teeth.

Here lo! shalt thou dy; I limite thi place, 4208
Neuer Ranson take shall I to thy charge;
But doñ to the teeth the shall rent by grace."
Ther had was A place, inly gret And large.

Geoffrey braces
on his shield,
and shakes his
spear, being no
coward.

Gaffray that tyme, enbrasing shild and targe, 4212
By malice And wreth his spere Faste he shoke,
his coursere spored, no fentise on hym toke, 4214

[Fol. 82]
Riding straight
at the giant,
he deals him such
a blow that only
his steel hauberke
saved him.

For noble loos And prowesse to acquire. 4215
With the Forhed plain gain hym went, & smote
Enmyddes the brest under the pappe with yre.
Such A stroke hym dalt ther vppon hys cote,
Ne had the hauberke smal mail be, god wote, 4219
Als hys brest of stile, ille hym hade come sure;
For Grimold ther was at ille auenture. 4221

Grimold fell on
the ground,

Noght-for-that yut vppon the hard ground 4222
Tomblid Grimold enmeddes the mountain,

¹ Fr. text, "*si prent a rire.*"

hys legges reised up an-hy that stound,		throwing up his legs.
Wher-with Grimold was strongly greued plain.		
Full wightly tho releued hym certain,	4226	But soon he got up again,
In hys hert gan fele full dolorous woo.		while Geoffrey alights
That Gaffray this saw, ther discended tho	4228	

T hat hys hors shold noght myscheuously sle,	4229	that his horse may not be killed under him.
As vnder hym to mortall deth noght cast.		
Grimold the Geant, lenger bode noght he,		
But vp hym Reised, Gaffray beheld faste ¹ ;		Grimold looks at Geoffrey,
So but litell saw hym don to thraste,	4233	and in wonder asks his name.
Als in so litell body such uertew,		
Ther hym demaunding, " what art thou? say trew,		

That such a stroke me toke? neuer felt such on, 4236
 My lemys so cast vp; yut know I noght the
 Wherechens thou art, ne what is thy person.
 But off the me uenge shamed shall I be;
 And yut, so I am; but yut, say thou me, 4240
 What thou art me say, I the here require;
 No gentill knyght art but graunt my desire." 4242

He says he neuer
 threw his limbs up
 like that before,
 yet he is ashamed
 to revenge him-
 self,
 and again asks
 his name.

G Affray Answerd to [t]hys baculere, ²	4243	[Fol. 82 b.]
“ My name wil not hide by ryght non engine ;		Geoffrey answered
Gaffray <i>wil</i> the gret toth named am awhere,		this bachelor,
In many contres know the name of myne ;		
For I Am Gaffray, sone to Melusine,	4247	“ I am Geoffrey
Off lusignen borne of þat good lady,		of Lusignan,
And of lusignen, know thou wel, am I.”	4249	Melusine's son.”

When thys had spoken vnto hym Gaffray, 4250
The Geant hym said, "I know the full well ;
Full moch haue I hurd spokyn of the aday,
And of thy gret prowesse eueridell.

The giant says
that he knows
him now,

¹ MS. "faste."

² MS. "bainlere."

for that he had
slain Guedon
his cousin,
for which he will
now pay him off.

Guedon thou slyest, my cosyn, soth to tell, 4254
In guerrande lande ; thy guerdon for to haue,
To this place ert come it to speke and craue. 4256

Hit shalt thou haue by fors of myghty were, 4257
For of that shall I here now take vengeance."

The giant thought
he was speaking
truth, but he was
nearer lying.
Geoffrey tells
him that desire
of revenge will
increase his hurt.

he trowed say trouth, but lied more nerre.
Gaffray hym said, "trowyng this instance,
Such supposse to uenge ther huge shame perschance,
Which ofte cressith hurt, men may wel it se,
In sondry places conceyued may be." 4263

The giant strikes
at Geoffrey with
his lever, but

Thys cruell Geant ne myght hym withhold 4264
When so hym saw scorn, his leuer haused by,
Gaffray to smite trowyng tho he should.

Geoffrey blanches,

Apart Gaffray uoided full warly,
Somwhat blent, the stroke so forth passyng by, 4268
With hym noght mette ; the leuer doñ to ground
With-in the Roche made A grett depe trowe þat
stounde ; 4270

and the lever
makes a great
hole in the rock.

[Fol. 68]
It tears the rock
a foot deep.

For it throwen was wonder bustesly, 4271
And with such rudesse gan it to descend,
That A plain fote large the roche tare strangely.
Gaffray hys swerd drew hym for to diffend,
On the elbow¹ the Geant smote at end, 4275
Such a stroke hym lent, to full huge maruell,
That of the hauberk brek many a mail ; 4277

Geoffrey lends the
giant a stroke on
the elbow.

Fvll litell fauted, fouled had noght be. 4278
The vermail blode doñ ryn wonderly,
The herbes Aboute becam² red to se.
This fers Geant tho to Gaffray cam wightly,
With full malice yre And cruell enuy 4282

The grass round
about becomes
red.
The giant again
raises his lever.

¹ MS. "ellow."

² MS. "becan."

The gret leuer reised vp and hy brought ;
Full heuy was, but it greuyd hym noght ; 4284

Gaffray thought smite, but he uoyded place. 4285
Ther the stroke fill don thre foote in-to grounde,
So in harde roche smote he ther apace ;

Geoffrey again
blenches, and the
stroke tears the
ground three feet
deep,

Whereof the Geant was full wroth that stounde.

With that stroke his arme Astoned tho founde, 4289
And thys said leuer to-rent thoroughly,
And Amidward broken outerly ; 4291

so that the giant
finds his arm
stunned and his
lever broken.

Wherof Gaffray thanks to godd yilding. 4292
Ther Gaffray hym smot with hys swerd full faste,
Hys grett strenght And fors ther manly shewing,
An-hy hym smoth vppon the scul in haste,
The Geant with that stroke Almoſte doñ caste ; 4296
To whome þat stripe was greuous manyfold.
For sorow And wo An-hy hys hand gan hold, 4298

and smites the
giant a grievous
stroke on the
skull.

Gaffray forthwith smote vppon the hed an-hy ; 4299
Off that greuous stroke Gaffray greued sore.
The Geant his fuste lete to fle strongly ;
Gaffray with his swerd smote hym euermore,
To whom belonged fight in knightly lore, 4303
Vppon hys shuldre A stroke gaffe of meruell
That he rent and brak both hauberke & maill.

[Fol. 83 b.]
Next the giant
smites Geoffrey
on the head,

but Geoffrey
returns him a
marvellous stroke
on the shoulder,
which rends both
hauber and mail.

Plain pawme of hande the swerde made entre ; 4306
The sanguine blode doñ ran the belay,
Anon all made purpurat rede to se.

The giant,
severely wounded,

Thys Geant, of whom we declare and say,
hys goddys¹ corsed, hys goddys gan renay, 4310
Enlesse thei² wold gif hym Aid³ or socour,
Both Margot, polin, Bernagant that houre, 4312

curse his gods
and abjures them,
both Magot,
Apolin, and
Tervagant.

¹ MS. "goodys." ² MS. "ther." ³ MS. "And."

- But his great wailing was useless.
Geoffrey will conquer at last, but will have much trouble first.
- M**Ahounde, Iupiter, And als other mo ; 4313
hym-selfen bement sorily expresse.
But for ryght noght was his gret waling tho ;
But Gaffray at end his wil shal redresse,
Noght only anon but er þat he cesse, 4317
But yut shall he haue I-now anguisse grete,
Er the victory be conquere[d] and gette.¹ 4319
- The giant leaps at Geoffrey, and grips him fast by the reins,
and they wrestle together.
- T**he Geant saw come towarde hym Gaffray, 4320
Adrad, afferd of hym was gretly.
Anon forth lepte, enbrasing hym alway,
Teryng, drawyng here and there besily,
As he which was takyn cursidly. 4324
Gaffray gripte he there faste by the raynes,
Ech of thaim both suffryng there hug paynes 4326
- [Fol. 84]
They hurtle, beat, and pull each other till they at last separate,
and then Geoffrey smites him on the haunch
- T**hat thay almost loste ther breth outerly. 4327
Strongly went Aboute, so fast hurteling ;
Il to-geders went As were egally,
Such wyse hurteling, beting, and drawyng
That fro other sondred escaping. 4331
Atwixste thaim yeuen many strokis tho,
And Gaffray hym smote vppon the hanche so
- with a knife which he held in his sleeve, piercing through his coat of mail.
- W**yth A costile which in hys sleffe gan hold, 4334
that his Iesseron failed and breke to,
Thorewly passyng the costile-yre cold ;
Hastily the blode lepte out and ran tho.
The Geant bakwarde lepyng Gaffray fro, 4338
Ther-thens spedfully takyng the montain.
Gaffray hasted after, hym to attain, 4340
- The giant flees for his life.
- T**O take leue of hym, but faste he gan fle ; 4341
In litell time and space ferre was he thens.
In A chine of the Roch made he entry,
- The giant enters a chine of the rock,

¹ See line 3942.

For gret doubte had of Gaffrayes uiolens.
 Gaffray sory that uoided was ther-hens, 4345
 Thys cruell Geant whom he so had loste,
 To hys coursere cam, lepte vp, made no boste,

being greatly
 afraid.

Geoffrey mourns
 that he has lost
 him,

TO hys gide went, declaryng hym and told, 4348
 Fro worde to worde, All thar werke indede,
 like As thay had don; And how this Geant bold
 Thens into a caue¹ fled for fere and drede,
 Within the quike roche for all hys manlyhed. 4352
 The gide vnto hym approached full ny,
 Which there wondred and merueled strongly, 4354

but returns to his
 guide, and tells
 him all the story.

The guide marvels
 strongly,

HOW that Gaffray had such hug hardinesse. 4355
 Hys² helme wasted sore, rent And broken all,
 And hys hauberke disma[i]lled all expresse,
 In many places holes gret And small.
 The gide said, "so god me aid eternall, 4359
 I perceiue full well And ryght certainly,
 That Gaffray is full of prowesse and hardy." 4361

[Fol. 84 b.]
 beholding how
 Geoffrey's helm
 was broken,
 and how full his
 hauberk was of
 holes.

He compliments
 Geoffrey.

COMyng thay saw of peple gret fusion, 4362
 Many nobles *with* other of contre,
 As sone As the dede vnderstode Anon,
 Demaundyng suetly of Gaffray the fre
 Wat was his name? and thaim declared he. 4366
 And after thay had demaunded hys name,
 Then whens he was, off wat renon & fame, 4368

Many nobles
 approach,

and ask Geoffrey
 his name,
 and whence he
 came.

And that to thaim wold the verray trouth say, 4369
 (For fain wold thay know, And he all thaim told).
 On of the Barons then said, "lord, you pray

One of the barons
 addresses him,

¹ MS. "came," altered to "cauee."

² MS. "hyis."

and tells him the
giant will not re-
turn to fight him
for any worldly
wealth,

here vnderstandeth what you shall vnfold ;
Be ye in certain, for all worly gold 4373
Thys cruel Geant, (that god hym confound !)
Again you will noght retorn at no stound, 4375

for that he knows
he is predestined
to die by Geof-
frey's hand.

WEl knowen is hym he shuld nought escape 4376
Fro your handes twain, yf he were in hold ;
That his mortall deth labour wold and shape,
For so is hym predestinat¹ of old."

Geoffrey declares
he will never de-
part till he finds
him.

"By the Trynite," said Gaffray the bold, 4380
"Fro contre shall I neuer, lo ! departe
Till that I hym finde by som maner art." 4382

[Fol. 85]
One of the barons
tells him that
the mountain is
enchanted,

"My lorde," said on of thaim, "beth noght in doute ;
This montain wheron this Geant is truly
Full of the fairy is it all aboute.

and that the noble
Helmas, king of
Albany, was en-
closed therein
with his three
daughters,

The noble helmas, king of Albany,
With hys doughtres thre ther was verily 4387
Enclosed with-in, nawhere myght issew,
By such werkes wroughten incongrew, 4389

because he had
wilfully beheld
their mother
in child-bed,

FOr that there moder, the lady presine, 4390
lying in gesian wilfully had sain ;
Which hym diffended that by non engine,
Vppon this diffence that she hym made plain.
Noght-withstandyng went to se hir dedes solain, 4394
Which therof with hir made had couenaunt
Goyng ne comyng to hir wold noght haunt, 4396

after distinctly
promising he
would not do so.

She had at that
time three fair
daughters.

As toward hyr whyle in gesian lay ; 4397
Wher if so gan do, at end mischef shold.
With doughtres fair in lay she that day,
Thys ioly lady, presine, to behold,
Doughtres thre had childed and vnfold. 4401

This fair lady's
name was Pre-
sine,

¹ MS. "perdeftinat."

- helmas forsworn, periured, and comerd to,
The couenaunt hold *with* presine made tho 4403 and Helmas had made her the above promise;
- F**Or-soth he failed; wherthorough he lost 4404 but he failed to keep it, ✓
Presine hys lady, As after shall hyre;
hyt declare And¹ tell shall my wersom gost.
With thes doughters thre he closed entire,
For ther moder lost, the soth to acquire. 4408 and he and his three daughters were enclosed in the mountain.
In this hy montain shitte up were thay tho,
Neuer was knowen to what place were goo. 4410
- F**Or-sothe helmas neuer issued oute; 4411 [Fol. 85 b.] Ever since a huge giant had been their warden,
Ther were thay shitte vp fro þat heder-to.
But in this montain, *with*out any doute,
hath euer sith be an hug Geant, loo!
Wardain, *with* meruelous ouercomyng so 4415
That men ne durst noght it to approche ny.
Tyll your comyng now no man sain truly, 4417 and (till Geoffrey's coming) there had never been a man
- B**ut that this Geant put to deth mortall; 4418 whom the giant had not slain when they fought together.
So was he myghty and meruelous stronge.
This contre hath he put to mischef all,
Our kyng which we hild moste chefe vs Among
litell hath fro hym deffended our wrong. 4422 All of them had been forced to yield to Grimold the giant.
To grimold vs hath of Fors made yilding,
Euermore sithen that helmas our king 4424
- I**Nto such felowship was put and caste. 4425
Thys Grymold is the fifte Geant found,
The sixte, or the sefth of thaim hath be last,
Wasting thys contre both the lande and ground,
To All men making werre full habound 4429 Grimold was the fifth, the sixth, or perhaps the seventh of these wardens who had made war about to all men.
Vnto the time of your blessed comyng,
The which ben welcome to vs here beyng." 4431

¹ MS. "Ant."

When Geoffrey
heard the news,

he took an oath
that he would die
as a recreant
or else discomfit
the giant.

[Fol. 86]
Next day Geof-
frey leapt on his
courser,

and went up the
mountain
spurring him
nimble.

Perceiving the
hole in the rock
where the giant
entered,

he descended and
looked in ;

but saw no more
than he would in
an oven.
"I wonder," says
he, "how he got
in, seeing he is so
wondrously 'cor-
poral,' much more
than I am.

See here the cave.

When that Gaffray hurd thes new nouels told, 4432
Full good and fair bene thes tydings truly.

Ther A gret oth made As man inly bold,
Aforne thaim present to all openly,
That he wold be dede ful recreantly 4436
Or discomfite wold this cruell Geant ;
He doubted no-thing, the man so pusant. 4438

The night passed, the fair day appering, 4439
Aforne thes Barons full twenty and mo
Gaffray wightly on hys coursere leping,
The Geant neuer doubted for no wo.
leue toke, after went vp the montain tho ; 4443
Full gret pain he had to go vp an-hy ;
Hys coursere sporing that ceason wightly, 4445

That to the Roche cam, so spored and smote. 4446
Tournyng enuyron, the hole perceyuinge,
Auised and knew, well gan it to note
That thys huge Geant ther had made entring.
Fro hys coursere doñ Anon ther leping, 4450
A-foote discended, in-warde gan behold.
But to see within ne myght noght be¹ told ; 4452

NO thyng he saw more then in a ouen he. 4453
Gaffray tho said, "Astoned am in all
Wherby the Geant now here passed be,
Sin þat gret thikke is, wonder corporall,
Moche more then I am fourged personall. 4457
I know well that here or there entre made,
Noght that way, but this, ran he full sad. 4459

SE here now the place where he made entre, 4460
Se here now the caue, without Any doute,
Where thys Geant entred in to se ;

¹ MS. "he."

Thys is the gret Roche openly all-oute,
Where grene grasse hath non growing there About.
The caue was hewin within large and brode
So As he myght ren without any bode. 4466

This is the great
rock wherein the
cave is hewn,
and it is big
enough inside.

For he was full huge, moche gretter then I ame. 4467
But, so iesu crist me warde fro noisaunce,

[Fol. 86 b.]

Whatsomeuer approach me of grame,
Me wil not withhold by no gouernaunce
But hym here within will seke his instaunce." 4471
Entre made he tho ther in-to the grounde,
For-soth ther within thought seke hym that
stounde. 4473

Whatever hap-
pens, I will seek
him inside."

So he enters the
cave.

If that he be there, truly shall hym fynd. 4474

The spere lete don, ren the hed, be-form lete goo ;
After ny sewed, derkly, As man blynd.

Letting down his
spear, he pushes
the spear-head
before him, and
follows it, clench-
ing his teeth.

Put hys feet before, noght drad, in went tho,
Shittyng vp hys mouth with hys teeth also. 4478

Adon the spere lowe aualed he,
Till he cam vnto the botme and entre. 4480

Thus came he to
the bottom.

When at the botme was, hee gan take hys spere ;
Off An herd wode was, breke¹ wold not soth-
lesse ;

His spear being of
a hard wood, such
as could not be
broken,

Man better timbre neuer saw nawhere,
For broken wold, ne had be good expresse ;
Inly good it was, to no breche gan dresse. 4485

Ny the hed the spere gan he take full prest,
And forth went apas, lenger wold not rest. 4487

he seizes it near
the head, and goes
on,

¹ MS. "bbreke."

- A**fter, Aferrome saw he hug clernesne, 4488
 When a litell while forth ther he had go.
 The spere euermore Aforne hym gan dresse
 In tastyng the way, vntill that he tho
 Ariued and cam A fair place vnto, 4492
 Where A chambre founde full fair wrought & well,
 There fourged and made was it of nouell.¹ 4494
- [Fol. 87]
She myght in no wise, lo! more fairer be. 4495
 In ryght side And lifte wrought by good auisse;
 Coruen in the roche full freshly was she;
 But o going oute perceiue myght no wise.
 Ryght fair it was And gentile to deuise, 4499
 The rychesse gret prise, hard to attain,
 That in this chambre had was tho and sain. 4501
- It was carved in the rock, with no place of egress,
 In the midst was a tomb, supported on six pillars of fine gold.
She² All betan was with fine pured gold 4502
 Full of riche perrey, made³ to gret maistry.
 Enmyddes A tombe of this chambre told.
 Thys tombe sette vppon sixe pilours hy
 Off fyne masse gold, with perles many, 4506
 A man shold not finde nawhere more fine;
 Precyous rich were, of huge medicine. 4508
- Above it was a king, well formed of chalcedony,
 and beside him a fair lady of alabaster.
Above was had A knightly armed kyng, 4509
 Off casedony will formed and made.
 Vppon this saild tombe was he ther liggig,
 Resplendisig fair in this chambre sprad.
 Ioynant ny ther-to A fair lady had, 4513
 Being in estat (who beheld with ey)
 Off Alabastre was this noble lady. 4515

¹ Here follows the catchword—"she myght in no wise."² MS. "Sfhe."³ MS. "perreymade."

- T**O constantinoble fro-thens is no fail, 4516
 Ne myght ymage finde *with* it to compare.
- Off this full strange sight Gaffray gan meruell, Geoffrey marvels
 An huge tablet this fair lady bar at this,
 In hir handes twain all this to declare, 4520 but observes a
 Resembling to be fourged all of-new. tablet which the
 In this tablet wrete As here shall ensew. 4522 lady bare in her
 hands, on which
 was written the
 following :
- “ **H**er¹ light sir helmas, the full noble king, 4523 [Fol. 87 b.]
 Which me hath loste by hys gret deray “ Here lieth Sir
 Wherof I was And had huge estonyng. Helmas the king,
 Thys noble kyng was full Amerous ay ; who promised me
 Couenaunt me had, er spoused were Alway, 4527 ere we were wed-
 That neuer day, whiles he gan endure, ded that, whilst I
 The time that I in Gesian ly sure, 4529 lay in child-bed,
- H**E shuld noght enquire by no maner way 4530 he would never
 Off my dedes, neither no wise me se, inquire about me,
 Towardes me noght come ne go no day, nor see me, till I
 Till ceason And time I reised shold be. was recovered.
- Tho it fel and cam, of my belay thre 4534 Then it befell that
 Full faire doughtres had in this same yere, I had three fair
 Which right gracyous And full hable were. 4536 daughters at once,
- H**Elmas so gan do that he me gan se 4537 and Helmas con-
 In such wise As I in my childbed lay. trived to see me ;
- Anon ther fro hym I uanished me, whereupon I
 Such wise departed and thens fly my way ; vanished and took
 Neuer knew what part went I my iournay ; 4541 my daughters
 And my doughtres thre forth *with* me lad, with me, V
 Al thaim norished vnto gret age had, 4543 and brought them
 up.
- F**Vll well amended And right well gan growe. 4544 When they were
With my mylke thaim fed, and milked all thre ; fifteen years old,
 After thaim told, when fiftene yeres gan owe, I told them how

¹ MS. “Hher.”

I had lost their
father.

The maner how I loste ther fader fre.

In¹ Auoblon the fairy contre,

4548

The eldest, Melu-
sine, was very
vexed about it.

The eldeste of birth, married she was,

Melusine called in euery plas.

4550

[Fol. 88 *being lost, its place is here supplied from the French text, beginning on Fol. 103 b.*]

[A ses deulx seurs, selon Raison,
Comptèrent toute la chaison,
Et dirent moy, *que* suis leur mere,
Me vouldroient vengier de leur pere.
Les trois filles furent d'accort
De Iecter sur leur pere vng sort,
Pour me vengier du grant meffait
Que *par* folie eust vers moy fait.
A ce toutes segsentirent,²
Et dedens le mont enclouirent
Helmas, qui leur pere estoit,
Et qui menty sa foy auoit.
Quant Il fut mort, le lenterray
Soubz ceste tombe, & enserray,
Et fiz ceste tombe ainsi faire,
Ainsi figurer & pourtra[i]re ;
Dessus fiz mettre ma semblance,
Affin quil en fust Ramembrance
A celui qui le tableau lyroit ;
Car ceans homme nentreroit,
Sil nestoit de la lignie
En avolon et en fairie
De mes trois filles, dont pourrez
Oyr parler *quant* vous vouldrez.
Les geans a garder commis,
De celle heure *que* cy la mis,
Que nul entrast en ce passaige
Sil nestoit yssu du lignaige.
Je ordonnay dons a mes filles

[With her two sisters, as was right,
they talked over every circumstance,
and told me, who was their mother,
they wished to avenge me on their father.
The three daughters agreed
to bring a fate upon their father,
to avenge me of the great misdeed
that he had foolishly done against me.
To this they all assented,
and enclosed within the mountain
Helmas, who was their father,
and who had broken his promise.
When he died, I buried him
beneath this tomb, and enclosed him there,
and caused this tomb to be thus made,
thus sculptured and painted.
Thereon I caused my likeness to be put
that there might be remembrance of it
in him who should read the tablet.
For never should man enter here
except he were of the lineage
(in Avalon and the fairy-country);
of my three daughters, of whom
you may hear tell when you will.
I bade the giants to watch,
from the hour I set them there,
that none should enter by this passage
except he were sprung of our line.
I provided gifts for my daughters,

¹ In the margin, "*Auoblon y^e fuyre contre.*"

² *fassentirent* (?).

Qui gentes furent & abilles ;	who were beautiful and fair :
A mellusine la maisnee,	to Melusine, the eldest,
Qui moult estoit saige & senee,	who was very wise and prudent,
Le luy donne don a sa vie,	I give her a gift for life
Depar lordre de faerie,	(according to the order of fairies),
Tant <i>que</i> le siecle dureroit,	that, as long as her life lasted,
Le sempmedi serpent seroit ;	she should be a serpent every Saturday ;
Et qui la vouldroit espouser,	and, whoever would marry her,
Delle ne devoit adresser	must not approach her
Ce iour, mais soy garder moult bien,	on that day, but take good heed,
Quelle part quel fust, sur toute Rien ;	wherever he was, and in every thing.
Que en cil estoit ne la veist,	He must not see what she then was,
Ne qua nulluy ne le dist.	nor tell anybody of it.
Et qui celle Regle suiroit,	And, whoever followed this rule,
Mellusine toudis vinroit	to him would Melusine always come
Ainsi comme femme mortelle,	just like a mortal woman,
Et poure femme naturelle ;	as women naturally do.
Puis mouroit naturellement,	Then should she die naturally,
Comme les autres proprement.	and as others usually do.
Melior, la fille moyenne,	To Melior, the second daughter,
Qui tant fut belle crestienne,	who was so fair a creature,
Vng don lui donne de faerie,	I give a fairy-gift,
Bien est Raison <i>que</i> le vous die.	and 'tis well that I should tell you what.
En vng chasteau fort & massis,	In a castle strong and massive,
Qui en armenye est assis,	which is situate in Armenia,
Voire, en grant la armenye,	(in great Armenia, verily,)
Le luy ordonnay <i>que</i> sa vie	I bade her that, during her life,
Tendrait leans vng espriuer ;]	she should keep a sparrow-hawk there ;

Where it shall behoue nightes to wacche thre 4607
 As ho which off hir demaunde A yifte wold,
 And what he desire I-graunted shall be ;
 The firste demaunde demaundith ther haue shold.
 But not hir body desire haue ne holde ; 4611
 Off it Melior loke he noght require,
 Neither by no meene hir not desire. 4613

[Fol. 89]
 Whoever wishes
 to ask a boon of
 her must watch
 there three nights,
 and he shall have
 it ;

but he must not
 ask for *herself*.

But if he yield to
somnolency, he
shall be her priso-
ner for ever.

NO knight wake ne shold but of hie birth were ;
And ho-so do slepe in tho nightes thre
(Wher lytell or moche) in sampnolence there,
Alway perpetuall there abide shall he
In the paleis with melior the fre 4618
As prisonere in prison alway :
Such gifte I hir giffe As this tyme dysplay. 4620

Such is the gift
I give her.

Palestine, the
youngest, shall
have this destiny :

Palatine¹ the yongeste suster tho was, 4621
So named and called was at that day ;
To whom I destained to purchas
Such A maner gyfte As I you shall say :
That in coinqs² the hy montain ay, 4625
Where failled hert haue men full many,
Ensuffering full ofte ryght gret misery, 4627

she shall dwell
in a very high
mountain, where
men's hearts fail
them,

and shall there
guard her father's
treasure, till a
knight of our
lineage comes and
takes it by force,

Ther to warde and kepe hir faders tresoure ; 4628
Enduryng hir life, in that place to be,
Till som approche and come, of linage our,
To that hy montain by fors and strenght he
To ascende an-hye Aboue the hill to see, 4632
The tresour caste oute, and after shall conquere
The lande of promission by hys powere. 4634

and afterwards
conquers Pales-
tine, the land of
promise.

[Fol. 89 b.]
This mountain is
situated in Arra-
gon.

Tho was the monte of whom we speke and say 4635
Sette in Arrigon of trouth verily,³
Which that is a thing knowen well be may.
This presine to hyr doughters thre surely,
Which were full hable and ryght faire to ey, 4639
On thaim the moder auenged that brayd,
By the maner that Aboue is saide, 4641

Thus Presine
avenged herself
on her three
daughters,

¹ The *A* being indistinct, it looks like "Prllatine;" see l. 5049.

² Very indistinct.

³ In the margin—*Palestine yn a castell yn aragon.*

- For ther fader helmas king of renon, 4642 Because they shut
That thay enclosyd by ther wrong derain up their fater
Helmas in the
mountain in
Avalon.
With-in the montain ther of Aualon ;
For by my faith I loued þat souerain,
how-be-it þat he misdede me Again ; 4646 For I (Presine)
loved him heartly
though he sinned
against me."
Off feith and of trouth I loued hym hertly
With all the sprites of my body." 4648
- Ryght thus was And went the scripture saing ; 4649 Such was the
writing on the
tablet.
And when Gaffray, uailant man and wurthy,
Had radde thys tablet, he moch meruelling ;
But yut he knew noght uerray certainly,
But santred and doubted uerryly 4653 After reading it
Geoffrey greatly
wondered whether
he was of Pre-
sine's lineage or
not.
Wher on was or no of this saide linage.
Fro-thens went Gaffray with full fers corage, 4655
- Inly faste cerching als both low and hy, 4656 Passing thence
he searches for
Grimold every-
where,
Where that Grimold in Any place finde myght ;
So thens departed passyng ouer lightly.
Al the wais toke and sought thys huge wight,
Grimold myght not fynde ne of hym haue syght.
Streight Aforh hym A fair feld gan behold,
Ther perceyuyng A square tour, A strong hold.
and at last sees a
fair field with a
tower in it.
- The gate saw open, the barreres¹ undo ; 4663 [Fol. 90]
The gate being
open he enters
and sees a number
of prisoners be-
hind a great
lattice ;
Into the hous Gaffray went Anon,
Stify And bigly his spere holdyng tho.
In a gret latise be-held manyon,
Al prisoneres where in warde thai echon. 4667 they warn him
off,
Of hym wondred And merueled strongly,
And on of thaim said, "go hens ful quikly ! 4669
- I Concell you," said, "depart hens Anon 4670 lest the giant
should destroy
him.
That this huge Geant in no wise you se ;

¹ MS. "barrores."

Or in-to som hole go, uoyding his person,
Or *with* the Geant distroed shall ye be !”

But he laughs,
and asks where
the giant can be
found,

Gaffray laughed ; after demaunded he, 4674
Which on his necke bare A spere full grete,
Iff that the Geant he myght funde or gette, 4676

for he is come to
fight him.
One of the pris-
oners again warns
him to go,

With hym thought to fight, hys purpos uerily. 4677
On of thaim hym said, “ se hym shall Anon,
And I beleue ye will it sore aby

but Geoffrey tells
him not to fear,

iff he you se, for strong is of person ;
To deth will you put forsothe er ye gon.” 4681
Gaffray to hym said, “ my ryght full suete frende,
haue ye no drede but of your-selfe at end ; 4683

as he can fight
the giant alone.

A lone shall I bere the strokes And dedes, 4684
For Alone I haue take this enterprise.”

Just then the
giant came up,
and, perceiuing
Geoffrey, fled into
a chamber hastily,

yn the same moment, places, and stede
Gaffray *with* long toth the Geant gan auise,
That iuged was to deth, wel gan aduertise. 4688
he strongly ther fled As he myght goodly,
A chambre perceiued, in went rabbishly, 4690

[Fol. 90 b.]
and drew the
door after him.

THe dore after drew ; Gaffray gan it sse, 4691
After sped Apace, yrously being ;

But Geoffrey
follows, and
bursts the door
open with a kick,
and enters.

Smiting hastyli, the dore gan vp fle,
With þat stroke the dorn¹ Anon unbarring ;
Withe the sole of fote was he tho smiting. 4695
Into chambre-floure the doure made fle lightly ;
For all barred was, entred he wightly. 4697

The giant smites
Geoffrey with a
mallet, and would
have slain him,
but for his helmet.

A [s]quare maillet the Geant gan hold ; 4698
Vppon Gaffray hed ther-*with* yaf wightly.
With that stroke he was stoned manyfold ;
Ne had hys helmet² be full strong and myghty,

¹ “dore” (?).

² MS. “helyet.” Fr. text, *heulme*.

Gaffray had he slain, so caused to dy. 4702

And yut not-for-that Gaffray tombled there.

Anon releuing in wighty manere, 4704

Geoffrey falls,
but rises again,

THen hym saide Gaffray, "of the haue full fair, 4705

But Anon I shall yilde it unto the,

With my swerde the teere, not will make retrair."

Gaffray drew hys swerd, harde well ground to se,

Withe the bakke went, so harde the Geant smote he,

Gaffray his good swerd so put thorough hym tho,

Thorough the breste the crosse was it unto ; 4711

and says, "I re-
ceived then a fair
stroke, and now
I will repay it."

Drawing back he
lunges at him,
driving the sword
through him up
to the hilt.

Fro part in-to part hym perced ouer all. 4712

The Geant to grounde our-terned tho,

Which so ofte had made many men full thrall.

No-thing was he wurth, right noght myght he do,

Where cursedly had don with his maillet soo. 4716

A meruelus cry vp he cast þat stound,

All the toure souned when he fill to ground. 4718

Then fell the
giant who had
so often made
men thralls.

He cast up a
marvellous cry,
and all the tower
sounded.

THys Geant tho fall to mortal deth colde 4719

With that mighty stroke Gaffray hym yeuyng.

Gaffray drew hys swerde ther oute fro Grimold,

Into hys scaberge Again hym puttyng.

Ther ryght no lenger wold he be byding, 4723

To the prisoneres fro-thens Anon went,

And to demaunde thaim was full diligent 4725

[Fol. 91]

Then Geoffrey
drew his sword
out of Grimold,
and put it in the
scabbard.

Then he went to
the prisoners,

IF of Norbelande thei were As was told, 4726

And what maner thyng gain hym hade misdo,

And wherfor in preson he tham gan hold.

Anon on said, "for trewage was it tho

That the gret Geant yeuen had vnto ; 4730

and asked if they
came from North-
umberland, and
why they were
in prison.

They said it was
because they had
not paid the giant

the tribute they
owed him.

The which, sir, is noght yut hym paid no wyse,
Wherfor this now bide All his tirandise." 4732

"Rejoice then,"
said Geoffrey,
"for ye are struck
out of his papers,

Gaffray Answered, "ioyous And glad be, 4733
Now Full merily demene you Amonge,
For of his paupires strike oute plain be ye!

and I have ac-
quitted you of
your tribute by
killing him."

Here hym haue I slain And put to dethe stronge ;
Neuer shall he you At no day do wrong. 4737
Of trouth mortall deth haue I put hym to,
your trewage haue I now here aquitte so." 4739

Then they were
glad and asked
Geoffrey to let
them out.

When thes nouels hurde, ioiuous therof were ; 4740
Gaffray thay besought thaim deliuer oute.
He Answering said, "do shall my powere."

So Geoffrey
searched till he
found the keys,
and coming to the
200 prisoners,

Tho cerched, enquired, And went Aboute,
Till the keys Founde with-out any doute. 4744
And when he thaim had resorted Again,
Where too hundert were And mo in certain, 4746

'[Fol. 91 b.]
undid the lattice,
and gave them
leave to go.

THe lateis unshutte where-in prisoned were, 4747
Presently thaim al gaf he leue to go.
Fro-thens issued thay with gladson chere,

Geoffrey leads
them to the
chamber where
lies the giant.

That nouelles pleased and greed well to
That escape shold thys painfull prison fro. 4751
Into the chambre Gaffray tho thaim lade
To se this Geant dede and cold ther had. 4753

All wonder how
Geoffrey could
kill this monster,
of so "unfitting"
a stature.

Euery man hym blissed of Gaffray, 4754
Ther meruellyng gretly of this auenture,
Hym to haue in such herdinesse Alway
To assail such A hiduous creature
Off so wonderfull unfittyng stature, 4758
Thys gret monstre, huge, large, and cruell,
Which so meruelous was, felenous and fell. 4760

They all said
they had never
seen such a man

Euery man blissid, euery man said 4761
That neuer such a man ther dais gan se.

To thaim saing Gaffray, "hire me now pis braide,
Here now ye Barons acquitail haue by me ;
Vnto this Geant no more owe shall ye. 4765
Full moch good hath wit/in thys dongon ;
Barons, you it yeue into your bandone, 4767

in all their days.

Geoffrey tells
them they now
owe the giant
nothing,

And all that is here you it gyffe frely, 4768
Both gold and hauour here, all that his wace.
hit reioys and take, for noght haue will I ;
here you will commaunde to our lordes grace,
Take all þat here is in this tour and place. 4772
To tary or byde certes will noght here,
To labour will go in place ellyswhere ; 4774

but that they
may carry away
all the treasures
they can find,
for he would
have nothing
for himself.

Lenger will noght bide, dwelle, ne tary." 4775
"your mercy and grace," thai to hym gan say,
"So it myght you please off your courtessy,
Euery of us you beseke and pray
Wherby ye come in to say us your way, 4779
Where for the Geant non durste make entre,
That dede and recreant here lith now may see."

[Fol. 92]

They thank him
greatly,

and ask him how
he came there,
where no one
dared come for
the giant.

There Gaffray thaim declared all and told. 4782
When thay had hym hurde, on said hym vnto,
"Neuer fro this Roche issued man so bold
Excepte this Geant ligging ded here, lo !
And his cruell antecessoures also, 4786
By whom to greuous torment put we be ;
Exiled and wasted haue thai our contre, 4788

Geoffrey tells
them,

and they all say
that no man so
bold ever issued
from the rock,
except the giant
and his anteces-
sors,

Both tho gret and small haue thay had in hate ; 4789
Distroed also all that thai finde might,

who had slain 400
knights.

Foure houndred haue slain, preuyng well þis date.

Now our sorow ye haue vnto an ende dight,

They said too
that they would
accompany him
till he found his
own people.

And Als put to end the fary work ryght. 4793

With you shall retorn, going vppon way,
Till that your peple approche and fynde may."

Then they set
the giant's body
up upon a cart,

THes Barouns thaim made tho full redy 4796
To put this Geant ther a carte uppon ;

An-hy hym dressed As for to cary,

Neuer saw man to sightes uision

So gret As was this Geant enuiron, 4800

to which it was
fast bound and
attached.

Euery man blessed that hym gan se ;

Well bounde and tacked to that carte was he. 4802

[Fol. 92 b.]
Wherever they
went all men
marvelled at the
monster,

Thorough the contre went, hym caryng ; 4803
Wherouer thai rode and passid full faste.

Of this said monstre al men merueling,

Wherof the peple Abasshed and agast.

and blessed the
hour when
Geoffrey came
there.

Forsoth euery man blissed thaim in haste 4807

The hour that Gaffray ariued at þat coste,

That thaim deliuerd of this cursed goste. 4809

GAffray conueed to his peple that houre, 4810
huge honour and gold hym ther presenting ;

They would
gladly have made
Geoffrey their
king,

And full humbly gan do hym ther honour,

So As for ther lorde thai hym holding,

For passed And dede was their noble king. 4814

but he would in
no wise longer
sojourn there.

But he wold no wise lenger ther sogourn,

But to lusignen wold he tho retourn. 4816

Off ther huge honour wold he take no-thing, 4817
Retourn wold ther-thens without bode any.

Then he leapt
upon his courser,

Gaffray, which no man¹ neuer was doubtyng,

Vppon his coursere anon lepte lightly

As he which was both doubty and wurthy. 4821

¹ MS. "noman."

"Adieu," tho he said, "Adieu you commaund,
ye noble Barons present of Norbeland, 4823

and bade the
barons adieu.

TO you leue the warde of this contre." 4824

Fro-thens departed, semyng ther to longe,
With hym his peple ridyng As shold be.

Then he and his
people galloped
fast till they came
to the sea.

Ther rode A gret stour, waloping ful stronge,
Till to se cam ; A barge gan he to fonge, 4828

Desiryng to se his fader of blode,

And Melusine his gentile moder goode. 4830

There he took
ship, desiring to
see his father and
Melusine.

HE taried noght, sailled And rowed soo, 4831

That he approched Guerrand tho full ny ;

The winde was good, he strongly sailled tho,

That in litell while to port cam surely.

And when Gaffray had hauyn ueryly, 4835

Anon A-land he descended ryght,

And ther Ariued certes þat same night. 4837

[Fol. 93]
The wind was
good and he soon
came to port.

Then he disembarked and arrived at Lusignan that same night.

All the wordle anon wenten hym Again, 4838

Men, wemen, children, of ech side moste and leste ;

The Barons fested this hy souerain,

hys fader Raymounde vnto hym cam preste.

Gaffray hym salute As man moste vmbeste, 4842

Wightly Anon hym Gaffray gan embrace,

Neuer at more ease of hert he ne wace ; 4844

All the world came to meet him, and Raymond with the rest.

Geoffrey salutes him humbly, embraces and kisses him.

His uisage and mouth ther gan he to kisse. 4845

Into a chambre both thai made entre,

Wherof many thinges spake thai, I-wisse,

Many tales told ther Gaffray the fre,

And Raymounde to hym that in mynde wold be 4849

hou hys moder lost he had and lete.

With malicious wreth Gaffray gan suete ; 4851

Then they entered a chamber and talked together.

Geoffrey told his father many tales, and next he is told how he had caused the loss of his mother.

He knew it was
for his sin in
burning the abbey
of Maillezais.

Well Auised hym it was for his syne 4852
That his fader had wrethed heuily so,
By monkes he hade stroyed maillers yn ;
With flammes of fire thaim bruled and brend to,
An hundred ther were in that minstre tho. 4856
Then on the tablet hys thought & mynde gan draw,
Which in the montain of Aualon saw, 4858

Then he remem-
bers the tablet he
saw in the mount-
ain of Avalon,

[Fol. 93 b.]
upon the tomb
of king Helmas.

Then he knew
that Melusine
must be Helmas'
daughter.

Fro wurde to wurde al thoroughly in hert be¹ rad 4859
Vppon the tombe of noble king helmas.
Tho knew he Full well where melusine was hade
Doughter to the kyng which lay in þat place,
And that helmas, this noble kyng, wace 4863
Fader to Melusine his moder good ;
Where-vppon he thought long while he ther stode.

When he knew
that Raymond
had been tempted
by the earl of
Forest,

he sware an oath
that he would go
and kill him.

When he vnderstode, knowing it clerely, 4866
hou that² Raymounde his noble fader tho
By erle of foreste his brother naturally
Toward Melusine had made diffautte so,
With An hautain uois Gaffray said, wold go, 4870
(Wher-to he swere full fast his gret oth),
That shortly he wold distroy hym for soth. 4872

Away he goes
with ten chosen
knights,

who were worth
twenty others,
and the result
was this:

SO fro-thens with wreth Gaffray partid then, 4873
his fader³ his parte went right heuily,
With full wurthy noble knightes ten,
Stronge, hable, and light, men sad and myghty,
Tho ten wurth well other knightes twenty ; 4877
here you shal declare by fortune hou gan fal.
Gaffray so strongly ther rode forth with-all, 4879

¹ "he" (?). ² MS. "thai." ³ MS. "brother;" Fr. text, *pere*.

- S**O on way faste sped, so forth low and hy, 4880 they rode till they came to the castle where the earl was ;
 That he approched the erledome vnto
 Off the forest, where was this Erle wurthy,
 Which in a castell abiding¹ was tho.
 Gaffray to that parte drew hym fast to goo 4884 then Geoffrey entered that fort
 Where the Erle shold haue ill hansell anon,
 In-to thys said strenght entred his person, 4886
- W**ithin he entred vnware sodenly, 4887 [Fol. 94] suddenly and unperceiued.
 Off no creature perceiued at all.
 With full yrous wreth Gaffray meued hy,
 He salute non, ne spake to gret ne small,
 But discended doñ A-forn the gret hall, 4891 Moved with wrath he neither saluted any nor spake,
 The grees Ascended, many to accounte,
 hys uncle the Erle ther, named Fromounte,² 4893 but ascended the steps of the great hall,
- E**nmyddes his peple hym ther gan find, 4894 and found his uncle Fromont there amongst his people.
 Which were full noble And ryght gentile to,
 Wice, sage, And wele taught As any to mynde.
 Gaffray As wode man drawing his swerd tho,
 Ther crying, "traitor, thy lif lost And goo ! 4898 Drawing his sword, he declares him a traitor,
 By thy neclygens my moder haue loste !"
 Thys Erle it hurde, his blode gon almoste, 4900
- H**is mortall deth saw ; being in such fray, 4901 and terrified his uncle, who fled away in great trouble.
 Gaffray he doubted in hert that instaunce,
 Knowyng well by hym tho wurdes gan say
 Wherof Gaffray had to hert such noysaunce.
 Fro-thens he fly w^{it}h huge comeraunce. 4905
 Neuer-for-neuer stode he in such drede,
 The tour entred, the dore founde ope in dede, Never had he been so frightened ; he entered the tower
- T**He grees Ascended ryght so As he myght ; 4908 and ascended the steps.
 But so gan noght do As his hert tho wold ; But Geoffrey hastened after him,
 For After hasted Gaffray As man wight,

¹ MS. "obiding."

² In the margin—*geffre kyld hys v[nkull] erle of foreste.*

pursuing him so
fast that the earl
had to flee alone;

Which pursued hym, chausing to that hold,
Strongly hym sewed And sharply manyfold, 4912
Openly after other gan to fle ;
With hym had the Erle non of hys mayne 4914

[Fol. 94 b.]
for all ran down
the steps as if
they were mad ;

As man that so was gentile ne so goode 4915
Which *with* hym fro-thens in no wyse wold go ;
The grees descended, fered as were woode,
Eche hym-selfe to saue in best wise coud tho,
Ther liffes to saue Gaffray criing vnto. 4919
For fere of taking full faste thay fle,
Thay sore doubted lest taking shold be. 4921

being greatly
afraid of being
caught.

Gaffray fly After thys Erle hastily, 4922
Sweryng that he shold dy ther *with* gret shame.
The Erle Ascended into this tour quickly,
As sone As he myght to hiest stage came.
Gaffray swere his oth, for linage ne fame, 4926
Wold spare hym to slay, lif take fro his gost,
Syn his moder good by hym so hath loste. 4928

In extreme terror
the earl leapt up
to a window and,

For drede the Erle swatte And sore trembled tho
When that he saw, brefly vnto say,
That by no men[e] myght ferther passe ne go.

missing his foot-
ing, fell on his
head upon the
rock.

At A fenestre lepte in that affray
Vppon the hedde, failling foote that day ; 4933
Fro that place glint þat full hy tho was,
Don vppon the Roch A fall gan purchas. 4935

Thus this earl of
Forest died by his
own folly,

In that point was he mis[c]heuosly dede 4936
With dolorous wo And full heuy shame,
Thys Erle of foreste in said place and stede.
Alas ! by hys owne gret folay it came,

hys peple¹ hauyng hug sorow and grame. 4940 and Geoffrey
The body Gaffray made vnto entere ; caused his body
After do made cryes in ech stede awliere, 4942 to be buried,

As vnto the Erle befor had thay do, 4943 [Fol. 95]
To Raymounde his brother in like wise homage, and proclaimed
All enheritors of the contre tho. his own brother
Raymond the
lord of Forest. |

And As thaim had said Gaffray the sage,
Euery accorded vnto his langage. 4947
Ther Gaffray wold noght lenger to sogourn,
To-ward lusignen faste gan he retourn, 4949 This done, he
returned to Lu-
signan,

In shorte and bref tyme parted fro that place. 4950
Vnto lusignen entred, fast ridyng,
Where his gud fader tho dolorous was,
Which full heuily was ther waymenting
For that noght unknow, (full sor lamenting), 4954
How hys brother distroyed was þat day ;
Raymound said, " of it gret dolour haue may,

An my wife haue lost, exile my contre, 4957 "All is due to my
By my cruell sin And my wicked vice ; sin and vice ;
Iesu crist, my soull warde and kepe to the,
Fro² thys worle me will put by good auice,
Neuer seke no-thing to conquere franchise. 4961
To confesse my syn wandre shall and goo,
With good hert shall say the hole Postell to 4963
Rome,

Off Rome, that lyon men do name and call, 4964 whom men call
After, so god will, chese shall my dwellyng, Leo.
Recluse and shit vp in strange contre shall,
In which stede will not be know for no thyng.
In that place shall I my life be using 4968
In deuoute prayers And in orison,
All vnto acquire my sauacion." 4970
and spend my life
in prayer."

¹ MS. "pepll."

² MS. "For."

[Fol. 95 b.]
Geoffrey, alight-
ing from horse-
back, tarried not
at the dismount-
ing stone,

but sought his
father and craved
his pardon,

Ryght As Raymounde hym sore complainyd, [lo !]
In plaintes, wepinges, he bathed was ;
And when that Gaffray was descendid tho,
At the perron longe bode not in þat place,
At castell finding hys fader by grace. 4975
But hys moder noght founde, ne saw *with* ey,
Wherefor to hys fader cried mercy, 4977

bitterly repenting
his wickedness.

"It needs not,"
said Raymond,
"to mourn
longer :
you cannot bring
your mother back
again,

With hert sore contrite therof repenting 4978
Off that he had don so moche wickednesse.
On knees mercy ther hym faste crying,
Raymounde sore wepte *with* eyes bitternesse :
"Hyt nedith noght," said, "more haue pensifnesse,
I know well that ye by no mene this day
your moder recouer certes ye ne may. 4984

nor can I restore
the dead to life.

You must rebuild
the abbey which
you burnt in your
folly."

I can noght," he said, "werke ne labour soo 4985
As tho mortall ded ther lif to surrend.
The Abbay and mynstre fourge and make most, lo !
Which fair place ye haue distroid and shend.
An hundred monkes *with*-in also brend 4989
By your meruelous And wondre corage,
As by your folay and full gret outrage." 4991

Geoffrey promises
to do so.

Raymond says,
"It should be
built up so as
to be fairer than
before ;

Gaffray Answerd, "sire, I shall it doo 4992
Within ryght bref tyme, so our lord please may."
Then Raymound hym hild in hert content tho ;
"More fairer shall be then Afor was ay ;"
Raymound hym said, "appere will it alway 4996
That which ye will do men full well shall se,
Perceyued to ey, knowen well will bee. 4998

[Fol. 96]
but I must leave
you now,

HHere will you leue, to good ende come may. 4999
A litell way me moste go in pilgrimage,

Which promysed haue god afor this day,
 Put ther-to haue both hert, wyll, and corage,
 My contre you shall leue, warde it as the sage ; 5003
 Non other will I of it haue the garde.
 your yongest broder wyll loke þat ye warde, 5005

for I go on a pilgrimage.
 You shall guard the country and take care of your youngest brother.

P Artenay hym gif with thes castelles echon 5006
 Off vavuent, Ayglon, And also Meruent,
 He thaim to hold in hys subieccion
 In pees without contradiccion hent ;
 Anon to Rochel¹ my wife wold so went. 5010
 For gretly of hym she gan speke and say,
 That contre he shold iustice alway. 5012

and all the country as far as Rochelle ;
 for so Melusine gave direction."

I Hym make my proper enheritour, 5013
 For yut shall he be wurthy terrenly."
 Gaffray Answered, "I grant to will your,
 Always your plesur shall I do surely,
 Full well shall I warde my brother Thierry ; 5017
 In that doubte ye noght, in no maner point,
 Sin ye me commaunde, gree to such a ioynt." 5019

Geoffrey promises to do so,
 and tells his father he need not fear its not being done.

R Aymounde his ui[a]ge Full faste made redy, 5020
 When he redy was, taried ne reste ;
 Of uitail and wyn toke sufficiently,²
 Al hys peple commaunded to god prest.
 At the departson sughed sore in breste. 5024
 Hys leue gan he take with amyable loue fine,
 Towarde Rome hys way hild he streight As lyne.

Raymond, all being made ready for his journey, sets off.
 He takes leave of his people and goes to Rome.

G Affray and Thierry suetly on the way 5027
 long space and tyme thare fader conueing ;
 In ther forth-progresse told and said Gaffray,
 hou that good helmas the full noble kyng

[Fol. 96 b.]
 Geoffrey and Thierry go with their father ;
 and, on the road, Geoffrey relates

¹ MS. "Rachel."

² MS. "sufficiently."

how he found
good king Helmas
within the rock,

Within the Roch founde, wher non durst be commyng
Enlesse he were strong, wurthly, wyse, and sage,
And that issued oute of hys linage ; 5033

and how he had
seen Helmas'
tomb,

and Presine's
image in ala-
baster,

and the tablet
which her hand
held.

TOlde where the tombe was pight and sette truly
Vppon thes riche and gret pilours of gold ;
Of presine told he also verly,
Hou she portraed was in being, told ;
At foote of helmas tombe hir figure vnfold 5038
Of Alebastre compassed and made ;
And of the tablet that she hild and had ; 5040

Raymond rejoiced
to hear Melusine
was of such high
descent,
and seemed in
his joy a foot
taller.

Afterwards Geof-
frey tells about
Presine's gifts

ANd then all that hurde Aboue haue ye. 5041
Raymounde reioyed hys wife doughter was
Off syre helmas, king which Gaffray gan se,
And of presine, the courtois, full of grace ;
For gladnes A foote¹ in hithe gan purchase. 5045
After declaryng went by witty engine
All the gyftes that ther gaf presine 5047

to Melior, Melu-
sine, and Palatine,

and how Presine
loved Helmas
dearly.

Raymond again
rejoices.

Unto Melior and to Melusine, 5048
And to palatine, wemen of fayree ;²
And, As men Affermeth by scripture fine,
That Aboue all helmas loud hyly
Presine, aboue wrote verray perfectly. 5052
When that Gaffray had All thes thynges said,
Raymounde hertly glade reioyng that braide, 5054

[Fol. 97]
Thus his two
sons brought him
on his way,

and bring him
at night to his
lodging.

That Gaffray gan hire voluntarily. 5055
After thes sones too hym conueyng,
With hym vppon way went full merily.
At nyght when thai cam vnto ther logging,
Hys sones of hym the morn leue taking, 5059

¹ MS. "Afoote."

² MS. "fayrer."

To-geders kissed at the parting leue,
And so the mornynge departed in breue. 5061

Next morn they
take their leave,

RAymounde ther Fader sped hym on hys way ; 5062
Ther no creature but watry teeres shad ;

and there was
great weeping on
both sides.

The Fader wepte, the sones Als that day,
Euery of thaim in misery had,

Raymound thens went ; Gaffray Terry with hym
lad, 5066

Then Geoffrey
and Thierry went
back ;

Thay retorned to Approche ther home,
And the Fader went streight forth vnto Rome.

and Raymond
went on to Rome.

Ryght thys departed ther wais thes thre, 5069
Ther-thens to lusignen went Gaffray.¹

To partenay went Terry that contre,

Geoffrey went to
Lusignan,
and Thierry to
Partenay.
A description of
Thierry.

yonge, lusty, ioly, inly fresh And gay,
Hardy, myghty, fers, entrepreignant ay, 5073

To ladies swete was amyable,
huge of body, wel formed As man able. 5075

MAny were ther noght with hym to compare, 5076
For he was An in beuteuous fair knyght ;

The good quali-
ties of Thierry
are here enumer-
ated.

Strong, myghty, wourthy, And light to declare,

And off All peple douted was he ryght ;
Neuer put A-bake, manly was of myght ; 5080

A notable man was he of corage,
A good werriour, subtile, wise, And sage. 5082

Doubted of all, wher by² fors, were, or wit, 5083
Euery man obbeid hym lowly

[Fol. 97 b.]

In all hys marches, where wrong or ryght were it.

In noble Bretain gan he to mary,³
Affyed and sured to A gret lady, 5087

Thierry married
a lady of high
degree, who came
from Britain,
and who was very
wealthy.

Which discended was of ryght hy lynage,
And als she hauyng full huge heritage. 5089

¹ In the margin—*geffrey lord of lusygnen & terry lord of [partenay.]*

² MS. "wherby."

³ In the margin—*terre maryd a lady of bretayn.*

From Thierry
descended the
line of Parthenay,

a line which is
still distinguished
for virtue,

Terry seignoried A full large contre, 5090
Hattyd of no man ; of hym gan issew
Of pertenay the lyne of verite,
As in this history doth to ensew,
Which hyly regneth yut in huge vertew ; 5094
God wold such heires of tham shold come
That the line noght fail to the day of dome ! 5096

according to
Melusine's pre-
diction.

Ryght As declared And sayd Melusine 5097
That the said line shold haue long endurance,
And that thay shold do good dedes and fine ;
And so haue thay done wel to remembraunce
In many placis, wherof reste I this instaunce ; 5101
Ouer long wold be to declare and tell,
Ther wurthy dedes vnto say or spell. 5103

It were tedious
to relate all their
great deeds.

Geoffrey sent
everywhere for
masons,

Gaffray tho made Aboute for to sende, 5104
Masons of iche sid come *with*-out delay ;
He rought noght what theron shold dispend,
For in thought wold restore the Abbay
Off Maillers, that was brend *þat* oder day. 5108
Off euery part masons ther comyng,
Ther wages well paid, content *þaim* holdyng. 5110

who rebuilt the
abbey of Mail-
lezais which he
had burnt.

[Fol. 98]
It was rebuilt
so as to be fairer
than before :

so that men mar-
velled, and said
that Geoffrey had
become a monk
after all !

Fourged and made was in A somer tide 5111
More fairer then euer it was before,
Off whom men speken, talking large and wide,
Hym ofte mocking And saing euermore,
“Gaffrey is become A monke for all hys lore, 5115
Neuer trowed man for to se that houre
A wolfe to become An herdly pastour !” 5117

I return to Ray-
mond,
who confessed
all his sins

Ileue shall Gaffray ; of hys fader say, 5118
Which to Rome to the holy fader came
Hys confession to declare alway ;

In conclusion spared for no shame,		in full to the pope,
Neuer no-thyng hid, but all gan proclame.	5122	
The holy fader wondred on that he told,		who wondered at
Off tho merueles that ther gan vnfold. ¹	5124	the strange things he told him,

W herefor shold I hold long tale this instaunce?	5125	
For his synnes gaff penaunce full sharpely.		and appointed
Raymound ther it toke to right gret plesaunce,		Raymond a
Promittynge he wold do it full gladly		penance,
Or he entre wold in peyters suerly.	5129	which he pro-
To hys holy fader said <i>with</i> all his hert,		mised to perform
And that thens wold go in-to som desert,	5131	before returning to Poltiers.

S O in wild exile all hys lif using	5132	He undertakes
For fair Melusine his loue, wife, and spouse,		to live a hermit's
In many somers And winters being,		life for Melusine's
Which that he hath lost by dedes shameuous,		sake,
And serpent become wondre hiduous :	5136	
Sayng, neuer wold hir put in oblyuy		saying that he
Ne in that contre neuer entre surely,	5138	would never forget her,

N euer-For-neuer in hys life no day,	5139	[Fol. 98 b.]
Where hys suete loue loste by hys owne speche ;		nor return to the
Which in oblyuy <i>with</i> hym be ne may.		place where he
This holy fader gan pray and beseche		lost her.
That of his illes he wold be hys leche.	5143	He craves the
The pope, that time named and called lyon,		pope's pardon ;
Said to hym, " where is your deuocion	5145	and Pope Leo,
		accordingly,

F Or to go and do ioyned pennaunce?"	5146	asks him where
Raymound Answered as man deboner,		he thinks of
" At Montfarrant bide is my hole plesaunce,		going to.
Ther become hermite <i>with</i> -out any retrayr,		Raymond
To goddis honour And seruice repair.	5150	answers, " To Montserratt in Arragon,

¹ MS. "vnfold."

where there is fair
sojourning."

For elleswhere can I noght me hold,
Full fair sogernyng ther is, me is tolde. 5152

Leo bids him go;

There is A deuoute solitary place." 5153

"Go¹ where plese may our sacred lord an-hy,
'That your sauacion ye may purchase,"

This lion the pope said to hym suetly.

and Raymound
sets off,
soon coming to
Toulouse,

In bref terme Raymound parted thens truly, 5157

So strongly he rode, passyng forth the way,

That within Thoulouse cam without delay. 5159

where he bids
adieu to his men,

Full moche peple Again hym tho went; 5160

He ther yeuyng leue to hys mayne plain,

Ech satedief *with* goodes sufficient;

sending them all
home except a
yeoman and a
chaplain.

With hym A prest had, An honest chapelain,

A yeman also for hys owne demain. 5164

More had ne toke at that entreuall,

Ther unto our lord commaunded hys men all;²

[Fol. 99]
Next he has her-
mit's robes made,
and goes to
Arragon, and so
becomes a hermit
at Montserrat.

Hermites Robes full faste lete doo make, 5167

In Arrygon toke hys logge and repair.

At the Mont-sarrat manson gan to take,

yilding hym hermyte As man debonair,

God to serue *with* orisons and³ praiers fair; 5171

Properly to take for hys heritage

his byding in this wild montain sauage. 5173

His yeoman and
chaplain lived
with him there,

With hym hys yeman And full noble prest 5174

In this hermitage toke habitacion,

With full greabill hertis in ther breste,

and thus Ray-
mond forsook
the world,

Ther being in sore huge affliccion

long time and space *with* good deuocyoon. 5178

¹ MS. "So." Fr. text, *Alez y donc*.

² At the bottom of the page is the catchword—"Hermites Robes full."

³ MS. "and and."

The worle all forsoke at that houred stound,
And full deuoutly liued ther Raymound 5180

and liued there
deuoutly

Till ende approched, to mortall deth went. 5181

till his death.

But dais thre aforñ full well perceuyng
Aboute lusignen to vew the serpent,

Three days before
his death, the
serpent was seen
going round
Lusignan;

Where lande and rent Aforñ was renonsing ;
Whom moch peple ofte haue be seing ; 5185

so that more than
twenty, who
had well heard
Melusine say

To knowliche nombred mo then twenty
That of Melusine will hurde say truly— 5187

The time and ceason departing thaim fro— 5188

that she would
thus appear,

That when the castell change ther lordes shold,
Aforne wold she appere to sight, lo !

Thre days aboute thys said castell wold

Off fair lusignen, full beuteuous hold. 5192

Wherefor many sain in ther willd reuell,

know that they
are soon to haue
a new lord.

“ After appArens, shall haue A lord nouell.” 5194

Gaffray tho lorde of this said castell, 5195

[Fol. 99 b.]
Geoffrey was then
lord of the castle,
and held it in
peace.

Which so fair was, and lord of contre ;

That hy honour and seignory full well

Pesibilly in pece it hold gan he.

Tho fro Thoulouse made baronage & mayne 5199

Then came to
him the barons
whom Raymond
had dismissed,

That Raymound *with hym* lad when to Rome
went ;

Excepte yeman and preste all home he sent. 5201

Thai vnto Gaffray declared and told, 5202

and told him how
his father was
now a hermit
and had sent
them home.

The trouth and verite said thay outerly,

hou his fader an hermite was and hold,

And hou fro tham departed wilfully,

And hou his goodes parted gentilly.

5206

Geoffrey sends
for his brother,
and, leaving
Lusignan in his
charge,

Gaffray vnderstode, hys brother after send,

All contre to hym gan he recommend. 5208

- departs for Rome, **F**Ro-thens departed, with hym peple few, 5209
 Gaffray the corteis, gentile and connyng.¹
 lenger wold not bide, toke hys leue by rew,
 to accomplish all he had to do. hasted to complesh his dedes doing.
 Mistre ne nede non more be declaryng, 5213
 But to tary time and long wold it be
 It were long to tell all. Euery thyng to put in hys certainte. 5215
- He confessed to the pope, **U**nto the pope cam, And hym gan confesse 5216
 With gret repentaunce full deuoutly ;
 Off his synny cr[i]me lefte² not more ne lesse,
 and was very penitent for the wickedness he had done in his youth. Full dolerus was and repentant truly
 Off his wickednesse doñ consentyngly, 5220
 And þat he had doñ in his youthnesse soo,
 With sore hert contrite all confessed thoo 5222
- [Fol. 100] **P**roperly all that in conscience finde myght. 5223
 The pope assoiled him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais, The pope asso[i]led hym ther benyngly,
 When declared hade hys dedes vnperfight. To fourge the abbey charged hym gretly
 Off Maillers without taryng any, 5227
 and fill it with monks to the number of 120, Such pennaunce charged hym his synnes fore,
 With monkes it stuffe, montance of sex score ;
- and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine. **W**ith rentes endowing to haue brede and wyne, 5230
 That lacke and faill non winter ne somer tide
 To wat necessite or nede to incline.
 Again the abbay to forge loke prouide,
 That distroed haue And disherite wide. 5234
 Geoffrey promises to do this, Gaffray answerd, "sir, I shall do all,
 The minstre and churche appareill shall 5236
- and says it is begun already. **B**etter than euer Appered to eye ; 5237
 For sothe she hath A good commencement."

¹ MS. "comyng."² MS. "lefte." Fr. text, *laisse*.

- “yut the churche ye haue stroed wickedly ;
 Agan it to make ye moste be deligent.”
- “Sir, carpenters, masons, yiftes shall hent, 5241
 Ther state shall remitte to our lordes grace ;
 More fairer shall be then euer it wace.” 5243
- “**T**Hys reson,” said the holy fader at ende, 5244
 “For your brother soule ye be in danger
 That ye crusedly¹ bruled so and brende
 When thys mynstre and schurch destroyed there.
 And yf ye of your fader luste enquire, 5248
 At mont-sarrat finde shall þat man of fame,
 Which noht long Agoñ toward vs he came, 5250
- H**ermite is become, holy lif leding.” 5251 [Fol. 100 b.]
 Gaffray vnderstode, with eyes wepte sore ;
 Off pope² leue toke, to monte-sarrat going,
 Strongly rode apace besily euermore,
 Till the regiat way founde hym before, 5255
 But Anon As he app[r]oched the montain,
 Vp went he an-hy, finding Raymound plain, 5257
- H**is blissed fayder which hurde hym Anon. 5258
 When hys sone he saw, gretly reioying.
 After Raymounde wold haue departson,
 But gaffray no wise wold be deperting,
 But said, ther wold bide the worle enduryng, 5262
 And that go wold quite fro the heritage
 And fro Ail hys baron[e]s homage. 5264
- G**affray was ther foure or fiffe dais tho, 5265
 hys fader myght noht hym do torn no wise,
 But ther wold dwell hys life vsing also ;

The pope again
charges him,

and he promises
to obey.

The pope tells
him he is in
danger for his
brother's soul,
because he burnt
him ;

and that he would
find his father at
Montserrat.

Geoffrey sets off
for Montserrat,
and soon finds
the highway to it.
He then ascends
the mountain,
and finds Ray-
mond.

Raymond is glad
to see him,
but bids him go
home again.

Geoffrey refuses
to return,

and insists on
staying four or
five days ;

¹ Sic in MS. ² This word is intentionally struck through.

but at last con-
sents to return,
and takes leave
of his father.

But when hys fader will gan aduertise,¹
Thens to lusignen drew by good auise 5269
When of fader had leue take full lowly,
Ne lenger sogern ther wold noght truly. 5271

Returning to
Lusignan he
calls his barons
together,

When of lusignen the faire Cite hent, 5272
After the Barons send he full wyghtly,
Which cam Anon at hys commaundement.

who humbly do
him homage
as their lord.

As sone As thay thes wurdes hurde truly,
homage gan thay do to hym full humbly, 5276
holdyng hym ther lord moste souerain *pat* houre
To full huge ioy and ryght grett honour. 5278

[Fol. 101]
He then rebuilds
the abbey he
destroyed,
and establishes
there 120 monks,

Then Maillers f[o]rged and made new again, 5279
The said Abbay,² beforn gan vndo.

endowing the
abbey richly,

Ther sex score monkes astabled certain,
Ernobling the place ryght wonderly tho,
huge lande and rychesse endowing therto ; 5283
Wher night and day monkes pray for *his* lord,
For Melusine and Raymound of recorde. 5285

and making rich
grants to it.

Thay haue of ryght full grett encheson, 5286
He mortesting goodes fuson and plente.

In course of
time he visited
Raymond ;

Within prossesse uisete hys fader anon,
And gentilly hym quite at *pat* assemble.
Raymounde leuyng longe ; when to ende nyhed he,
That the soule moste yelde being spirituall,
(As well lordes gret as tho being small), 5292

for, when the
time of Ray-
mond's death
drew near,

Geoffrey remained
at home no longer,

Raymounde to our lorde his soule ther yilding, 5293
Gaffray no lenger tary wolde ne bide.
For when hys fader dede was ther saing,

¹ MS. "aduerfite."

² MS. "Ablay."

- Vnto mont-sarrat made progresse þat tide,
hys fadres sepulture for to prouyde ; 5297 but came to the
Entered in Abbay of the monte-Serrat, abbey of Mont-
That place augmented passingly þat dat, 5299 serrat to provide
for his father's
burial,
- And rentid gretly to the house encesse. 5300 and made grants
he was he, (you say verray certainly), to that abbey also.
That euer ther was moste chef of goodnesse ;
hit is thing þat man may know full lyghtly ;
Ryght well his deuor Gaffray gan do surely. 5304 Geoffrey did his
That doñ, retorned the mont-Serrat fro, duty at Mont-
le[n]ger wold noght bide, to lusingen went tho. serrat, and then
Lusingan.
- Terry was notable And a full good knight, 5307 [Fol. 101 b.]
A wurthy man, A iusticere full grett, Thierry reigned
And regned after pusantly of myght. at Partenay long
And regned after pusantly of myght. and justly, and
did fair deeds.
- At partenay long huge wurship gett,
Fair dedes gan doo in his time full sett, 5311
In pees hys contre haldyng full manly,
Non durste hys heste breke, but to hym apply. None duret break
his hests, but
obeyed him.
- Oedes regned in the marches tho ; 5314 Oedes (Eudes)
Sagilly hym ruled to intelligens ; reigned sagely in
the marches.
In hys tyme full grett goodnesse gan he doo.
In Cipres regned noble vriens,
The Sarisins werred by huge uiolens, 5318 Uriens reigned
in Cyprus,
and warred
against the
Saracens his
neighbours.
- (Ny neybouris were) put thaim to distruccion,
And off thaim made full gret occision. 5320
Gvy regned and was king of hermeny ; 5321 Guy was king
of Armenia.
Full nobly ther lade both lande and contre ;
hys hoires makyng werre times many
Vppon Sarrisins which misbeleued be
Vntill þat thay were recreant to see. 5325 His heirs warred
against the
Saracens, who
sorely dreaded
them.
- Ther had no sarisin but full sore þam drad,¹
So them chastising ther will noght ne had. 5327

¹ MS. "draw."

Raynold was king
of Brehaigne
(Bohemia).

His heirs reigned
after him.

Anthony was
duke of Luxemburg,

[Fol. 102]
and his heirs did
fair deeds.

Raymond was
earl of Forest,
and was much
beloved.

Thus all these
brethren bare
them well,
and prospered ;

all except
Horrible, who had
been smothered,
and Fromont,
who had been
burnt.

All these were
descended from
Raymond, and
bare his arms.

To this day the
Cyprians use
"Lusignan" as
a war-cry.

The earl of Pembroke in England
was also of this
line ;

And Raynold also, off BrehAigne kyng, 5328
hys leuyng regned ryght full pusantly.

After hys hoires semblably werkyng,
Regnyng after hym As men full myghty,
And welle ther contre gouerned dayly. 5332

Anthony, the Duke of lusembrough tho,
Many townes toke And Bourghes also ; 5334

And tho which of tham discended liniall 5335
In ther tyme full fair dedes gan to do,
As well tho grette As tho litell and small.

Raymound full cherisly was hold also,
The full nobill Erle of the Foreste tho. 5339

Thes moche conquered of sondry regyons,
And thay were of gret possessyons. 5341

Off thes brethren after ther hoires were 5342
In many places of grett wurthinesse,
And all thes bretherin full well gan tham bere,

Huge contre conqueryng by ther myghtinesse,
Excepte horrible, distroed was expresse, 5346

And Fromont which brennyng gan purchas,
Which welle wold haue do, but distroed was. 5348

Off Raymounde issued All tho Aboue¹ saide ; 5349
Ther issue cries make, and ther armes bere ;
And yut the Cipriens at ech houred braid

Alwais crying "lusignen !" awhere,
And will whiles the worle will endure here. 5353

They were good knyghtes, waillant & worthy,
Entrepreignant and assaillyng many. 5355

The full noble Erle of thaim gan discend, 5356
Off panebourght in Englande enheritour,
Which gret contre and lande hym sende.

¹ MS. "Aboute."

In Arrigon, tho of cambrere honour¹

Off the firste line were discended that houre, 5360

And thay cam and issued verlyly ;

Off helmas hoires off Albany 5362

as also the lords
of Cambron (?) in
Arragon.

Issued thys line, Melusine tham bare. 5363

Fromount ther brother at mallers brend was,

And ther beried, the trouth to declare.

Gaffray the gentill lith in that place

In a tombe of stone portraed the space. 5367

Off noble Gaffray reste me now here shall,

And say of hermynè the kynge roiall. 5369

[Fol. 102 b.]

But Fromont was
buried at Mail-
lezais,

where also lies
Geoffrey under a
stone tomb.

Here ends this
part of the ro-
mance.

A Fair castell is hade in hermynè, 5370

Which tho off Fairy both fourged & made.

In hermeny the gret is it uerily,

As in this history told is and hade.

The Sperhauke castell named is and rad, 5374

Where it behouith to wacche nightes thre

Without Any sompnolent slepe to be. 5376

where knights
had to keep awake
three nights,

And ho accomplesh in þat place it may, 5377

A yifte may demaunde and it haue he shall

Such As hym luste to demaunde all-way,

So demaunde noght hir body corporall

Which dwellith within, thys lady roiall. 5381

Auise hym ryght wele hir no wise desire,

For it Aualith noght hyr for to require. 5383

and whoever did
so might ask a
boon of the lady
Melior,

provided that he
did not ask for
her love.

And in sompnolence be founde thyng any; 5384

Ther finabilly For euer ther shall dwell,

With thys fair lady ther fortake uerily,

Which gret loos and prys hath she soth to tell ;

That Melior was called fair and welle, 5388

Doughter to Presine of the fairy lande,

As thys hystory doth vs vnderstande. 5390

If the watcher
went to sleep,
he became her
prisoner there
for ever.

Melior was the
lady's name,
daughter of Pre-
sine.

¹ In the margin—*erle of penbrok.*

[Fol. 103]
There was then
a mighty king in
Armenia, a fair
knight,

IN hermeny hade tho a mighty king, 5391
A fair knight, long, streight, lusty of colour,
With tendre youth was he hote being,
And als was of full worshipfull ualour.
he said wacche wold he nightes thre or foure 5395
At the myghty hold of Sperhauke castell,
For men had hym told off this strenght nouell.

intending after-
wards to demand
a boon.

So he did, but
afterwards re-
pent of his
rashness.

He therefore
departed,

And As for to wake ther behouyd he 5398
Which the yiff[t]¹ conquere of uarray fors shold,
Ther he said A wold wacche full nightes thre
And after A yifte ther demaunde he wold ;
So gane² he do, repenting his hert bold. 5402
Anon mad his way Full prest and redy,
Fro-thens departed *with-out* rest Any, 5404

declaring that if
he found the lady
Mellor fair, he
would ask for no-
thing but *herself*.

Such was his
foolish resolve.

S Aing that he wold unto thys wacche goo, 5405
That notable yifte conquere if he myght.
So if thys lady saw plesaunt, fair hym to,
Non other yift wold desire hym to dyght.
But for noght hys thought, folay was it ryght, 5409
For thys lady haue myght not thys man fell
For spouse ne for loue ; what nedith more to tell ?

Thus came he
thither on St.
John's day,

and having re-
membered to
bring his tent,
pitched it there
in the meadow.

IN hert this knight risen so hasted and rood ; 5412
When ny approached and to sperhauke came
In seint Iohn his night, taried ne boode,
To body therof had grett ioy and game.
In obliuy noght hys pailon of fame ; 5416
Pight And streight was it in the medew tho.
Armyly parted all hys peple fro 5418

[Fol. 103 b.]
Then came he to
the castle-gate,

Thys corteys, gentile, and thys noble knight, 5419
The porte and gate cam [to] of this castell,

¹ Fr. text, *le don*. ² MS. "gain," altered to "gane."

- In hys hand halding A pece of flesh dight,
Wherwith the sperhauke thought to feed full wele.
In this castell saw on go, soth to tell, 5423
A man clothed white, semyng of visage
That he was to sight full ferre ron in age; 5425
- holding a piece of
flesh to feed the
sparrow-hawk.
- There saw he an
old man, clothed
in white,
- Ther hym demaunding wat thyng þat he sought. 5426
he hym Answered, "thys here demaunde I,
The coustome of this noble place wrought."
he said, "come ye, of goddes part an-hy!
In the way of it then shall you put surely 5430
Where ye shall finde this solain auenture,
Full strang vnto sight of ech creature." 5432
- who asked him
what he sought,
- and next offered
to show him the
way.
- Thys good man before, after went this king, 5433
Ascending vp hy ther the greës all,
Fro the hall went more hyer in going.
Full moch merueled thys hy kyng roiall
Off the grete richesse apperyng in hall, 5437
And of the noblesse that in stedes founde,
Gretly commaundid the sightes þat stound. 5439
- The king marvel-
led much at the
wealth he saw
there,
- The Sperhauke at perche to sight displaid, 5440
Which beuteuous, fair, huge, and gentile was.
Thys full wurthy man Aforne ther hym said,
"kyng, vnderstand me here a litel space,
Without slepe ye most here wak in this place 5444
Thys sperhauke thre days & nyghtes thre;
And ye mow noght, Alway here byde moste ye.
- and perceived the
sparrow-hawk on
his perch.
- Then said the old
man, "King, you
must here watch
this sparrow-
hawk for three
days and nights.
- If that terme ye wake and þat ye slepe noght, 5447
What-so ye demaunde, of trouth haue shal ye,
Off erthly thinges but not celest wrought,
Excepte the body of thys lady fre;
- [Fol. 104]
If you succeed,
you may ask a
boon, demanding
any earthly thing
save lady Melior's
body."

The king said he
would watch,

For gold ne siluer hir haue may not be." 5451
The king said, "wold wake without sompnolence,
To fede thys sperhauke do my deligence." 5453

but he took ill
counsel with him-
self.

Then the old man
departed.

The kyng toke to wake, And said auise wold 5454
What gift wold demaunde After nightes thre.
Ill concell he toke, such yift demaund shold,
Whereof il Guerdon therof haue shal he.
Thys good man parted, the king bood Iupardè, 5458
Wher tho his behold put ententifly
To the riche noblesse that he saw *with* ey. 5460

The king watched
all that day and
that night, feed-
ing the sparrow-
hawk.

Seeing also
plenty of food
and wine,

That day waked he And also the night, 5461
In gentile disporte to hertys plesaunce.
He ther slepte no slepe, manly waked ryght,
The sperhauke sagely fede by gouernaunce,
A repaste hym yaf wel to conysaunce. 5465
Off vitail and wines saw he gret fusion,
Which tho was had in this garnyson. 5467

he took a repast
of what pleased
him.

Next day, he
again watched all
day and all night;
and the third
morning again
fed the bird.
Seeing a door
open,

His refection gan resceiue and take 5468
Ther of hy and bas at his owne deuise.
The morne, all day full well gan to wake
And all night; the morn fed þe hauke in best wyse,
Hyt pleased and gladded¹ hertes franchise. 5472
A dore saw open all behinde hys bake,
Pertly entred in; of nobles ther no lacke. 5474

[Fol. 104 b.]
he entered an-
other chamber,
which was full of
birds, painted in
vermillion.

HE neuer before saw so huge richesse, 5475
Wherin vnto sight briddes were many,
Whi[c]h uermaill² colour peynted were expresse;
The chambir peynted, portraed³ freshly
About the walles with fine gold to ey; 5479

¹ MS. "gladdes."

² MS. "mermaill." Fr. text, *vermeillon*.

³ MS. "portared."

- Figured knightis were enuirones,
With ther Armes peynted as thai shold be 5481
- The portraits
were there of
many knights,
- To that resembling thes figures were. 5482
- T** Vnder ther names wrete *with* letters blake,
Where the scripture said right in thys manere ;
In such A yere such on here gan to wake,
But he slepte and in sompnolence was take ; 5486
here of-fors he moste byding take and dwell
As vs to honour and for to serue well ; 5488
- and under each
was written the
name of each,

with the date of
his undertaking
the adventure,
and how he failed,
- W**here-hens thay shall noght depart verly 5489
Fro¹ thys vnto the day of Iugement.
Thre places ther were appering to ey
In thys chambre, had full conuenient,
(Wherto euery man myght his sight hent), 5493
A certain Armes, And such A scripture
Vnder writen was fresly, be ye sure, 5495
- and had to remain
there till the day
of Judgment.

There were also
three places where
were seen three
coats-of-arms,
- W**here this scripture said full meruelously, 5496
(In thys castell here wrete *with* letters blake),
In such yere such on, the which his god hy
Caused and made well plainly for to wake 5499
Our noble Sperhauke without sompnolence take ;
Hys gift therfor had by full gret prudence,
And by hys good notable diligence. 5502
- and beneath each
was written the
date when each
of the knights under-
took the adventure
and succeeded.
- A**lso thys chambre well depeynted was 5503
Fro foote of wallure the ouise vnto,
Which deuided² nacions hy and bas .
And thes estrange regions all[-so].
Full uallant and wurthy were thys men tho, 5507
Which noght ne went to sompnolent sleping,
But myghtyly And pusantly were waking, 5509
- [Fol. 105]
The walls of the
chamber were
painted from top
to bottom.

These three
knights were
uallant, and did
not go to sleep.

¹ MS. "For."

² A mis-translation ; see Note.

- A**nd the giftes all therof bare Away. 5510
The king mused on these things till he almost slept;
 Thys king in musen ther was full strongly
 In the noblesse of this castell alway,
 That almost he slepte, but not A-slepe fully,
 For Alway waked he full besily. 5514
then fearing lest he should do so, retreated.
 Ther vnto deuise Anon toke the use
 hou he myght well ouermoch to muse; 5516
- T**her-thens departed he full opynly. 5517
The third night he also watched; and on the fourth morn came the lady, clothed all in green.
 That night worthily wacched hys person.
 To hym amorn Appered full erly
 Thys lady clothed *with* grene enuiron,
With lusty fresh colour after the ceason; 5521
 For most cheffest time was of somertide
 That ther hys wacche gan so to prouide. 5523
- F**ull suetly the kyng hir salute And gret, 5524
The king salutes the lady,
 Which was hertly glad of hir good comyng.
who praises him and asks him what he will have,
 She said hym goodly, "non myght ther no bett,
 you will haue a-quitte As in your waking.
 rewarde and behold what gift will be hauyng; 5528
or she will only refuse him one thing,
 Vnto you *with*-say neuer shall hire me,
 Sauyng And excepte only o gift be, 5530
- W**herof the dowte; in no wise shall pay.¹ 5531
[Fol. 105 b.] which she will not pay.
 Now demaunde and aske at your owne plesaunce."
The king thanks her, and asks her love.
 "Graunt mercy, lady," the king hir gan say,
 "Certes, fine swete hert, non will this instaunce
 But your body;" then she, full of noisaunce, 5535
She, greatly angered, denies him flatly,
 Hys gift plainly gan refuse And deny,
 Sayng, "musarde, fole, me shall not haue surely,
- S**Om other yifte demaunde, aske, or craue;² 5538
and bids him ask something else.
 For ye my body certes haue ne may;

¹ In the margin—to say and vne-say is the propertie of a woman.

² In the margin—mark what is be-twene truthe and vn-truthe.

For gold ne siluer it shall ye not haue."

he said, "I will non other gifte thys day

Then your body, in guerdon to my pay.

I you here promise if it haue ne shall,

Other gift I will non demaunde at all."

But he reiterates
his request,
and will have
nothing else.

5542

5544

THys fair lady was full wroth and malice,

Hym ther answered *without taring*,

"Certes, if ye more demaunde *in* such wise

My body to haue, your gift shall be lesing,

And such mischeffe therof you be comyng

Wherof ye ne shall neuer come to ende ;

So huge heuinesse to you shall discende.

5545

She is very angry,

and tells him that,
if he persists, he
will find that
great mischief will
befall him,

5549

5551

FOR that roiall rewme which *in* hand hold,

And *pat* ye gouerne now, lo ! presently,

Disherite shall be your hoires manyfold,

And discomfite lefte euerlastingly."

He ther answeyng, "be it witte or foly,

you will haue to loue, sin yifte me haue yif on,

I will noght desire non other guerdon." ¹

5552

for that he shall
lose his kingdom,

and his heirs shall
be disinherited.

5556

He again says he
will have nothing
else.

5558

"Foltish muserde," said, "of itt shalt thou fail,

Outerly hast lost thy quarell to craue ;

Other gift bere hens shall by no gouernaill

Then grett mischaunce to purchace and haue ;

The disceiueth thy cautels in hert graue,

Which the so meueth with full grett folay ;

Now leue thi desire, auail the ne may.

5559

[Fol. 106]
"Fool," says she,
"thou hast lost
all ;

5563

thy trickery de-
ceives thee, and
moves thee to
folly.

5565

THy man to-*auaunce*, by hys folay rage

Lesing his lady in loue amerous,

By his gret folay and cruel outrage,

For that growen is so coragious ;

Melusine *pat* Raymound gan to espous,

5566

Thine ancestor,
by his folly, lost
his spouse.

His name was
Raymond, and
he espoused
Melusine.

5570

¹ In the margin—*truthe, thouge yt was vnto his payne and vnto his vter vndoynge.*

The ring on finger setting of recorde,
Which she had so made nawhere gretter lorde.

King Guy, from
whom thou art
descended, was
my nephew.

THe kinge Guy, of whom thou discended ert, 5573
Was my neuw, vnderstande thys cas.

We were three
sisters, and en-
closed our father
Helmas within
a rock,

Sustres thre we be, y ly you noght at hert,
Which for sinne and crime of the kyng helmas,
Our fader, þat we closed hy and bas 5577
With-in the gret Roche which he hym-selfe made;
Oth to our moder and þat broken had, 5579

because he broke
his oath made to
our mother Pre-
sine.

WHych tho called was the lady presine, 5580
In Gesian¹ no wise shold hir behold ;

hir desire to kepe wold by no couyne,
And ther he hir saw ryght as I haue told ;
For that of hir and vs lost hath the hold. 5584

And when we had
done this,

And when enclosed within was fully,
In the Roche, As well As thought vs only, 5586

[Fol. 106 b.]
our inother was
angry with us,
and made me
watch this spar-
row-hawk here,
without ever de-
parting hence.

Our moder therfor was wroth and malice. 5587
Ther she me made, by werkes of fairy,

This sperhauke to kepe in this maner wise,
And without euer to uoide hens truly.
But the For-takyng left to me only ; 5591

That was the gifte that she gaf to me
In hir malice, wreth, and ill cruelte.² 5593

To Melusine she
gave the property
of becoming a
serpent every
Saturday, as a
punishment.

And after she gaff vnto Melusine, 5594
My suster, which was A madyn ful fare,

A gift to endur, neuer determine,
Whilis the worlde laste neuer make retrair ;
The setterday vnto A serpent repair. 5598

Off trouth it is so, like As I you say ;
Raymound breke his othe and lost hir for ay. 5600

¹ MS. "Sefian."

² In the margin—the losce off a Fayre lady.

- F**Or hir shold not se the setterday nowyse, 5601 Her husband was never to see her that day, but he broke his oath.
 Folily tho saw, lost hir company ;
 Wherfor distressed strangely, to deuise,
 he And hys line fille ; neuer cressed hy ;
 Thys toke thay a fall yut to sight of ey. 5605
 Palestine my sustre, yongest to surmitte,
 At quonig montain in Arragon shitte 5607 Palestine, my youngest sister, is in a mountain in Arragon.
- A**s long As thys wordle hath enduraunce, 5608
 Fro thys hy montain neuer put Away.
 Ther shall warde and kepe the tresour in substaunce
 Off kyng helmas, our fader that day.
 Thys our moder ordained without delay. 5612
 But thys to conquere may non by engine,
 But discended be of kyng helmas line. 5614 which none but one of our lineage may win.
- N**ow knowith thys then, discended ye be. 5615 [Fol. 107]
 yff that my wurdес vnderstande well do,
 Meue ne store¹ shold no such aduersite
 As of my body hauyng wif you to.
 That which your is noght ye will hold so, 5619
 By pat you may come full huge ill and pine,
 To you and to all youre of your line ; 5621 Owing to this, you shall suffer great misfortune,
- I**doubte me ryght noght thai shall gett a fall. 5622 and your successors shall lose their kingdom.
 For tho shall succede, after you command,
 holdyng your Rewme by fors of werre, and shall
 Enlesing the Rewme and also the lande.
 And he which laste shall leue it, vnderstand, 5626 The last of them shall bear the name of the king of beasts.
 Of A beste the name shall he be bering,
 Which off all other is the brutall king. 5628
- R**yght thys shall it be, beleue it full well, 5629 Thus shall it be.
 For certes off this I ly you no-thing ;

¹ ftere " (?).

But for your folly,
you might have
had a blessing;

but now shall
you receive a
curse."

For, sir, ne had be thi foule corage fell,
And thy grett folay with thine outraging,
your unthriftinesse and cursed leuyng, 5633
lo! ye shold haue had benediccion;
And now ye shall [haue] malediccion. 5635

Then Melior
vanished away;

and great mis-
chance happened
to this king.

Part to you here, where that ye shall haue 5636
Such thing that ye percas fele now shall."
The kyng vnderstode such happe myght not saue;
But she uoided thens er that it gan fall,
And uanished Away fro ther sightes all. 5640
I-now shall he haue of shamfull noisaunce,
Anon it happned to hym gret misc[h]aunce. 5642

[Fol. 107 b.]
He was beaten
on the haunches,
sides, legs, armes,
and head, so that
he came to a
"hard fast,"
and felt the
strokes on his
chine.

There smeten was hanches and sides vppon, 5643
Als vppon legges, armes, and hede.
To herd fast tho cam in conclusion;
his opinion¹ right noght went in-ded,
Well felt the strokes on the chinesse bred. 5647
All the skyn tho was torn and to-rent,
Many strokes had ryght full violent. 5649

He cried for
mercy, and fled,

being well
anointed,
and having no
sleeve or rag
whole on him.

"A las!" he said, "for goddis loue, mercy! 5650
leue off me now, or truly am dede!"
Then thay put hym hout, the kyng Away fly,
Which so well was Anoynted indede,
That no sleue ne pane had he hole of brede. 5654
The kyng went hys way, hym-selfe anaunsing,
In the fair medew his peple fynding. 5656

His people asked
him how he had
sped, and if he
had kept good
watch.

Ther hym demaunding hou pat he had do, 5657
(For off his dedes ne knew thai no-thing);
Hou he had sped, And were wel wacched to
Without sompnolence or any slepyng,

¹ MS. "opunion."

- Beforene this gentill Sperhauke being. 5661
The kyng answerd *without* misded sure,
“For soth,” said he, “to my ille Auenture!” 5663
- T**O disloge tham made quikly and lightly, 5664
To se cam anon, ryding A strong pas.
Into A fair barge the kyng went lightly,
he and hys peple; no tarying was.
To vnarme hym the kyng made in *pat* place. 5668
Wonderfull fortune had he in the se,
But not-withstandyng strongly rowede hee, 5670
- T**hat in short bref time at port gan Ariue 5671
At hauyn of Crius, into hermeny.
The kyng issued fro his nauee blieue.
long wold it be Al to rehers only,
But unto decline went he forth dayly. 5675
Many tymes after cursed the day
That in Melior had put his loue ay. 5677
- P**erceued it was by hys owne desert, 5678
Saw he and his land shold be disherite,
Exile and deminute by his dedes smart.
When fro the worlde cam in-to ending plite,
A kyng after hym regned in *pat* site, 5682
Which be half¹ was wurse in his gouernaunce,
And nyne hoires after like wise in substaunce.
- T**hay lost ther lande and all ther hauour, 5685
Inclinyng and comyng vnto mischaunce.
On of thes kynges cam to Fraunce *pat* houre,
So fro hermeny chaced in-to Fraunce,
Full long the kyng ther gaf hym sustinance; 5689
At Parys died, As happned the cas,
At the celestines entered he was. 5691
- O**ff hys dedes non enquere will take, 5692
hys men clothed white, (As of this kyng fre),

He replied that
he had fared ill.

Then rode they to
the sea, and took
ship,

where the king
took off his
armour.
Then rowed he
strongly,

[Fol. 108]
so that he soon
arrived at a haven
of Armenia.

From that day his
fortunes declined.

He was well
aware it was all
his own fault.

After him reigned
another unfortu-
nate king,
and after him
nine others.

They at last lost
all.

One of them came
to France, died
at Paris,

and was buried
in the Celestin
convent.

His men wore
white at the
funeral;

¹ MS. “behalf.” Fr. text, *la moitié*.

not black as men
do in France.
This is no jape,
but true.

Which in fraunce were wont use clothes blake ;

It is no iape, it is trouth to see.

Clothes blake comyn thing vsed [be], 5696

As well an hundred persones As on,

Ther clerly perceiued may it be Anon. 5698

[Fol. 104 b.]
People wondered,
not being used
to it ;

At hys enterment for hym so was doo, 5699

Wherof moche peple ther abashed were ;

For that neuer before sain was to do so ;

why they did it
I know not.

Wherfor it gan do certes wote I nere.

Off Sperhauke castell the maner leue I here, 5703

And begyn to speke of this damycell,

I now come to
speak of Palest-
tine.

The fair Palestine, somwat of hyr spell. 5705

Now will I declare of fair Palestine, 5706

The swette, the curteys, gentile mayden fre ;

She was shut
up in a place in
Arragon,

In Conqs is shitte by carfty¹ engine

Within Arragon, that noble contre,

where she wards
her father's
treasure ;

Where that hir faders trosour wardeth she 5710

At hir moder hest and commaundement.

ho it may conquere, take, other hent, 5712

The lande of promission shall conquere. 5713

which none shall
win except he be
of her lineage.

But þat tresour conquered shall not be,

But of hyr line discended and born were.

A litell shall say of Palestine² fre,

Brefly and shortly passe forth here will me ; 5717

The chronicle
treats this story
briefly.

For the Cronike doth treteth³ this brefly,

More ferther wold go, mater finde might I. 5719

I only put down
what it says, in-
venting nothing.

Here say and declare after þat haue founde. 5720

Of nouel thinges to our discipline

No-thing I fynd at no tydy stounde.

Now I return to
Palestine,

Retorn shall Again to fair Palestine,

Which to that place destened by Presine ; 5724

¹ Sic in MS.

² MS. "Poleftine."

³ Sic in MS.

In the hy montain Aboue-said þe site,
Where many A cruell serpent enhabite. 5726

who is in the
high mountain.

A Man may not into that montain go, 5727 [Fol. 109]
That men shall not finde to whome for to speke.

Many A knyght hath passed it into,
In somer, winter, both stourne men & meke.
But non retourned, ne myght thens to-breke, 5731
Iff in that montain longe time sogerned,
But that he were ded or foule destroyed. 5733

Many men, both
stern and meek,
went thither, but
none returned;

all were foully
destroyed.

SO As in scripture I may fynden right, 5734
Off worthy knyghtes full many ther were,
Myghty, strong, fers, And men beyng light,
Thys said gret tresour went for to conquere ;
But no-thing myght thai no wise acquire there ;
In An ill hour vnto þat place went,
For neuer after Again retourn hent. 5740

There were many
men who sought
to win that trea-
sure, but could
get nothing.

None returned.

IN Englande A knight, mighty and pusant, 5741
Which of knyghtly were moche knew to auail,
A gentile knyght, was worthy and uaillant,
Which in knightly werke neuer gan to fail,
Army dedes gan do in plate and mail ; 5745
A full goodly knyght, manly, debonair,
With wurthy knyghtes taught was he full faire

There was in Eng-
land a mighty
knight,

who did dedes
of arms in plate
and mail ;

IN the hy court of noble king Arthure, 5748
Where knyghtes were taught uertu perfectly.
Off Tristram-is line was hys engendrure,
Which þat whilom had full gret seignory.
Aboute Arthure was yeres full thirty, 5752
Off that Am not I untrew ne lesingour ;
He hurde speke and talke of this huge tresoure.

who was brought
up in Arthur's
court, and was
of the lineage
of Tristram.

This knight heard
of this treasure,

[Fol. 109 b.]
and said he would
win it,

Promesse ther he made to that montain go, 5755
Which by manly strenght many thinges wold don ;
This full riche tresour thought he conquere tho.

and the Land of
Promise after-
wards.

After he went into pat region,
And into the lande of promission,¹ 5759
Thought vnto conquere all the hole contre,
With strenght of swerde therto apointed he. 5761

He departed
thence on a Tues-
day, riding mer-
rily to Arragon.

This knight was full good, manly, and hardy ; 5762
Ther-thens departed on A tew[i]sday,
Into Arragon riding merily.

He had only one
page with him.

With hym was but a litill page on way,
No more felawship had hym to conuay, 5766
So he went and rode hys iourne anon
That he ariued into Arragoñ. 5768

Within the moun-
tain dwelt a ser-
pent, a hideous
monster,

The Monte demaunded, men hym shewed tho, 5769
Where wit/in had was A monstre hyduous,
Meruelously fers and orgulous to,

whose paunch
was as big as a
wine-tun.

Above all other wormes most perilous ;
hys panche As A pipe hug and comerous ; 5773
Fro A caue noght meued by no gouernail,
Off hir unmete hugenesse is gret meruail. 5775

It had but one
ear, and no nos-
trils, and only one
eye, which was a
yard long.

But on ere hath noght this monstrous gest, 5776
Ne nostrelles non appering in hed.
Thys wonderfull and meruelous best

Its breath came
out at its ear.

Ne but on ey hath middes the forehed,
Which thre fote ny hath, wat in lenght & bred.
hir breth by the ere hath ther issew oute,
Wherof all the wordle² souzneth all Aboute. 5782

¹ MS. "proniffion."

² MS. "wordley." The translator was thinking of *monde* ;
but read "mount ;" Fr. text, *mont*.

- A** Lway in slepe this cursed cruell fend. 5783 [Fol. 110]
 When that he rowted, thing litell or grett
 In this said caue is felonesly tende,
 Where the ryght wone¹ was of Palestine sett,
 Warding thys tresour by kyng helmas get, 5787 Here dwelt
 By Iugement of hyr moder said.² Palestine.
 The dore to the caue myghty strong was had, 5789
- W**ith yren bondes at entre of þis caue, 5790 The monster
 Where this riche tresour shitte & made fast was ; guarded the
 Which neuer was unshitte, entre to haue, cave's door, where
 For the warde had this monstre in þat place. the treasure was
 To entre therby non durst for hir manace, 5794 None but one of shut in.
 But issued be of helmas linage, Helmas' line
 Which aforne haue said in my rude langage. 5796 could enter.
- T**hys lady presine ordaned also, 5797 Here many men
 When to hir doughtres thes gyftes gif had, perished.
 Thys caue enmyddes thys said montain tho,
 Wher moche peple were to perishing lad.
 Of caues and diches vnder I-now made, 5801 The ditches round
 Full of serpentes, inly perilous, about were full
 And with other places full meruelous. 5803 of serpents, very dangerous.
- T**hen ho wold it go, of-fors most passe by. 5804 No man went
 But neuer man þat place ne stede went there but he soon
 That sogerne wold ther for thyng any, came back again.
 But þat men thaim saw anon to retorn bent.
 Thys mont had but a sory path to hent, 5808 The path up the
 ful litell and stratte was it vnto se, mountain was
 To gon vp an hy ther had miles thre ; 5810 very narrow and
 three miles long.
- W**hich behouid go withe-out rest any, 5811 [Fol. 110 b.]
 For where man to sitte A place shold not se Men had to go up
 without resting ;

¹ MS. "lone ;" but Fr. text, *la propre demeure*. ² "fad" (?).

for there was no
place to sit down
except one sat
upon serpents.

Enlesse vppon serpentes sate truly !

And infinite was of thaim suche plente.

For dred of that fende unhabite þe contre ; 5815

Off thys strange monstre, declared & said,

Thys haue it founde in writing displaid. 5817

This knight came
riding thither,
attended only
by a page.

NOW shall come Again to þat wurthy knight, 5818

Which ther cam ryding A coursire vppon ;

Alone his uiage, sau yng A page ryght,

Thys good knight without reproche of person ;

When he drew
near the place,
he met a man,

When thys montain approached ny to gon, 5822

A good man be¹ fund enmeddis the way,

Which to this montain hym gan he conuay. 5824

who led him to
within a mile
of the place,
and then left him
to go on alone,

SO when that he was A mile of certain, 5825

Then vnto hym said, " no nerre will I go ;

Sir, be-hold yande that hiduous montain,

lese will I ne wyn ; fre knyght, go ther-to."

showing him the
path whence none
returned.

The path hym shewed wherby most go tho, 5829

Fro-whens² neuer cam Again here no wight

For soth at no day vnto mannys sight ; 5831

His guide de-
parted, and the
knight rode on.

And yut hath ther be men mo than twenty. 5832

hys gidour ne wold lenger sogern³ plain,

Fro-thens⁴ departed, retornyng wightily.

At the mountain
he dismounted
and gave his
page the rein,
and bade him
wait ;

Thys knyght so rode, he cam to that montain.

Fro courser lepte doñ, hys page toke þe rain. 5836

Firmely commaunding hym shold there abide,

Noght Fro horsbakke go till he cam, no tide.⁵

[Fol. 111]
though he only
had to wait in
vain.

But, certes, for noght there Abide shold he, 5839

Full well myght he lete hys hors to pasture ;

For neuer his maister Again shold se.

¹ "he" (?).

² MS. "For whens."

³ MS. "fogren."

⁴ MS. "For thens."

⁵ At the bottom of this page is the catchword :—

"But certes for noght there Abide."

- This knight departed to this aventure,
To god commaunding, blissing hys figure ; 5843
 Entring within this narew path þat stounde,
 That dais of lif neuer such on f[o]und. 5845
- R**yght will armed was thys noble knight, 5846
 A good swerd of stile in his hand holdyng ;
Thys mont toke, narew and stikell to sight.
 An horrible serpent saw he comyng,
 Towardes this knight, vppon hym rennyng ; 5850
 Trowyng hym deuour that houred instance,
 With a yanyng throte gain hym gan¹ Auaunce.
- T**hat fine good custell that in hand gan hold 5853
 Brandes[t] the good knyght, uaillant and wurthy.
Hym to assail the serpent full bold,
 He As man fers Approched hir ryght ny ;
 With o soule stroke the necke cute ato swiftly ; 5857
 The serpent fill don dede for all hyr strenght,
 Which worme was ny ryght ten hole feete of
 lenght. 5859
- W**hen the serpent saw ther ded mortally, 5860
 The montain gan take ; vpwarde stied there,
As man quicke and wight with all the body.
 Gayn him comyng saw A-pace A huge bere,
 Hym vnto assaill cam² with all power ; 5864
 But of hym thought he to fail in no wise,
 With gret raundon cam to hym in his gise. 5866
- F**ro hys shethe thys knight drew hys good swerd
 hard, 5867
As A mighty man, wurthy and hardy ;
Shewing inly well he was no coward.
- The knight com-
mends himself to
God,
and enters the
path,
being well armed.
He soon sees a
serpent coming,
running at him to
devour him,
and advancing
with yawning
throat.
The knight bran-
dished his dagger,
and cut its neck in
two at a stroke.
The serpent fell
down dead.
It was 10 feet
long.
Upward again he
mounted,
but soon sees a
huge bear coming
apace, which,
however, he en-
counters boldly,
- [Fol. 111 b.]
drawing his sword
like a mighty man.

¹ MS. "gain."

² MS. "can." Fr. text, *vint*.

The bear gripped
his shield, and
clutched at his
shoulder,
tearing his hauberk;

Vppon the shild hym grypte thys bere tho feresly,
On hys shulder als hapued verily ;
Hys mailed hauberke broken and to-tore,
Hys shild vnto grounde drew hym before. 5873

but he smote the
bear in the snout,
giving him a
wound a foot long,

TO hys good swerd tho had mister and nede, 5874
The beres gret groin tho smote he vppon ;
With hys swerd so gripte of fine manly-hede,
Ther all snowte and groin smote he of Anon,
More then A large fote, of recorde so doñ. 5878
Tho durst he noght charge As of his bityng,
By hys eyes twain of was it shering. 5880

and cutting off his
snout, so that he
could not bite.

The bear was very
chapfallen at this,

yet raised his paw
against him again ;

but the knight
leapt lightly aside.

THys bestly bere was passyng old and strong, 5881
Natheles tho was heuily chermat ;
But not-for-that haused hys pawe Alonge,
Trowyng to hapne hym to rase þat dat.
But full wyght and light was this knight alगत, 5885
Ther tho made A lepe wyghtly in trauers
Fro this bere, which was fers, bold, and diuers.

With a back stroke
of his sword he
cut off the bear's
paw.
But it reared up,
and clutched him
with the other
paw.

Both fell together.

A bakwarde smote he *wit* hys swerde of stile, 5888
O paw of the bere of was there keruyng ;
On hys hynder feet reised up that while,
And to this said knight full ny approaching,
That *wit* that other paw hym was cracching. 5892
All hys Armure he to-breke and tere,
So both on an hepe fill, both knyght and bere.

[Fol. 112]
Then the knight
with his dagger
cut the bear's
throat, so that it
quitted its hold.

But thys bere myght noght in no wise bite ; 5895
Then at his gerdell Anon toke this knight
A dagger full good, fourged of profite,
Thorough hys throte yaf A stroke *wit* all his myght
So that gretly hurt was this in foule wyght. 5899

Ther lefte the bere his pris, stoned sore was,
That other pawe the knyght smote of in þat
place ; 5901

Then the knight
cut off its other
paw.

Tho caste he vp A full meruelous cry. 5902

Then this manly knyght *without* other lette
Thorugh belay hym smote to crosse of swerd ny ;
Vnto mortall deth [t]he bere to grounde shette.

At last the knight
smote it through
the belly up to the
cross-hilt of his
sword.

Thys good english knight his swerd in sheth sette ;
So vp went, doing huge distruccion,
Off serpentcs made grete occision, 5908

On went he
slaying many
serpents.

A nd off bestes wilde many on gan sle, 5909

A hou-be-it that he suffred full grett pain.

So going up hy till to coppe came he,

By fors and strenght so passing the montain,

So nyng to the caue wher this monstre was plain,

Which the yren dore warded of the caue

Where the tresour was that he trowed haue, 5915

At last he reached
the top,
and drew near
the iron door of
the cave, which
the monster
guarded.

W hich was enclosed by werke of fayry, 5916

In an ill hour cam, which was gret folay.

Into diche and caue entred vnhaply ;

And As sone As he reste ther had alway,

Perceiuyng this monstre where þat she lay, 5920

Which had A large eye, (thre foote was About),

And when that she hym perceued all-out, 5922

But he entered the
cave in an evil
hour ;

for he soon per-
ceived the mon-
ster with its eye
a yard broad,

R Aysed was anon with wonderfull corage, 5923

As A malice beste *with* cruelnesse sett ;

Towarde thys good knight Auaunced hir outrage ;

Thys monstre belay As pipe large and gret.

Thys knight saw hir come, *with*-draught wold not
gette, 5927

The knight saw it
come, but would
not retreat, but
determined to face
it at all risks.

But that alwais again hir go wold

For what-somaner vnto hym come shold. 5929

Drawing his sword
he smote it,
but his strokes
failed to harm it.

HIs swerd fro sheth drew, this monstre yafe stroke
grete, 5930

But no-thing was wurth the stroke hir gan take;
Wher *with* the bake or *with* swerd-egge gette,
To this monstre might noght do hurt ne wrake
With yre, stile, ne tre, hou-so it gan make. 5934
Thys monstre *with* teeth the swerd ther taking,
In moitees to Forthwith it breking, 5936

though it was all
of steel.

ANd yut was she fourged all of stile; 5937
Thys knight noght of hir myght to-tere ne rase.

The swerd wel ground, no harder many mile,
The sharpnesse ne hardnesse no-thing wurght was.
With A yanyng throte thys knight gan manace, 5941
All at a morsell swolewed knight surely;
(Off thys here now said in no wise do ly); 5943

Then with a
yawning throat
it swallowed the
knight down
whole.

The knight
seemed no more
in its mouth than
a pasty in an
oven.

Thys knight swolewed, in throte noght pering 5944
More then doth A pastay in ouen truly!¹

With full gret dolour in thys wise deing,
Gret damage and hurt was it uerily.
For in hym was had huge hardesse surely, 5948
For moche had doñ of manly dedes fair,
But nomore shall do thys knyght debonair. 5950

Thus died he, and
it was a great pity.

[Fol. 113]
Thus was this
good English
knight deuoured
by this monster,

THys english good knight was *without* socour, 5951
Which this said tresour trowed to conquere,

That whilom by days had gret honour;
With thys monstre was this deuoured there;
Gret damage it was of thys baculere,² 5955
For in hym was had full gret wurthinesse,
Socour was ther non, but to deth moste dresse.

and it was a great
pity.

¹ In the margin—*deathe of a noble knyghte [y]at was of sir
[T]ristrams*

² MS. "baiulere." See Glossarial Index.

- N**Oght so hy As he neuer man vp went, 5958
The more in hym was of hug wurghtinesse ;
Remembred ought be his knyghtly entent,
Stilled ne put shold be in hodelnesse.
No man, As seith this history expresse, 5962
Neuer went so ferre As to memory,
In that meruelous Roche being so hy, 5964
- A**s wilfully gan do thys full good knight. 5965
Too days hys page ther sogernyng sure
At the hill-fote ; after retornyng ryght
Into Englande streight ; wher thys auenture
Declared to many a creature, 5969
Which caused to write therof thys history,
To ende that it shold be now in memory. 5971
- A**nd thys ther he knew by A good deuyñ, 5972
Which somtyme was clerke Merlyn vnto,
Which ther dwelled, to life gan determyñ.
Vnto thys said clerke ran all the worle tho,
For ther necessite vnto hym gan go, 5976
Wherof he wold say trouth and verite,
For entirely all ryght full well knew he, 5978
- L**ike As hade be ther in propur person, 5979
And had comyn streight Fro the saide montain.
This deuyñ was of good cognicion,
And a scoler was of Tholouse certain,
As witnesseith litterall scripture plain. 5983
Verily moche more then yeres twenty
Neuer ther cam man vnto hym truly, 5985
- B**ut hym declared the trouth and uerite 5986
Off all maner thing that man demaunde wolde.
- No one ever got
so high up the
mountain as he
did.
His daring should
be remembered,
not lost in ob-
livion.
No man ever went
higher.
- His page waited
for him two days,
and then returned
to England, there
relating this ad-
venture to many.
- A certain divine,
who had been
clerk to Merlin,
dwelt there (in
Arragon), to whom
many went to hear
the story.
- [Fol. 113 b.]
He was a scholar
of Toulouse,
- and during twenty
years gave true
replies to any
questions he was
asked.
- The page, there-
fore, went to him,

A Messenger comes to Geoffrey,

- and learnt from
him all the truth
just as I have now
told it you.
- For that the page *with* hym thought wolde be,
Which subtile and sage was he manyfold ;
All trouth and verite by hym was vnfold 5990
Of that I haue told, declared, and sayd ;
By this notable clerke was it displaide. 5992
- There was also a
man of noble birth
in Hungary,
- Ther was on hade in lande of hungry, 5993
Which descended was of A noble line.
Thys tresour to conquere thought he manly,
But by hym may noght be it to termyne.
To this montain cam this noble knight fine, 5997
The monte clymbed up ten or twenty pas,
And ther taried noght no whiles ne space. 5999
- being very soon
devoured by ser-
pents ; but he
went not up so
high as that other.
- Ther *with* serpentis he deuoured was, 6000
Nawher ny went vp As other gan doo.
Many deuoured hath be in that place,
Non shall that tresour conquere hym vnto
But of the lynage be discended fro. 6004
Full heuy it was that this goodly knyght
Off Englande had noght be off that line ryght.
- Pity the English
knight was not of
the right lineage.
- [Fol. 114]
He was descended
from Tristram,
- HE descended was off full hy parage, 6007
Off Tristram hys line cam of natiuite,
As the history rehersith hys lineage.
Forsoth that tresour conquerd then had he,
So of that lineage aboue-said had be, 6011
Full chiualrous was certes at *pat* day,
Ferre and ny as any of thaim to say. 6013
- and had assuredly
won the treasure,
had he been of the
right lineage.
- Then came a
messenger to
Lusignan,
- where Geoffrey
was enjoying
himself with all
honesty.
- Tho it cam and fill in that ceason there, 6014
That A messenger passed forth tho by,
Wher Gaffray *with* gret toth was in his manere
At ioyous disport ryght full merily
At lusignen castell *with* strangers many ; 6018

To which egall sporte non the yere shold see,
In gentile maner *with* all honeste. 6020

With hym ladyes and damycelles fair, 6021 With him were
Connyng, gracyous, humble, and benigne ; ladies and damsels
in a fair arbour.

Gentile, womanly, and in debonair,

In a fair herber to sport gan in-cline.

A messinger cam ; saw well by hys syne. 6025

Streith to Gaffray went, hym fair salutinge ; Geoffrey tells the
messenger he is

“Sir, ye be welcome,” Gaffray hym sayng. 6027 welcome,

This messinger connyng and gentile was, 6028

Off hys mouth issued sugred swete langage ;

Nouels demaunded Gaffray in þat place.

Aforu lad[y]es and damicelles sage.

and asks him the
news.

He hym sette and told all the huge outrage 6032

(Like As this boke rehersith here before) Then the mes-
senger relates the

All the dedes told off thys knyghtes lore ; 6034 adventure I have
just told you,

And whereto thys fers monstre doth repayre, 6035

Which peple hath distroide so many,

Myghty, strong, fers, bold, gentile, debonair,

And hou the tresour wardeth myghtyly

[Fol. 114 b.]
and tells where
the monster was
who guarded the
treasure of Hel-
mas.

Off helmas, which was so ryche and so worthy ; 6039

Neuer perceiued non like off auail.

At this Geoffrey
greatly marvels,

Gaffray full moche therof gan meruail, 6041

Off thys said monstre werof he gan speke. 6042

Thys monstre to destroy said he wold go,

With-all the tresour conquere and oute breke.

and says he will
go and destroy the
monster.

Hys men made redy qwikly, no reste made tho,

Forthwith send he hys brother Thierry vnto 6046

To hym come, and cam ; after hym sayng,

He made ready,
and sent to his
brother Thierry
to come and go-
vern his realm.

The contre gouerne to hys retornyng. 6048

For thys Gaffray was of fers harde corage ; 6049

Neuer hys day[e]s wold he noght mary,

This Geoffrey was
of a fierce courage,

and would never
marry.

In wife to entre As in mariage ;

No woman wold betrouth neither affy.

Then he made
over his land to
Thierry, saying
he should depart.

Vnto hys brother the lande toke goodly,

6053

Saying he moste go *withoute* any reste,

Off that riche tresour for to make conqueste. 6055

But he was pre-
vented by sickness
and age.

But when that he shold haue taken hys way, 6056
Gret siknesse hym toke and age gan repair ;

On his bed don layd *with* full grett seknes

Thys gentill knyght, stronge, fers, & debonair,

Which so many gud dedys hath don [fair]. 6060

Alas! had he
lived, he would
have had the
treasure,

Alas! the tresour of Comquez shold had,

So that lif myght haue, (for of all was drad), 6062

[Fol. 115]
and the Land of
Promise,
that Holy Land.

And the lande haue hade off promission ; 6063
Iff god wold haue send hym good liffe and long,
Conquered shold that holy regyon.

But death, who
spares none, made
war on Geoffrey ;

But deth sparith noght tho feble ne stronge,

With Gaffray hath take were other Among, 6067

And to hym comyng A grett passe *with-all*,

Ther making hym were¹ dedly and mortall. 6069

and against death
hath no man any
power.

So uenquissed was by dethes gouernall, 6070
Agayn hir noman hath fors ne pusaunce

Be he not so stronge or of ryche auail,

Als well tho feble As strong in substance ;

Non hath power gain dethis gouernaunce, 6074

Be he Baron, Markeis, Erle, Duke, Prince, or
kyng ;

Death smote Geof-
frey sorely with
his cruel dart,

With hys cruell dart Gaffray sore smiting, 6076

piercing his heart.

Full streight the stroke went ther vnto hys hert, 6077
Where-of ther was had inly gret dolor ;

¹ MS. "wery;" Fr. text *guerre*.

- For in peiters shold haue be well expert,
 I-now good dedys don wold by labor,
 Er that yere passed any tyme or hour, 6081
 Churches make and found, which deuised were ;
 Bothe landes, rentes, thought he morteis there,
- T**O found and make noble churches gret. 6084
 Alas ! full dolorous to bilydng shal it bide !
 Neuer shall thay be fourged, made, and get, But, alas ! these things were left undone.
 Where-of is pite in many A side ;
 Gret heuinesse will it cause full wide, 6088 His death will cause great heaviness.
 And ne had the will and the plesire be
 Off our hy lorde, sittying in trenite. 6090
- G**Affray lith doñ sike, ille touches feling, 6091 [Fol. 115 b.] He can take no food.
 Wyn ne vitaill resceiue may for seknesse ;
 Anon After the preste were sending, His confessor came and said mass.
 Hys confessour come, hym gan to confesse,
 And ther beforñ hym made to say a messe. 6095 Then he made his will touching both spiritual and lay matters.
 After ordained making testament
 Spiritually, after hys entent, 6097
- W**hen deuised hade hys lay thynges all. 6098
 Then entered was at Maillers abbay,
 Where a fair repair had he full roiall.
 For of-new again made, it is no nay,
 ryght As he had distroed it all-way. 6102 Then was he buried at Maillezais abbey, which he had rebuilt after destroying it.
 So by hym was made and furged again
 Off Maillers the church, *with* fresh werke solain.
- T**her ligh[t], ther hys thombe put is and sett ; 6105 There lieth he, and the author of the French Romance there saw his tomb.
 The frensh maker seith it saw he *with* ey.
 Hys testament made, it myght be no bett,
 And what lefte ouer, to pore made pay truly.
 So after passyng to goddes mercy, 6109 Thus he made his will,
 All were paid in hys owne presence,
 What-so hym semed As in conscience. 6111
 PARTENAY. P

and yielded his
soul to God.

To god yild his soule, hym do mercy and grace, 6112

And of hys synnys A generall pardon,
For moch goodnesse gan do in many place
As sone As in hym was put reson.

Had he lived
longer, he would
have done more.

Iff lenger leued, more wold he haue doñ ; 6116

He is now dede, what shall we then say ?
That god hym pardon hys mysdedes ay. 6118

[Fol. 116]
Thierry was
Geoffrey's heir,

Thierry was tho A full noble knyght ; 6119
Gaffray ther hym made hys enheritour
Off all the contre which he hild hym dyght
And that to hym pertained any hour.

and governed
both Poitiers
and Partenay,
being at first
powerful,

Thierry it hild, A noble gouernour, 6123

So he regned there, & in pertenay ;
Regned and gouerned pusantly. 6125

but afterwards he
alienated much of
his property.

But after thys, [as] by hys mariage, 6126
geuyng to on here, to Anoder there,
So Alienyng part of hys heritage.

Yet the descend-
ants of Thierry
reign at Partenay
still,

yut noght-with-standing god of hys power
Causith the line regne yut without danger ; 6130
At noble pertenay ther of sir Thierry
Off trouth thai regne yut ryght worshipfully, 6132

as Melusine fore-
told ; and may
they long do so !

As Melusyne faid, moder of that line, 6133
That long schold endure the line of pertenay ;
God grant long endure, neuer determine !

The line endureth
to this day,

Fro-thens till now durith the line alway
In chiualrous knighthode vnto thys day ; 6137

and contains
many noble
knightes,

Noble good knightes, gentile, curtes, fre,
Among all other hauyng habilite, 6139

of whom we shall
speak a litte,
and then end.

Off whom a litill we shall be declaring, 6140
After thys boke finish shall and end.
Goddess knightes haue be, ther trouth neuer falsing

For king, Duke, Erle, Markeis, Baron, or frend.		
hit wil Appered by that good knight hend	6144	Especially should be mentioned that worthy knight, who caused this book to be begun.
That thys boke began, of Partenay lord,		
Grett honour had in life of recorde ;	6146	

H E that this boke made and gret parte gan do,	6147	[Fol. 116 b.] When it was partly done, this knight died ;
This knight died, in life had gret honour ;		
For noght man may do gain mortal deth, lo !		
The feble and strong takith she ech hour ;		
Non hir escapith As by no labour,	6151	for who can escape death ?
Be it king, or pope, or lordes of landes,		
All most nedis passe truly by hyr handes,	6153	

T hat is the trewage of bodies humayn.	6154	
Al most by that path of fine fors to passe ;		All must pass along death's path.
And that way compassith ech soueran,		
hou moche fro tham to hyr haue, hy or basse.		
Ouer-light she is euermore, alasse !	6158	Alas ! it cometh unexpectedly, man sees not when nor how.
Alas ! she comyth wonderfull lyghtly,		
Man seith not the hour ne hou he shall dy.	6160	

W hen she oppressith any creature,	6161	Death is swifter than an arrow.
More swetter ¹ she goth then arew any,		
Smitting man <i>w</i> ithout wurdes saing sure.		
When on hir thenke, my hert sogheth heuely,		When I think on it, my heart sigbeth.
And so here shold do ech humain body ;	6165	
Euery man shold doubt hir cruell hand,		Every man should fear its cruel hand.
For ouer-gret stroke yeuith <i>w</i> ith hir wand ;	6167	

F irmely and stedfastly redoubted shold be.	6168	Whoever thinks on death, must leave all pastime, and muse on his soul's safety.
Ho well on hyr thenke, all disport will leue,		
Thenking, musing hys soules sauete,		
As will man as woman, to say in breue ;		
Ho wel on it thenke, fro ill will remeue.	6172	Whoever thinks on it well, will depart from sin.
In such wise gan do, I trow it, all-way		
Thys fore-said lorde of roiall partenay.	6174	

¹ "fwyfter" (!)

[Fol. 117]
One William was
then Archbishop,

and he well knew
how good a man
this lord of
Partenay was.

He died on the
Tuesday before
Pentecost, May 17,
A.D. 1407, and was
buried at Parte-
nay.
[This date is
wrong; it should
be 1401.]

He lies in the
church of the
Holy Cross.

He was very
solemnly and
honourably
interred, be ye
sure.

The day of his
death was the
very day on
which the head
of the blessed
Saint Louis, king
of France,
was translated
to Paris.

[Fol. 117 b.]
I do not mean
that my lord

ON William was the archebisschope tho, 6175
Where of the name tho of Bisshope was wurthy ;
At end knew full well wat thys lorde had do.
He seing this lord good man was and holy,
And well gouerned the lande here worly 6179
Till to finall ende he gan forth strike ;
Which end was full good and ryght autentike.

THE tewisday passed Aforne penticost, 6182
The yere A thousand four hundred & seuyn wend ;
Thys full goodly knyght yild tho vp his goste,
No lenger ne might hym fro deth deffend ;
To god behouid his soule yilde and rend 6186
On the xvii day of the moneth of may,
And in erth lith at noble partenay. 6188

IN church of saint crosse lith this courteis knight ;
Ryght full wurthyly made hys sepulture,
And full nobly doñ As it ought of ryght ;
Sollemly was entered, be ye sure,
And honourably all thing fourged pure 6193
As it belonged lord and gouernour,
Both on lif And dede shold haue gret honour.

THE heuy day of his mortall passing 6196
Was the same day, (to be said properly),
That the sacred hed of the gloryous king,
halowed seint lowes, prince of fraunce most hy,
That terrestriall leued blessingly, 6200
(Which of men is said seint in parradis),
Ther at that day translat [was] to Paris. 6202

BUT I say it noght As it to recorde 6203
That in that proper day was noght don

- When to mortall deth went my noble lord ;
 For made and done was the translacion
 In the yere of the incarnacion 6207
 Off hed and of the glorious body ;
 And he long sith dede, dais full many ; 6209
- But that day this fest first honoured was, 6210
 Euery yere after, þe moneth of may ;
 Sith on of tho dais deth gan he purchas,
 As seruant shold sew, so sewed his lord ay,
 Such lord gift myght deserue hym to serue alway,
 An-hy in heuyns to his lord ascend.
 This of my good lord here now make an end. 6216
- Off his noble sone, Iohan of pertenay, 6217
 Off whome declare shall, his deuer gan do.
 By hym the obsequy well don that day,
 Enriched with light pertayning ther-to ;
 All-be-it had heuinesse also, 6221
 Wisdōm behouith to lete go and passe
 Which that men mow noght amend in no cas.
- I Hold it no gret wisdomē ne sagesse 6224
 To ouermuche suffre sorew and paine ;
 Who with dolour and wo the hert ouer-presse,
 Naturall fole is such heuinesse sustain,
 When that he may noght it restore Againe ; 6228
 Neuer wepe ne cry, neither such dole hold,
 Forsoth doth noght well ne As the sage shold.
- As to our purpos here will I repair, 6231
 Touching our nouel new enheritour,
 Off noble pertenay Iohān the lorde hair,
 Off whom spokyng haue here in langage our.
 A worthy man was and of gret honour, 6235
- died in that
 same year ;
 for the transla-
 tion of St. Louis'
 head took place
 long before that.
- But I mean that
 he died on the
 anniversary of
 that event,
- following his
 master as a
 servant should.
- Thus I make an
 end here of my
 good lord.
- His noble son,
 John of Parte-
 nay, performed
 the funeral
 obsequies well,
 using many
 wax-lights.
- But it is not wise
 to sorrow over-
 much,
- when the matter
 cannot be mended.
- Those who do so
 are not wise.
- [Fol. 118]
 I return to his
 heir, John, lord
 of Partenay
 and seigneur of
 Matefelon,

who is no cruel
man,

The souerain lord of Mathefelon,
Which that is not cruellous ne feloñ, 6237

but very courte-
ous.

But curtois, debonair, and vertuous ; 6238
Hyt appered well by hys workes eche braide.

For he was gentile, suete, and gracious,
Non ille wold he do, but fain wold all aid ;

He is sweeter
than any maid ;
this he inherits
from his mother.

He is more suetter then is any maide. 6242

Off that he drawith after that laydy
Fro whom he is discended uerily. 6244

For she was very
sweet and charit-
able,

A more suetter, humble, and amyable, 6245
Gentile, debonair, sage, wise, and connyng,

Curtois, piteuous, and charitable,

and did much
good to the poor ;

Sche vnto the pore ful gret good doing ;
So gentile, suete, fre in hert was being ; 6249

For she was of tho moste blessed uerily.
Thai ben piteuous Among peple surely 6251

and especially to
those in great
need.

As of tho which had grett necessite, 6252
Both mister and ned vnto som goodnesse.

Many she raised
to riches, of her
great liberality.

Full many therof raised vp hath she,
Fro pouerte enhaused to rychesse,
The which proceded of full hug noblesse, 6256

Off ryght gret franchise and hert piteuous
To socour nedy and tho famylous, 6258

[Fol. 118 b.]
Hence my lord
had a fair begin-
ning, and, more-
over, he is of
royal lineage,

What-someuer doo, besemith hir goodly. 6259
Mi lord therof hath fair begynnyng ;

Also belongith it, lo ! properly
To tho of roiall linage being,
And therof is he, I doubte me no-thing ; 6263

For of tho most blissid issued and wend
Noght long Ago, and therof gan descend. 6265

being cousin to
the king of
France,

HE cosyn vnto the hy king of fraunce, 6266
By the which branche honour is hauyng.

Off kyngis is most noblest and pusaunt,
 Off All the wordle moste souerain kyng.
 All rounde the compas though man be sekyng, 6270
 In all the wordle so noble king is noght
 As the kyng of Fraunce, certes, to be thought.

the mightiest
 king in the world.

There is no king
 so noble as the
 King of France.

His cosyn is, in hys moder parte, truly ; 6273
 And in faider parte ny kin, to deuyne,
 To kyng of Cipresse and off hermeny,
 And by the discent of thys noble line
 That beforn haue told of fair Melusine. 6277
 Ny kyn he is to king off norway,¹
 For of Melusine discended all thay. 6279

He is cousin to
 the king on his
 mother's side ;
 and, through
 his father, allied
 to the King of
 Cyprus,

and also to the
 King of Norway.

Off tho knyghtes ben yut, lo ! in Norway, 6280
 Wurthi and doubty, and ladies many ;
 Within this linage comprised be thay,
 And knowyn ouerall ryght openly
 That thay discended be of þat line hy
 Off lusignen, which is notable grett,
 Which so issued, into yrlande gett, 6286

and it is well
 known that they
 belong to the
 Lusignan family.

And vnto many Another contre, 6287
 As beforne is said by our gouernaill.
 Neuer line of told *with* thaim egall be,
 Neither to hur² such an³ hug meruaill,
 Ne hys dais shall neuer, *with*out faill, 6291
 As ye haue hurde of lusignen children, lo !
 Deme ye in no wise that lesing say you to ; 6293

[Fol. 119]
 No family was
 ever equal to this ;

nor can any man
 hear such marvels
 elsewhere as are
 told of Melusine's
 sons.

Trowe it ne suppose dreme to be any ; 6294
 Off uerray trouth it is a tru dreme ryght.
 And ho saue noght sain this said history,
 Vnnethes will beleue this to be parfight.

Think not I
 dream ; or, at
 least, it is a true
 dream.

¹ In the margin—*norway kyng*.

² Read "hire" = hear ; Fr. text, *Ne oyt dire autel nouvelle*.

³ MS. "and."

Whoso hath not
seen this history,
will scarcely
believe the fact.

For soth thys history plainly shewith to syght 6298
like As I haue declared you and said,
ho-so lust it rede, may se itt displaid. 6300

The seigneur
of Mathefelon,

Off Mathefelon the lord souerain, 6301
To whom our lord gif gret ioy and honour,
Which of that mansion lord is certain,

who is also lord
of Partenay,

And of partenay, (reson is eche hour),
Among all other A gentile henheritour ; 6305

shows himself
to be a sweet
creature,

In hys rule shewing A suete creature,
Which that is of full noble nature, 6307

for he will not
leave unfinished
the book his good
father began.

SIn he will not leue the boke he began, 6308
Hys god fader, to whom god gif pardon !

By hym of it gret laud and presiing wan,
For at this day, so me aid god our patron,
Men shall noght fynd nawher suchon. 6312

I believe that no
man hates him,

I beleue that non this good person hate, lo !
I pray to our lord that he may wel doo, 6314

[Fol. 119 b.]
and, indeed, any
one who sought
to harm him
would be a great
sinner.

FOr he hath made A good begynnyng. 6315
And he shold be in synne and crime by ryght,
Which that hym wold ille be purchassyng.

To chersh euery man laborith pis knyght ;
Iff he se that he be good man parfith, 6319

He never refuses
any deserving
man.

No-thing will hym wern pat he lust proclame.
Hym haue I so hurd renommed of fame, 6321

He should be
named Alexander.
I would say much
more,
only men would
say I flatter ;

TThat Allexandre full wel name hym may ; 6322
Off hym mouch more speke and say wold I,

By my feith, ner I ssupposed All-way
That men wold perhaps say I flatery,

because he is still
living ;

For that in lif is he personally, 6326
And thenke men shold not preisse other in
presence ;

For tham shold preise¹ ther werkys diligence 6328

¹ MS. "preife;" Fr. text, *louent*.

- T**hat thai haue done in time passid euer, 6329 and we ought rather to praise the dead ;
 And speking, rehersing the dedes and fet
 Off tho which ben gon that no more may do neuer ;
 Certes men may well of tham speke and tret,
 here tell And declare all ther dedes gret. 6333
 And when god will, men may of my lorde,
 In time to come, thynges off recorde. 6335 yet men will praise my lord in time to come.
- Y**ut I hire moche speke off hys roiall estate, 6336 I hear many speak of his gentleness, countenance, and demeanour ;
 Off his noblesse, gentillesse, and off hys dede,
 Off his contenaunce and mayntenaunce alगत,
 The which I hold of hug noblehed.
 And full noble hold is off manlihed ; 6340
 For discended is fro so hy A place,
 Off kynges, Dukes, Markois full of grace. 6342 for he is descended from kings, dukes, and marquises.
- W**hen conquered¹ haue and enserched well, 6343 [Fol. 120] He is found, on inquiry, to be of high parentage.
 For soth is A man of full hy parage.
 hys engendrure to declare and tell,
 Comyn is he off full noble linage.
 Among other hys wif gracious and sage, 6347 His wife also is humble, courteous, and intent on good ;
 humble, curteis, gentile, debonair,
 And ne musith noght but all good and fair. 6349
- E**uery man seith, " well (As semeth me) 6350 so that they are well met.
 To-geders assembled inly well be thai ;
 Entrelouing non better may be.
 In that astat our lord tham hold alway."
 Thys lady is of perregort, is no nay, 6354 This lady is of Perigord, daughter to the late earl.
 Doughter to the Erle which pat is dede.
 That mariage no mahyme to his kinred, 6356 His marriage is no disgrace to his kindred ;
- F**Or noble line is off Auncionte, 6357 for she too is of a noble line.
 Off long time passed ferre fro memory.
 For in charlemain time antecessour had she ;
 When charlemain had conquered truly
 For when Charle-
 magne had con-
 quered all Guienne

¹ Rather read, "enquered;" Fr. text, *quis*.

and the country
round it,

The hole erldome and contre by werre myghty, 6361
And all Gian, the contre enuiron,
That noble erldome old and auncion, 6363

he gave it to one
of his nigh kins-
men, one of his
cousins-german,

TO on of hys kynnesmen gaff itt ; 6364
In hys roiall gifte he A fair gift had.
His ny kynnesman was, myght not fro flit ;
Hys cosyn germayn, it beleue I sad.
Full well þat Erledome gouerned and lad. 6368

who resided there
till he died.

As men me said, neuer after thens went¹
To no place here ne there thys Erle reuerent, 6370

[Fol. 120 b.]
His inheritance
went to his heirs
male.

As by wifing ne by mariage ; 6371
That Enheritaunce to hoires male went.

There is a place
called Perigord
(Perigueux),
whence this lady
comes.

A strong strenght ther had, called piergort uillage,
Wher-hens is comyn this same day þe discent,
Among peple gracious and sagely hent, 6375
Thys lady full swete and ryght debonair,
To all other lades exemplair, 6377

She lacks nothing
that is lady-like,
but is gentle and
sage.

Well stuffed with all maner of goodnesse. 6378
She noight fauteth þat haue shold A lady ;

What belongith to ladies hynesse
In thys hy lady comprised expresly ;
A connyng woman, well taught & wurthy ; 6382

A very fair mar-
riage was made
between them.

She is so swete, gentile, curteis, & sage ;
Atwexst thaim was had An in fair mariage. 6384

I pray they may
have good issue ;

HERE besech our lorde such line and issew 6385
Tham send, þat may without end endure,
Thys lord and lady of full hy vertu :

Off the line of Fraunce is ther engendrure,
Gret heuinesse were iff issue faille sure ; 6389

some heir to main-
tain the noble
line of Melusine.

Off tham som hair to maintain þat noble line,
Which þat issuede is off fair Melusine, 6391

¹ MS. "wend."

- Off thys goodly hous Als of partenay ;¹
 Off whom no more² lenger will I speke,
 Ne off Melusine whens she cam all-way,
 Ne more of hyr line he will noght out breke,
 Ther-off my speche doñ and my wurdes eke,
 Off that I haue ther-off founden in scripture.
 And of hyr lenger wold I haue spoke sure,
- 6392 I speak no more
 of her nor of Par-
 tenay,

 for I find no more
 recorded.
 6396 I would have said
 more,
 6398
- If more of writyng therof founde myght be.
 But more can not find in litterall scripture
 Off thes creatures wrete of uerite,
 Off whom haue spoke and told the Auenture ;
 No more then haue put in my tale sure.
 And sin more ther-of I can noght propose,
 Of-fors moste I here take rest and repose.
- 6399 [Fol. 121]
 could I have found
 more.

 6403 There is no more
 than I have al-
 ready told,
 so that I must
 now perforce take
 rest.
 6405
- Now me behouith my shippe vnto rest,
 Sailles, cordes, And bonet put doñ.
 God be thanked, at port riued in þe beste,
 The sees dangere haue passed and gone,
 The wawes of see ouer ron echon
 By my iournaes so thourght-out the see ;
 Therof preise and thanke the hy Trinite,
- 6406 Now must my
 ship rest.

 6410 Thank God, I
 have arrived at
 port, and the
 dangers of the
 sea are past.
 6412
- By whom thys dite fourged haue and made.
 Thanking therof be to our lorde again,
 By whom Romans and boke is to end lad.
 And yf Any man demaunde hou certain,
 What me shall call thys Romans souerain,
 hit name the Romans As of partenay,
 And so som it call certes at this day ;
- 6413 I thank God, by
 whom the book
 has been brought
 to an end.

 6417 If any one wants
 to know the *name*
 of this romance,
 it is "THE RO-
 MANS OF PARTE-
 NAY,"
 6419
- OR the romans of lusignen ; now chese,
 By you electe be which þat take ye will.
 Name ye it so As it may you plese,
 Here Anon Couldrette pese hym shal & still ;
- 6420 or, "THE ROMANS
 OF LUSIGNEN ;"
 choose which you
 like.
 Here shall Coul-
 drette hold his
 peace,

¹ MS. "apartenay." ² MS. "nomore."

saving that he
will here make
his orison,

Os of this mater no more say you till, 6424

Sauyng for to make here hys orison
Now here presently, As is good reson, 6426

[Fol. 121 b.]
putting it into the
form of a litany ;
and when this
litany is done, the
book shall end,

Puttyng it forth in fourme of letany, 6427
For all the noble line of partenay

Aforne named ; and when she truly
Shall be ended that haue comprised ay,
After thys prayer to take end al-way, 6431

and Couldrette
shall hold his
peace.

Then all the hole werke is fourged & made,
And couldrette then in pes shal be had.¹ 6433

O Glorious
Trinity, Three
Persons in One,

Glorious, celestious Trinite, 6434
Sacred deid incomperable,

One Essence,
Sovereign Ma-
jesty,

Threfold persones knitte in vnite,
And on essence^e etern, permanable,
Souerain mageste moste honourable, 6438

that haet made
summer, winter,
and all things,

Which somer, wynter made by hys excellence,
All thatt is and hath be by hys huge prudence,

Thou knowest all
our thoughte,
and the consci-
ences of men.

Thou knowist all that hertes thenke or muse, 6441
All thynges thou seest in thy presence,

Off herttes knowist that thai daly vse,
Off verray trouth knowist ther conscience.

Man oweth Thee
due obedience,
and diligence in
Thy service.

Man owith to the dew obedience, 6445

Owith deligent be the to commende,
To thy seruice take As thaim to diffende. 6447

Here humbly I
pray Thee to have
mercy and pity
on this lord and
lady ;

By good frendlyhed of thy deite, 6448
here in humbly wise pray thy excellence

Off tham to haue mercy, grace, and pite,
Without tham shewing any uiolence.
here in my dite haue put to thy presence. 6452

and to succour
them in adversity.

In aduersite socur thaim alway,
That full noble seed of saide pertenay. 6454

¹ The Cambridge copy of the French Romance ends here.

² MS. "enfence ;" but see l. 6435.

- G**lorius virgin, Mayden, moder off god, 6455 [Fol. 122]
 Doughter and Ancelle, which milkest *with-all*
 The sone of god *with* thy brestes brod,
 Wurthily hym bare *with-out* werke carnall ;
 Which theophillus confortd principall ; 6459
 Comfort this line þat noble is all-way,
 Besides Rochell As of Partenay. 6461
 Glorious Virgin,
 mother, daughter,
 and hand-maiden
 of God, that didst
 nourish Thy
 divine Son, and
 didst also comfort
 Theophilus ;
 comfort this line
 of Partenay.
- S**aynt Mychaell, Angell, and the Archangell, 6462
 To thaim be not strange, I you here require.
 Caste thaim oute fro all fendes of hell,
 And thaim condute to the heuinly empire.
 Off god conueying maister be entire, 6466
 lyn, wolle to uesture haue thay *without* fail.
 The besech not strange be thaim to consaill. 6468
 Saint Michael,
 archangel, protect
 them from the
 fiends of hell ;
 and let them have
 linen and woollen
 vesture.
- S**aynt Iohan, *with* finger shewdest I beleue 6469
 The deuyne lambe which was full precyous.
 All gloriou patriarkes in breue,
 Tham ne me for-yete noght, ye glorious ;
 Iff I thaim for-gatte, I were malerous. 6473
 Now if it you please, me *with* thaim making
 To Accorde vnto the moste souerain kyng. 6475
 Saint John the
 Baptist, that didst
 show men the
 Lamb, and all ye
 glorious patri-
 archs, forget them
 not.
- S**aynt Peter, saynt Paule, and saynt Andrew, 6476
 All postelles of god, for your curtesy,
 In obliuy be noght this issew
 Fro-whens such noblesse cometh vnto ey,
 Sparcled into landes and places many ; 6480
 That conquered haue many a noble place
 By ther noblesse and chiualrous purchase. 6482
 St. Peter, St. Paul,
 St. Andrew, and
 all apostles, let
 not this noble line
 be forgotten that
 hath spread so far.
- S**aint Steuin, seint Vincent, seint Lauarence, 6483
 And ye, Saynt Clement, *with-all* seint Denise,
 Which all frendes bene to goddes hy essence,
 your bodies haue offered by grett auisse
 [Fol. 122 b.]
 St. Stephen, St.
 Vincent, St. Law-
 rence, St. Clement,
 St. Dionysius,

- and all ye holy
martyrs,
To greuous torment with huge tirandisse, 6487
And all martirised, like or semblable,
Which in heuyns regne in ioy perdurable, 6489
- grant that we may
dwell for ever in
heaven,
IN the hy paradise celestiall, 6490
For your fair dedes and wurdes also.
Make that we be comprised eternall
Finabilly without any ende me to,¹
Where regneth the fader and the sone, lo ! 6494
And the holy gost in heuyns full hy,
And shall for euer perdurably. 6496
- where reign the
Father, the Son,
and the Holy
Ghost.
Saynt Siluestre, seint Augustin, your grace ; 6497
Saynt Martin, seynt More, saynt Seuerine,
Saynt Cuthbert, seynt Germain, seint Nicholas,
And all confessours by rew to deuine,
Besech, in obliuy putt not thys line, 6501
Off whome treted haue in my tale and lay ;
But out of bandes, good seintes, alway 6503
- let not this line be
forgotten,
but guard them
from the fiends
that come at the
third hour or at
mid-day :
Thaim warde, put, and cast fro the fendes fell, 6504
Which that comyth at thirde hour or midday,
(And more oftener then can say or tell),
Fro hynesse to lownesse us to put alway.
Make vs to haue þat solas euer and ay 6508
Off the celestiall heuynly spere,
After wrecchyd lif worly beyng here. 6510
- grant us the solace
of the celestial
sphere.
[Fol. 123]
St. Mary Magda-
len, I pray to thee.
Saynt Mary Magdeline, humble and demure, 6511
I you here require with hautain uois fine,
With pensiff muses of hert clene And pure ;
Saint Agnes, seint Edith, seint katerine,
That if you please to take the paine & pine 6515
To beseke our lord, vs conuey and bring
Aboue unto the ioy euerlasting. 6517
- St. Agnes, St.
Edith, St. Catha-
rine, be pleased to
beseech our Lord
to save us.

¹ MS. "to me to."

- A**ll goddes frendes blessed and Holy, 6518 All ye friends of
Humbly you beseke *with* ioynt handes twain, God,
That ye do so our sinnes vndo fully, put away our sins,
And that acquaint [vs] with our souerain, that we feel not
So *pat* of hell we haue no point of pain; 6522 hell-pain,
But to herbourgh vs *with* his blissed saintes but dwell with
In heuen where And is no complaintes. 6524 the saints in
heaven.
- L**ord swet Iesus, be to vs debonair; 6525 Lord Jesu, grant
Do noght again thaim of whom I haue told that nothing may
Thing *pat* thaim may torñ thaim in contrair; turn to their
Warde thaim fro bande of our aduersary bold, harm.
Which many man hath brought vnto his hold. 6529 Guard them from
For thi pusaunce and debonair renou, our aduersary,
Do make vs come to our sauacion. 6531 and save us all.
- S**wete lorde god, swete fader heritable, 6532 Sweet Lord God,
Warde vs fro bandes of the cruell fend; our Father, guard
As short wurdres, vs hold in our purpose stable, us from the fend;
That neuer we torñe bake, ne the offende. grant that we
Amiable and piteable be to us at end, 6536 offend Thee not,
That we may haue the perdurabilnesse but may gain ever-
Off ioy aboue, And uerray rest vs dresse. 6538 lasting bliss.
- S**wet lorde Iesu, *pat* all thyng hast to iuge, 6539 [Fol. 123 b.]
I the here besech *with* hole hert entire, Jesu, that shalt
Make us the ryght path go to our refuge, judge all,
And the way of sauacion to acquire, teach us the way
To wepe and complain our synne cruell yre; 6543 of salvation,
So we may the preise after our last day that we may
Perdurably in felicity ay. 6545 praise Thee here-
after for ever.
- I**yilde now thankes, after this letany, 6546 The transacion.¹
To the sacred glorious Trinite,

¹ These two words, here written in the margin of the MS., mark the beginning of the translator's *own* epilogue.

I yield thanks,
after this prayer,
to God, the Virgin,
saints, martyrs,
and confessors,
that I have now
translated this.

To cristes moder, the Virgin mary,
Seint Mihell, seint Iohaⁿ, apostellis that be,
Martires, confessours, ech in ther deg[r]e, 6550
Virgins, seintes al, that this haue translat
Fro¹ frensh till english at this present dat. 6552

I have done it
in order,
as closely as I
could, almost
line by line,
saying that I
have often had to
change the order
of words,
as when men
write Latin verse.

As ny as metre can conclude sentence, 6553
Cereatly by rew in it haue I go.
Nerehande stafe by staf, by gret diligence,
Sauyng þat I most metre apply to ;
The wourdes meue, and sett here & ther so, 6557
like As of latin ho-so will fourge uers ;
Wourdes² most he change sondry & diuerse, 6559

Whoever trans-
lates in metre,
must do this,

Whilom þat be-fore put, And sette behynd, 6560
And oft that at end gretth³ best before ;

So oft trauersing the langage me shall fynd,
Be it latyn, frensh, or our tonge to-bore.
ho it metre will, so do moste euermore, 6564

whether in ballad,
verse, rime, or
metrical prose.

Be it in baledé, uers, Rime, or prose,
He most torn and wend, metrelly to close. 6566

[Fol. 124]
Yet have I pre-
served, I trust,
the matter un-
hurt, without ex-
cess or diminu-
tion,

making it intel-
ligible in our
mother tongue.

And so haue I done after my simplesse, 6567
Preseruing, I trust, mater and sentence
Vnwemmed,⁴ vnhurt, for any excesse,
Or by menusing don by violence.
Warded and kepte haue to intelligens, 6571
That will vnderstande And knowin may⁵ be
In our moder tonge, spoken in contre. 6573

Perchance I
may have made
an oversight,

Perhaps by lachesse, or by negligence, 6574
Ou[e]-r-sight myght cause obliuion,
Or paraurenture do cause and offence.
Gretly is it noght, hurtyng no reson,

¹ MS. "For." ² MS. "Worudes." ³ "greeth" (?).
⁴ MS. "Vnwmmmed." ⁵ MS. "many."

By no menes of imperfeccion.

I trust to conserue mater and substance

Greable vnto the reders plesaunce.

6578 but it is no great
one,
not such as to vio-
late the sense.

6580

Als the frensh staffes silabled be
More breueloker and shorter also

Then is the english lines vnto see,

That comperhended¹ in on may lines to ;

And in such wise sondry times haue do ;

Or ellys man myght by computacion

In ther contrepaine finde others reson,

6581 Also the French
lines haue fewer
[eight] syllables
than the English,

so that two lines
may be put into
one;

6585

and I haue some-
times done so.

6587

In frensh or english, whether A man shold
The mater to preue by iuste probacion.

And so As it is truly fynde, I wold

Both bokes displaide to vision,

Verefie I wold the declaracioñ,

That on by other knowen well shold be,

Resembling well All o ssoule dite.

6588

I would that both
bookes could be
seen at once,
that if any man
wants to count
the lines, he
might see how
closely they are
alike.

6592

6594

All fourged and doñ, thys here make an end,
Besechyng your hy notable gentillesse,

That to my fauor ye now condisceñd

Off your hy wurthy soueraynesse,

In whom contained hugely is noblesse,

Though that diffaultes apperen in use,

yut of your mercy my simplese excuse,

6595 [Fol. 124 b.]
Here I make an
end; and beseech
you,

6599 in whom is all
nobleness,
to excuse all
faults,

6601

Sin at your request and commaundement
This warke on me toke, it to fourge and make ;

And so haue I doñ, after myne entent,

With litterall carettes for your sake ;

Tham conueying in sable lines blake

6602 since it was at
your request I
made the transla-
tion,
and wrote it out
from end to end
in black lines.

6606

¹ sic in MS.

Directly along thys haue I to end,
 After my simplese so forth passe and wende. 6608

Now all ye that
 read this, remem-
 ber my simple-
 ness;
 though this book
 is not painted (for
 I cannot flourish),
 yet excuse all
 faults that you
 may see.

NOW ye all that shall thys behold or rede, 6609
 Remembreth myn unconnyng simplese ;
 Thought rethoriously peinted be not in-dede,
 As other han doñ by ther discretnesse.
 Sin florish can noght, yut, of your gentillesse, 6613
 Though that diffaultes appere huge to ey,
 yut excusith me, besech you hertly. 6615

Explicit.

NOTES TO THE PROLOGUE.

Page 1, l. 1. The lines numbered 1—77 are, apparently, the original composition of the English translator. The passage is incomplete at the commencement. (See Preface.)

4. *Iff aught here might fourge*, If *I* might here accomplish. The omission of the personal pronoun occurs continually throughout the poem, and the reader's attention is here drawn to the fact, once for all, that he may readily perceive the construction of other passages. Thus, in l. 11, *myght* is written for *I myght*; and so again in l. 21, where *aunter wyl me* = I will adventure myself.

5. *fauting connynghede*, lacking skill.

8. Here we find the omission, not of the pronoun, but of the auxiliary verb; *I not aqueynted of birth naturall* = I am not acquainted, by natural birth.

9. MS. "freshe," an obvious error.

16. *president*, precedent; *i. e.* the original French Romance.

20. The only attempt at ornament in the MS. is that the initial letter of each stanza is rather larger than others, and painted red.

21. *aunter*, shortened from *aventure*, adventure. The still more contracted form *anterus* (for *adventurous*) occurs in *Lancelot of the Laik*, l. 2618.

P. 2, l. 25. *eche houred brayd*, each particular time. See the Glossary, under *Houred* and *Brayd*.

31. In consulting the very brief "proëm" to the "notable book" of Valerius Maximus, the reader will not find what our author here says he will; but some such passage may have been added in some copy by a commentator. The only passage in that author which at all agrees with the text is the following, addressed to Tiberius, which is certainly "notable":—"Te igitur huic cœpto, penes quem hominum deorumque consensus maris ac terræ regimen esse uoluit, certissima

salus patriæ, Cæsar, inuoco, cuius cælesti providentia uirtutes, de quibus dicturus sum, benignissime fouentur, uitia seuerissime uindicantur. Nam si prisci oratores ab Ioue optimo maximo bene orsi sunt, si excellentissimi uates a numine aliquo principia traxerunt, mea paruitas eo iustius ad fauorem tuum decucurrerit, quo cetera diuinitas opinione colligitur, tua præsentī fide paterno auitoque sideri par uidetur, quorum eximio fulgore multum cærimoniis nostris inclitæ alacritatis accessit. Reliquos enim deos accepimus, Cæsares dedimus. Et quoniam initium a cultu deorum petere in animo est, de condicione eius summam disseram.”—*Valerius Maximus*; ed. Kempfius, p. 1.

The concluding words are just such as would tempt a commentator to add to his author.

36—42. What this stanza belongs to is not clear. It certainly seems out of place.

45. *fantesied*, fancied, imagined.

46. *maligne gastes*, evil spirits.

50. *valoure*, efficacy.

P. 3, l. 52. *miscreantes*, unbelievers.

78. Here our author ceases to be original, and becomes a translator, ll. 78—210 being a close rendering of the Prologue to the French Romance. In order to give the reader a clear idea of the manner in which the translation is executed, the whole of the French “proëm” is given below. (See p. 229.) The philosopher alluded to in l. 78 is Aristotle, the first sentence of his “Metaphysics” being—*Πάντες ἄνθρωποι τοῦ εἰδέναι ὀρέγονται φύσει*. All men by nature are actuated by the desire of knowledge.

P. 4, l. 84. The sentence, as here, is often left incomplete at the end of a stanza, being continued in the stanza that follows.

96. *loos*, praise. The French has *los*.

97. *perceuale*; see Tyrwhitt, Note to v. 13844 of the *Cant. Tales*, or my note to the same (Group B, l. 2106).

98. *lo!* The reader will soon be accustomed to the continual introduction of this and other expletive words and phrases.

P. 5, l. 118. *scripture*, writing.

121. *peiters*, Poitiers. So too in *Morte Arthur*; ed. G. G. Perry; l. 40. The use of *ei* for *oi* is Anglo-French.

126. *uern*, refuse to do; Fr. *escondiroie* (= shun).

135. *lesigne*; the final *n* seems to be accidentally omitted. It is generally spelt *lesignen* or *lusignen* in other places.

139. “I” seems required before “said,” to complete the line.

141. *iornay*, toil; lit. a *day's* work.

142. *faire* in the MS. should be *fairie*; see l. 148.

P. 6, l. 157. *lose wil non hent*, I desire to receive no praise. See l. 96.

162. “Since it (*i. e.* a rimed French copy) hath already been constructed and composed.”

164. *to fade*, to set in order, dispose, arrange.

174. *preuyd at devise*, executed or fashioned with exactness. The Fr. has *appointez*, from the Lat. *approximatus*.

178. *salz and Barry*, a periphrasis for Salisbury. See p. 231, l. 109.

P. 7, l. 181. "He always spake, in all his words, to the same effect as the above-said books relate. (And *I* say) that book is compiled from three others (so say men who speak about it); and, indeed, as to its origin I know of no doubt, as I have formerly myself seen the substance of it." Such seems to be the general meaning of this vague and ill-constructed sentence, the like of which are only too abundant throughout the poem. Compare the original French (given at p. 232) which seems more intelligible.

194. "Here shall ye hear this history's labour;" *historie* is in the genitive case, the case being merely marked by its position; so also, in l. 192, we have *castell strength* = castle's strength; *shall ye here* corresponds with the French *vous orez*.

200. "Clear well or true pillar;" Fr. *la clere fontaine ou puiise*. *Well* answers to *fontaine*, but *puiise* should have been translated *well* or *spring*. The translator was thinking of *apui* or *pui*, a support.

201. We should probably read *The maker, of whom all lyff doth ensew*; but, even then, the translation is incorrect.

204. *require*, pray.

The French proëin alluded to at p. 228 is here subjoined.

L E phylosophe fut moult saige,	[Fol. 1]
Qui dit en la premiere page	
De sa noble methafisique,	
Que humain entendement saplicque	4
Naturelement a concepuoir,	
Et a apprendre, et a scauoir.	
Cest tresbien dit et saigement ;	
Car tout humain entendement	8
Desire venir a ce point	
De sauoir ce quil ne scayt point,	
Ou soit dhonneur ou de Reprouche,	
Et mesmement quant Il luy touche.	12
Les choses des longtems passees	
Plaisent quant Ilz sont Recordees,	
Mais quilz soyent bonnes et belles,	
Trop plus que ne font les nouuelles.	16
On parle moult du Roy artus,	[Fol. 1 b.]
Qui veult esprouuer les vertus	
Des cheualiers nobles et gens ;	
Encores en parlent moult de gens.	20
Et si fait len de Lancelots	
Ou quel Il y ot tant de los ;	

De partenay, ¹ et de gauvain,	
Qui neurent oncques le cuer vain	24
Pour acquerir honneur et pris ;	
Ilz firent comme bien aprins.	
Qui vouldroit sauoir et enquerre,	
Et par la mer et par la terre,	28
les merueilleuses auentures	
Qui aduiennent aux creatures,	
Sauoir est excellente chose.	
Car tout ainsi comme la Rose	32
Sur toutes fleurs est la plus fine,	
Aussi est france ² la plus digne ;	
Qui Riens ne scet (.) Il ne vault Rien.	
Si affiert a tous hommes de bien	36
Denquerre moult fort des hystoires,	
Qui sont de longtaines memoires ;	
Et tant est plus de hault degre,	
Doit Il, [de] degre en degre,	40
Sauoir dont Il est dessendus.	
Soit Roy (.) Baron, Conte, ou Ducs,	
Sy que memoire longue en soit.	[Fol. 2]
Tout grant seigneur faire le doit.	44
Et en faire escrire hystoire,	
Affin quen telle soit memoire.	
Pour tant len dit que vng grant seigneur	
De poitou, (a cui dieu croisse honneur !)	48
Nomme sire de partenay,	
Auquel tout droit Iay assenay,	
Me commanda, na pas granment,	
Et de son propre assentement. ³	52
Commandement auoit Il bien ;	
Si ne lescondiroie de Rien ;	
Car chascun scet et peut veoir,	
Quon doit a grant seigneur obeyr ;	56
Qui ne le fait, Il nest pas saige.	
Sy me dit en son doulx langaige,	
Que Ie prenisse lexemplaire	
Du sien liuret quauoit fait faire ;	60
Et, de fait, Il le me bailla,	
pour en sauoir moult qui en tailla	
Lusignen le chasteau nobile ;	
Aussi qui fist faire la ville ;	64
Car cest vng tresmerueilleux fort.	
Lors Respondy, " Ie my accord,	

¹ parcenal (?).² Sic in MS. Mis-written for "science."³ MS. assentement.

Monseigneur, a vostre plaisir."	
"faictes," dit Il, "tout a losir,	68
Car toute est vostre La Journee.	[Fol. 2 b.]
Le chasteau est fait dune faee,	
Sycomme est par tout Retrait,	72
Da laquelle Je suis extraict,	
Et moy, et toute ma lignie	
De partenay; nen doubtez mye.	
Mellusine fut appellee	
La faee, que vous ay nommee;	76
Dequoy les armes nous portons,	
Parquoy souuent nous deportons;	
Et affin quil en soit memoire,	
Vous mectray ¹ en Ryme hystoire;	80
[A line is here lost; cf. p. 6, l. 153.]	
Car Je vueil quelle soit plus Renommee."	
"Las dit, monseigneur; Je loctroye;	84
Tousiours vostre plaisir feroye,	
Se faisoit a ma voulente;	
Ne la nul Iour Je ny fauldray.	
Je le feray a mon pouoir,	
Mais pas nen vueil le loz auoir,	88
Se loz y a; car autreffoiz	
Elle a este mise en franchois,	
Et Rymee, sicomme on compte;	
Pourquoy ce me seroit grant honte	92
De moy vanter de cestui fait.	
[A line is here lost; cf. p. 6, l. 162.]	
Mais a mon pouoir Je feray	
Tant, se dieu plaist, que le mectray	[Fol. 3] 96
Dautre forme, se Iay losir,	
Qui mieulx vous vendra au plaisir,	
Quant lautre pas bien ne vous haitie;	100
Et que vous plaist que Je le mette	
Selon les liures quon trouua,	
Dont listoire on approuua,	
Et affin que on labregon.	
Dedens la tour de manbregeon	104
Deux beaulx liures furent trouuez,	
En latin, et tous approuimez,	
Quon fist translater en francois	
Et puis, apres cinq ou six mois,	108
Comme celle hystoire Amery,	
Le Conte de salebry,	
Dun liure quauoit du chastel	
Qui tant par est et fort et bel;	112

¹ mectrez (?).

Car Il parloit en tous ses dis, De tous les fais <i>que</i> Je vous dis. ' De trouez fut vostre liure extraict,' Ainsi le dit Il et Retraict,	116
' Et se querez comme le sceu, Cest par ce quautrefois lay veu.' Sy mectray toute ma puissance De le mettre en bonne ordonnance,	120
Au plaisir du doulx Iesucrist." [Fol. 3 b.] Monseigneur respont, ¹ "cest bien dist." Lors prins congie de monseigneur, A qui dieu doint Ioye et honneur!	124
Et men vins tout droit au chasteau De lusignen, qui tant est beau, Dont vous orez briefment lystoire, Mais quil plaise au Roy de gloire	128
De men donner le sentement, Sans lequel on ne fait nyent, Soit en francois ou en ebreu ; Tout science vient de dieu ;	132
Cest la clere fontaine ou paise, Tout faiseur le fait quil aduise. Se ² luy vient tout le bien quon pence, ¹ Nul na de dieu si non science.	136
Se ² luy Requiers de ceur entier Qua cest besoing me vueille aidier. Et la tresglorieuse mere Vueille conduire ceste matiere,	140
Affin que Je puisse acheuer Ceste euure que Je vueil Reueler, Au bon plaisir de monseigneur, A cui dieu doint ennuyt bon Iour,	144
Et en sa fin la Ioye fine! Ainsi nostre prologue fine.	

¹ MS. "Refont," with "respont" written above it.

² De (?).

NOTES TO THE POEM,

* * The references to *Melusine* are to the prose romance, edited by A. K. Donald for the E.E.T.S., 1895.

P. 8, l. 4. Here, as in l. 523, we find in the MS. "hie and has." But other passages show that it should be "hie and bas," i. e. high and low. See ll. 927, 945.

6. *astronomie* here answers to what we now call *astrology*, which is also its meaning in *Lancelot of the Laik*, l. 432. Cf. *Melusine*, p. 20.

7. *clergie*, science. Fr. *clergie*.

8. *right Canoun*, canon law; as explained by the Fr. *droit canon*.

10. *I-now*, enough.

14. *cowde*, knew.

P. 9, l. 31. *machon*. The Fr. has *machonnee*.

34. *columbere*. The Fr. has *coulombiers*, a proper name. See *Melusine*, p. 19.

36. According to De la Mure, this "earl of Forest" was Guy, first of that name, Count of Lyon and Forez, who, by marriage with Sibille de Beaujeu, had several children (see l. 37), among whom were three sons; viz. his successor, Guy II., Guillaume, who became a monk, and Raymondin. Raymondin is the hero of the present romance, and was named after Raymond de Viennois, his grandfather. De la Mure, p. 489. For a long discussion of the names "Forez" and "Beaujeu," see p. 8 of the same work. The arms of the earls of Forest were gules, a dolphin, or; a drawing of them is given at p. 152 of De la Mure.

44. *Cosyn*, i. e. relative, brother-in-law. According to *Melusine* (p. 18) the earl of Forests married the sister of the earl of Poitiers.

45. "Who heard this news at that *time*;" lit. *interval*.

49. That "traying" is an error for "tarying" is proved by the French, which has "atargier," a by-form of "atarder."

51. *sayn*, seen.

52. *he send*, he sent to.

P. 10, l. 77. "For such learning I shall instruct him in and teach."

80. *on your plesire*, at your pleasure.

P. 11, l. 98. *thought*, taught; Fr. *enseigne*. Probably miswritten. See l. 76.

114. "Raymond after this, against his (own) will, did slay him; cast stone-dead to earth, he must incline to death." The French has,

"Car Raymondin si le tua,
Et mort a terre le Rua."

P. 12, l. 137. *sewing*, following.

140. "Where there came to him then great mischief and terror."
 144. *thaim to*, them two.
 P. 13, l. 152. The speaker is the earl. The French has, "Lors dit a Raymon, venez ca." See l. 158.
 163. *an hie*, on high. See l. 189.
 P. 14, l. 178. *thought*, though. So in l. 6611.
 189. *an hie*, on high; Fr. *en hault*. See l. 163. This prescience of impending death is probably copied from the Romance of Alexander. See Wars of Alexander, ed. Skeat, p. 22; Gower, ed. Pauli, iii. 78.
 192. *profite*. The Fr. has *peril*; but the English gives the better sense.
 197. *sothlese*, truly. It might seem that the earl is expressing a wish that the "strange adventures" were "untrue;" but other passages go to prove that the writer actually commits the mistake of making *sothlese* mean *truly*. See Glossary.
 203. *for ille doing*, i. e. in return for ill-doing.
 P. 15, l. 207. "I shall surely declare to thee."
 217. *and shall*, and shall come to pass.
 219. *a foote*, on foot.
 220. MS. "a." Perhaps "at" should have been written; for the spelling *a* may be due to the French, in which *a* here occurs. See l. 223.
 228. *in that other party*, on the other side; or, for his part. Fr. *d'autre part*.
 P. 16, l. 244. "And when that came to pass, the sword went adown;" i. e. glanced aside. See l. 249.
 247. One of the "*hym*"s is redundant; viz. the *former*.
 251. The translator has here made several mistakes, and considerably injured the story. He makes the earl die by the boar's tusks, and so all Raymond's subsequent self-reproaches are out of place. The French version is that Raymond's sword glances off the boar's back and cuts Aymery's body open, so that ll. 255—258 refer to Aymery, not to the boar. After this he "withdraws his sword," and again striking at the boar, succeeds in killing it at once. The German version is much better. According to this, Aymery aims at the boar with his spear as it is rushing at him, and slightly wounds it, but is himself thrown down. Raymond, coming to the rescue, seizes the earl's spear, and thrusts at the boar; but the spear, glancing aside, pierces the earl's body. Raymond immediately withdraws the spear, and with a second thrust kills the boar; and then, turning to the earl, finds him already dead. See Tieck, *Schriften*; 13ter hand, s. 75; and the "Volksbuch" version; also the frontispiece to *Melusine*, ed. A. K. Donald, E.E.T.S., 1895.
 Perhaps, however, the English *prose* romance tells the story best of all, viz. as follows.
 "[I]N this part Recounteth thystory that whan Raymondyn cam ayenst the said bore for to kepe hym that he should not hurte his lord, the bore anoone hurted¹ to hym & ranne fast toward the Erle, whiche seeyng the wyld bore comme, lefte his swerd and toke a short spere and strayght held it downward before hym. And the Erle, that knew & wyst moche of the chasse, broched the bore thrughe the brest, but the Erle felle doun on his knees. And thanne Raymondyn holdyng hys swerde in

¹ Sic in MS. We should have expected to find *hasted*; but see *heurter*, to dash, in Cotgrave.

his hand came toward the bore, and wold haue smytte hym betwene the foure legges, For he leye vpsodouñ, the bely vpward; and suche a stroke gaaf Raymoundyn to the bore, that the blade of hys swerde brake, so that the poynte of it sprang ayenst the Erlis stomak & wounded hym sore, in so muche that he deyed therof."—*fol. 12 b.* See *Melusine*, p. 25.

266. As any on this side of Roine. The Fr. text has *de cy a Rome*, a proverbial phrase for *everywhere*. Compare "hethen into grece;" *Allit. Poems*, ed. Morris; l. 231 of *The Pearl*.

P. 17, l. 274. The Fr. text has, *Tu nas compere ne commere*, which is not very clear.

279. Apparently this means, "In thee (is) no will (to) strain to help greatest or least." The French simply says,

En toy na Ryme ne Raison.

291. *rewardyd*, regarded.

P. 18, l. 304. The sense is, "But cursed be the hour when I was born, or (the fact) that I, living, so long keep (my) wretched life." *Worly* stands for *wordly* = worldly; i. e. born into the world.

323. Fr. *La fontaine de soif Iolye*. See *Melusine*, p. 27.

324. The MS. reading *canne* is an obvious blunder for *came*; Fr. text,

Quon dit qui vient de faerie.

P. 19, l. 343. *goodlokest*; lit. *goodliest*; see Glossary.

345. *gayn night*, towards night; Fr. "au soir." *Where* = whether.

354. *say*, essay.

358. *fantessie*; the Fr. has "fantosme."

359. *where*, whether; as above, l. 345; so again in l. 384.

P. 20, l. 386. *hys*; read *thys*, i. e. thus, as in l. 297.

P. 21, l. 393. *astate*, estate. Fr. *estat*.

403. *that instance*, then; an expletive expression, *metri gratiâ*.

405. *Ameruelled*; Fr. *esmerueillies*.

407. The MS. has simply *You named but*. The translator's copy may have been at fault here, and hence even this half line may have been written by guess-work. The French is clear, the passage running thus,

Et, par ma foy, le ne congnois mye
Vostre nom, ne vostre philosomye,
Ou Iaparcoy si grant beaulte.

The word "philosomye," in which the *l* is written over a long "f" lying beneath it, is obviously intended for *phisonomye*, i. e. physiognomy, spelt *visnomie* by Spenser, and *fisnomie* in the *Promptorium Parvulorum*. I have no doubt that l. 407 should end with this word, but it is difficult to connect it with *You named but*.

411. *recover*; Fr. *recourer*.

P. 22, l. 425. *reioyng*, rejoicing, i. e. rejoicing. There are other instances of similar strange spelling in the poem, and it need not be altered to *reioyng*. Cf. note to l. 482.

427. How *she* might know his name; cf. *Melusine*, p. 30.

442. *tarie* is an error, the Fr. not having *tarie*, but *taire*. So too, in the next line, *me* is an error for *ne*; the sense being, "I may no-wise keep silence, so as not to ask you the truth."

Mais le ne me pourroye taire,
Que ne vous demandasse voir.

449. *you councel*, I counsel you.

P. 23, l. 452. *of wordly* (= worldly) *goods*; Fr. *des biens*.

453. *light*, lieth.

459. And do not fear that I am not on God's part, (and that) I believe not in His miracles; cf. *Melusine*, p. 31, l. 7.

472. I firmly believe.

479. *unto devise*, a mere expletive phrase. It is not in the French, yet is imitated from the Fr. *à devise* = so to speak.

482. *withsaing*; cf. *gaynsayng* in l. 485.

P. 24, l. 487. That the MS. *betaking* is an error for *be taking* is shown by the French,

Que me *prendrez* a mariaige.

488. *leuing*, life. Fr. *vie*.

P. 25, l. 520. *werne*, refuse.

522. *aplas*, in place, i. e. in company; see Nares' Glossary.

523. The MS. reading *has* is a blunder for *bas*, as in l. 4; cf. l. 540, "lie and lowe;" and l. 2735.

528. *that houred tyde*, that time; a mere expletive, like *that stounde* in l. 532. And see l. 2695.

P. 26, l. 548. *resceyued*, received. Wherever this word occurs, it is written so as to look like "resteyned," owing to the practice of the scribe in making "sc" resemble "st," and "u" resemble "n." But the French decides the word in all cases, as it employs the verb *recevoir*.

552. *the Erle last past*; i. e. the late earl; Fr. *derrain trespassez* (*sc. de la vie*) = lately deceased.

554. In the prose romance, this incident occurs at a later date; see *Melusine*, p. 39.

557. Make deeds thereof, (and let) the cause be thereon, (that men) may see the reason of the lord's gift.

Faictes que vous en ayez lecture,
Et y faictes la cause mectre
Du don, et par quelle achoison
On le vous liure, et quel Raison.
Et mectez le Iour quon vous liure
Le don, et quon le vous deliure.

574. And afterward betake you to your return; a periphrasis for, afterwards return again; cf. l. 563. The French has,

Et puis vous mectez en Repaire.

P. 27, l. 579. MS. "finde" is an obvious error for "finde." Fr. *trouerez*.

584. *do it to remayn*; here *remayn* is an Anglicized form of the Fr. *ramener*, and the phrase means, extend it, drag it along towards the valley, along the stream which issues from the fountain. See l. 725, note.

Et se le courgeon plus long porte
Que le Ront que fait trouerez,
Contre le val le Ramenez.

604. *coursere*, Fr. *Roncin*.

P. 28, l. 611. Perhaps this means, The soul (of the dead) accused not the author of its death. But it is really a curious blunder arising from mistaking the sense of *Ame*.

Ame du sort ne laccusa,

i. e. No soul accused him of the event, i. e. of the deed.

616. The Fr. text has *bachelor*.

618. *hym*, like *his* in the next line, refers to the late earl.

625. *he*, *sc.* the late earl; see next line.

In the MS. *myght* is mis-written, being copied from the line above. It should be *nyght*; as the Fr. has *la nygt*.

P. 29, l. 665. *bas*, downwards.

P. 30, l. 671. *lady lore*, lady's teaching; so again in l. 705.

691. *lete make*, cause to be made; a common expression.

P. 31, l. 694. Fr. *seel*, which justifies the correction.

696. Compare the expression in the Bible, "hath set-to his seal," Gk. ἰσφράγισεν. *S. John* iii. 33.

718. *To men*, two men, who were doubtless sent by Melusine to assist Raymond; see *Melusine*, p. 44.

721. The MS. has either *pam*, or *pain* with the *i* undotted; at l. 724 the word is *pame*. In both cases a better reading would be *pale*, for the Fr. has in both places *pel*, which = Lat. *palus*, a pale, a stake. Tieck also has "einen Pfahl;" and the prose romance has "a stake."

P. 32, l. 725. The English version has missed the sense.

Puis lont emporte contre val,
Car Il tenoit trop au pal;
Tout du long vng Rousseau sourdit,
Dont chascun forment sesbahit.

Then they bare it towards the valley, for it kept too close to the stake. All along beside it a rill welled up, whereat every one was much astounded. See *Melusine*, p. 44.

728. *stoned*, astonished.

P. 33, l. 755. The insertion of *I* seems necessary to the metre and sense. Fr. "Car vraiment *Je* le voudroie."

759. *Raymond* answered to *the count*; thus the Fr. text, and this explains ll. 761, 762.

762. *if your lord wyll*, if the Lord will; Fr. *se dieu plaist*.

765. *thrust* (*sic*), thirst; see l. 323, and the note.

768. *wel thought*, well taught. Fr. *senez*, which means sage, prudent.

778. The Fr. is less obscure.

Il ne fist peu
Qu'il nait demande au corps gent
De la dame, dont tant de gent
Comme il veoit, pouoient venir;
"Ia ne vous en fault esbahir,"
Dist la dame, "tous sont a vous."
A donc leur commanda a tous
Que comme seigneur le Recoient,
Et si font Ilz ainsi quilz doiuent.

784. Here again, as in l. 548, "resceiue" is written so as to resemble "resteine."

P. 34, l. 788. *demurly in audience*, in a low tone. Fr. dit tout bas, bien coyement.

791. *resoned*, copied from the Fr.

A donc la dame la *Raisonne*.

796. Fr. text,

Raymon dit, "Ie suis prest sans faille."
La dame dit, "Il fault quil aille,
Raymondin mon frere, autrement;
Nous le ferons honnestement.

P. 35, l. 829. *ryght doubted and shereful*, much dreaded and dear; Fr. Ma chiere dame Redoubtee.

P. 36, l. 850. The MS. has here a curious mistake, viz. "so" instead

of "of;" Fr. *de duc*. The word "of" has first been inverted so as to become "fo," and then mis-written "so." Another instance of similar inversion occurs at l. 1007, where *beded* is written for *bedde*. So again, l. 946, *for* for *fro*; l. 949, *presone* for *persone*, etc. See Preface. Such errors might easily occur in printing, but in a MS. they are very remarkable.

P. 37, l. 879. *ryn*. Fr. *Rain* = Bord d'un bois, extrémité (Roquefort).
881. And in their kitchens saw they great smoke too.

896. Fr. text,

Le Conte leur salut Rendit
A chascun, pas ny actendit,
selon qua luy appartenoit
Et du lieu de quoy Il venoit,
Aux grans plus, & aux petis moindre,
Bien scet a chascun salut Rendre.

Thus l. 898 means, according as appertained to the man saluted, on account of the place whence he came.

P. 38, l. 929. What would ye that I should say? Fr. *Que voulez vous que le vous compte?*

P. 39, l. 943. *messe*, mass.

946. *for*; we should certainly read *fro*. See notes to ll. 266 and 850.

949. *persone*, Fr. *personne*; the MS. error is due to the word *present* following.

955. On the other side of her, a prince of the country, etc. Fr. *Et vng prince de la contree*.

965. *brouth*, an error for *brought*; Fr. *Les mes portent les escuiers*.

968. The French text somewhat varies here from the translation. It runs thus,

Vins damyon & vins de Rocelle,
Qui font eschausser¹ la ceruelle;
Vins de tornais, et vins de bea[u]ne
Qui nauoit pas la couleur lausne,
Clare Rommain et ypocras
Y Courut par hault et par bas;²
Vins de saint lehan dangely,
On tenoit grant compte de luy;
Vins estables, vins de viart,
Vindrent apres le vin bastart;
Vins de saint poursain, vin de Rys
Eurent de vins claires le prys;²
Puis eurent vin de preuillege,
Chascun sien eust en son siege,
Chascun a tout ce quil demande,
Tant de vin comme de viande.

[Fol. 24 b.]

Thus, for *Angoy* (Anjou?) the Fr. has *amyon* (Amiens). *Beume* = Beaune, near Dijon; *Tourimz* = Tours; *digon* = Dijon; *Aucerre* = Auxerre; *Seint Iohan of Angely* = S. Jean d'Angely, in Poitou; *estables* may mean a village of that name, lying on the W. side of the Chaine du Vivarais. With regard to the *Clarre Romain*, it may be noticed that Romanée, in Bourgogne, is celebrated for its wine. *Seint pursain* = St Pourçain-sur-Allier, in the department Allier; *seint Jougon* is St. Jouin; and *Ris* probably means Ruys, near Rennes.

¹ Read "eschauffer."

² The Cambridge copy of the Fr. text has here lost two lines, judging by the English version.

We should compare with this the passage from the *Squire of Low Degree*, where a list is given of the amusements prepared for his daughter by the King of Hungary. See Warton, *Hist. of Eng. Poetry*, vol. ii., p. 10.

P. 40, l. 992. *went to glad*, went to glade, i. e. set. Fr. text,

Les iouxtes lusquau iour durerent,

which must mean, the jousting lasted as long as the day did; for they next "went to even-song."

P. 41, l. 1002. *of whom*, i. e. of which; this is worth notice.

1005. *streight*, was laid straight.

1006. *bedde*; the MS. has *beded*; cf. note on l. 850.

1010. *body*; this is certainly a blunder for *bedde*, since the Fr. text has *Le lit*; besides, the custom was to bless the *bed*. See Chaucer, *Merchant's Tale*; and *Melusine*, p. 57.

1024. *outred*, uttered.

1030. But (you) must hold that oath which (the) first day (you) made (to) me.

P. 42, l. 1035. *Be*, read *He*; in the next line *of linage* = of what lineage. We might read, "And of wat linage," with improvement both of sense and metre.

1045. *pannes*, pains. So in *Lancelot of the Laik*, l. 1273,

Now leif we hir In-to hir newest pan.

1950. Before the next line Fol. 25 *b* is prefixed, whereas the last fol. was numbered Fol. 24. This is because two leaves have here been pasted together, Fol. 24 *b* and Fol. 25 being thus hidden. By holding the book up to the light many words can be seen, which prove clearly that on fol. 24 *b* and fol. 25 is written by mistake a passage which should have come later in the poem, and which is re-written in its proper place on fol. 41 *b* and fol. 42. There is therefore nothing here lost, and the narrative is continuous, as the Fr. text also proves. In attempting to separate these pages, some person has slightly torn the corner of fol. 24, so as to destroy the *e* in *pledge* and the *t* in *trouth* in l. 1049, defacing also the last word in l. 1050; *be it non maligne* is therefore suggested, in the sense "be no-wise ill-disposed to me," the word *maligne* having already occurred at l. 46 of the Prologue. The Fr. text has,

Dame, dit Il, je vous pleuis,
Que tant comme Ie seray vifz,
Ne faulsseray le couenant.

1059. *hold*, MS. *bold*; *hold* is of course the right reading, as the Fr. has *tenez*: cf. also l. 1056.

P. 43, l. 1072. And to (the) ladies which that men (had) brought, etc.

1081. *forcelet*; this should rather be spelt *forceret*, from O.F. *forceret*, a casket. But the New Eng. Dict. gives two other examples of the same corruption. Also *your* in the MS. is a mistake for *yuor*, ivory (Fr. *ivoire*); this is yet another instance of the *inversion* of letters; see note to l. 850.

1082. *formelet*; this again should have been spelt *fermelet*. The Fr. text has *fermail*, which is also sometimes written *fermeillet* or *fermillet*. It means a buckle, clasp, or brooch. *Formelet* is given in the New Eng. Dict., s. v. *fermillet*.

P. 44, l. 1101. *drust*, durst.

1106. *sate*, he sat; where *he* means Raymond—

Car Il ne vout pas couroucier
Raymon, qui fust sur vng coursier;
Congie prent, etc.

1113. *had* = there were; Fr. *y avoit*; cf. l. 1127.

P. 45, l. 1122. Fr. on peut bien scavoir se le ment.

1125. *quicke Roche*, live rock; Fr. *viue Roche*.

1132. *the contray*, i. e. the people of the country.

1139. She named the castle *Lusignen* after the latter part of her name; in l. 1199, we have mention of the town of *Mel*, corresponding to the former part of the name; but see note to l. 1146.

1142. The Fr. text omits all mention of Ciprian, and merely says,

Encore le Roy a presen
Crie en son cry, lusignen.

But the statement is verified by the Fr. of l. 5351.

1146, 7. The word *fautih* in the MS. should be *fautith* = lacketh.

Mellusine autant dire vault
Comme merueille qui la ne fault.

This seems to imply that *Melusine* is equivalent to *merveilleuse*; but it is hard to follow this etymology. In l. 1139 is mentioned *Lusignen* as being named from the latter part of her name, and in l. 1199 is mentioned the town of *Mel*. Hence M. de la Mure suggests (p. 489) that the derivation should be reversed, and that the name was compounded from the two chief places which she possessed, viz. Melle and Lusignan. But he adds in a note; "Cette étymologie du nom de Melusine n'est pas la seule que l'on ait imaginée; Bullet n'a pas oublié d'insérer dans les *Mémoires sur la langue celtique*, ce mot, qu'il fait venir de *Mé*, moitié, et *Lisowen*, anguille¹; d'autres auteurs veulent que Mélusine soit une altération du nom oriental Mélésinde." More probably it is the same name with Millicent. The prose romance says, "ye are called Melusyne of Albanye, whiche name in grek langage is as moche for to say as thing meruayllous or commyng fro grete merueylle."—*Melusine*, p. 64.

P. 46, l. 1161. *in trauers*, across.

1162. *grey*; the Fr. has *vert*. So also it is said of Lancelot in the French prose roinance, "ses yeux que ressembloient deux belles *esmerauldes*."

1165. *Neuer man sain*, never (had) man seen. Fr. "On ne vit."

1171. *brought*, borough; or rather, fort. The mount of Beau Repair here mentioned seems to owe its existence to a mistranslation, as the Fr. text says,

Après ce temps elle fist faire
Le bourg ou a moult beau Repaire,

i. e. the fort where there is a very good place of retreat = the fort which is an excellent stronghold.

1175. *louers*, *lowpes*, *louvres*, *loopholes*. A *louvre* is an architectural term for a small tower with open sides; but is here used to translate the French *à l'ouvert*; for the Fr. text has,

Murdrières Il a (.) *à l'ouvert*
Pour lancer, traire, & deffendre.

P. 47, l. 1186. *toure trompe*, trumpet-tower.

1188. *For*, four, one at each corner; *rewarde*, regard, look.

Quatre trompeurs sarasinois
La furent mis a celle fois,
Pour le fort et le bourg garder
Et pour tout entour *Regarder*, etc.

¹ This is a piece of mystification; he omits to say in what language *mé* means "half"; and the word *llysowen* is an error for Welsh *llysŷwen*, an eel. If the name were Welsh, it would be simpler to derive it from *melus*, sweet.

1194. *Oede*, Fr. *Oedes*, the name generally spelt *Eudes*, by some confounded with *Hugues*. DE LA MURE; *Histoire*, etc., p. 506. Another spelling is *Odon*, i. e. *Otho*; (see *Melusine*, p. 102).

1200. *Vauvant and meruant*, *Vauvant* and *Mervent*, two towns in Poitou, the former of which adjoins Parthenay. DE LA MURE; pp. 500, 501. *St. Messent* = *St. Maixent*. Cf. *Melusine*, p. 103.

P. 48, l. 1220. *peito*, Poitou.

1223. *cornicles*, mis-written for *cronicles*; Fr. text, *la cronique*.

1224. *Talmondois*, the name of a place. "And after she made Tallemounte and Tallemondois and many other townes and fortres."—*Melusine*, p. 104.

1235. (She) made that day in Luxembourg (many) a fair thing;

En Luxembourg maint beau fait fist.

P. 49, l. 1252. *malliers*, Maillezais in Poitou. The abbey was burnt by Geoffrey in A.D. 1232,¹ for which offence he had to pay to the church the sum of 1000 *écus*; DE LA MURE, p. 493. The particulars are given at length in a later part of the romance; p. 116.

1253. How Raymond was enraged both against Geoffrey and Melusine, and how he lost Melusine, is all related at length hereafter; p. 121.

P. 50, l. 1274. We may here collect the names of the ten sons of Raymond and Melusine. They were, according to the romance, 1. Urien, who had an ugly face and eyes of different colours, in honour of whom Lusignan was built. 2. Oede (*Eudes*), with a face like fire. 3. Guy, who had one eye lower than the other. 4. Anthony, marked with a scar like that made by a lion's claw. 5. Raynold, with one eye. 6. Gaffrey (*Geoffrey*), with the great tooth. 7. Fromont, with a blemish on his nose. 8. Horrible, with three eyes. 9. Raymond. 10. Thierry. M. de la Mure considers four of these as historical, and arranges them in this order. 1. Guy, taken prisoner by Saladin in A.D. 1187; king of Jerusalem, 1185—1192; exchanges the kingdom for that of Cyprus in 1192, buying it of the knights templars for 100,000 *écus d'or* (!), they having previously purchased it from Richard I. of England, who had conquered it. He died in Cyprus, A.D. 1196. 2. Geoffrey, inherited Vouvant and Mervent in Poitou. He burnt the abbey of Maillezais, A.D. 1232,¹ and had to pay for the rebuilding of it. He was afterwards buried in this new abbey. There is a document extant, proving that in 1216 he made over a large amount of land to the monastery of Beaulieu in Roannois. [This document is given at length by M. de la Mure at p. 501, and is the *only authentic document* (says the editor of the book in a foot-note) on which he rests his conjectures concerning Melusine's family.] 3. Odo or *Eudes*, but who ought to have been called *Hugues*, who inherited the domain of Lusignan. 4. Amery, or Amaury, called Urien in the romance, who succeeded Guy as king of Cyprus, from A.D. 1196—1210.

1275. Now I return, etc.; cf. l. 1277, I shall declare each.

1281. *to know where*, to know war; Fr. *Aler veult scauoir de la guerre*.

1291. *to wel find ther peple*, to well find their people; i. e. to pay them good hire. Fr. *Et pour bien sauldoier leur gent*.

1295. *teise*, draw, tend.

P. 51, l. 1299. *Famagouce*; such is the true reading, the town being the modern Famagusta. The Fr. text has "*famagosse*." Compare

"And sall fayr to *Famagoste* for-lyes [= ferlyes, i. e. wonders] to seke,
And sall furth be *Cypres* as the buk tellis."

¹ De la Mure; p. 493. Surely this date is wrong, and should be an earlier one.

Miscellaneous Poems, in *Lancelot du Lak*; ed. by Mr. J. Stevenson, 1839; p. 151 (reprinted in Bernardus, etc., ed. Lumby, 1870, p. 29).

1313. Urien's men were seen taking up their quarters in the sultan's tents, and dislodging the sultan's men.

1315. *regid*; read *rengid*, ranged. The Fr. text has *Rngies*, a mistake for *Rengies*.

1319. *Armed was with*, was armed by.

P. 52, l. 1335. *garison*, healing; none would undertake to heal him.

Le Roy dun dart envelymee,
Qui bien fut forgie et lyme,
Fut tellement feru a point
Quen lui de garison na point.

1338. *The*, MS. *Thy*; Fr. text, *Les Cypriens*.

1340. *thowne*, town; so *whent* for *went*, l. 1413; *where* for *were* = war, l. 1281; *then* for *ten*, l. 3477. In these words, the *th* represents a strongly aspirated *t*, not the *th* in *thing* or *this*.

1345. *enforced*, augmented; Fr. text, *enforcies*, from *enforcier*, to augment.

P. 53, l. 1375. *myght*, MS. *nyght*. The sense is, so that there might never be recovery (for that man). Fr. text, *Oncques homme ne le pouoit guerir*.

1378. *perceiued*; this in the MS. looks like *perteined*; but the French has, *quant Vriens lappercoit*. Cf. note to l. 548.

1386. *dedes Army*, deeds of arms; "Tant fist darmes ce Vriens."

P. 54, l. 1394. *Ther by*, MS. *Therby*; French, *Par Guyon et par Vriens*.

1396. *thought long*, thought to abide (?). Cf. A.S. *lengian*, to dwell. French text, *Vriens es trefz se loga*. That he did not wish to remain there long is shown by l. 1399. But probably we should read "log," i.e. lodge = lodge; cf. *hug* for *huge*.

1414. *Moche went Cipryan*, many a Cyprian went.

P. 55, l. 1424. Who, O lord God, who (could withstand him)? Not a giant, at any time.

1442. *know*, known.

P. 56, l. 1454. Whereby (you) shall not lose.

1462. *send*, sent.

1468. Whom, as I best could, (I) have warded and defended.

P. 57, l. 1483. The general sense is, She cannot sustain such fierce conflicts of arms, nor the sharp showers (of arrows).

Femme ne peut les fiers estours
Darmes porter, ne les durs tours.

1500. *hir*, here; spelt in next line *here*. French text, "*or orez, Vriens, or me pardonnez.*"

P. 58, l. 1517. If (I) saw (there) were any respite of death in you.

1523. *reised god*, elevated the host. Fr. *leuoit dieu*.

1526. *yild*, he yielded.

1533. *loke*, locked up; Fr. *De dueil fut son cueur enserray*.

P. 59, l. 1545. *Tho*, those who; Fr. *A ceulx, qui se meslerent du fait*.

1546. *wyll*, well; spelt *wel* two lines below.

1548. *A kinges dede*, Fr. *au fait du Roy*.

1555. The words scrawled in the margin in a later hand have been written near the edge of the page, and the letters in brackets cut away by the binder; these marginal notes are, of course, of little value.

1566. *Colcis*, Colchis.

1572. *medee araise*, Medea's advice. The words are run together in the MS.

P. 60, l. 1578. *ille*, island; should rather have been spelt *ile* as in l. 1570.

1579. Compare

Il en y est advenu mille,
Mille voire par mille fois,
Tant au plain comme aux destrois.

1586. The Fr. text has merely "de la contree" where the English has "maree," which I guess to mean land by the sea-shore, from the O.F. *maree* (Godefroy). "The porte yaffe," i. e. Jaffa, is not represented in the French copy. Cf. *Melusine*, p. 277, where we read—"Geffray assawted Iaphe, and toke it by force."

1595. The insertion of *ne* is essential to the metre and the syntax; Fr. Quil nalast. Even thus, the metre still lacks a syllable.

1599. *full know*, well known, illustrious.

1601. The marginal note in the MS. should state that the "king of hermyne" was "vnkull to vriens wif." M. de la Mure remarks (pp. 509, 524) that Urien, whose real name was Amaury, was a younger son of Melusine, and obtained the kingdom of Cyprus by succeeding his elder brother Guy; that his first wife's name was Cive or Eschive d'Isbelin or d'Iblin, daughter of Baudouin, Count of Rama in Palestine; and that, instead of his wife's uncle being king of Armenia, it was his (Urien's) daughter who was married to Leo I., first king of Armenia, created king in A.D. 1197 by Henry VI. (or V.), emperor of the East. By *hermyne* is meant Armenia, the Fr. text having *armenye*.

P. 61, l. 1614. *hermyns*, Armenians; Fr. *armyniens*.

1630. MS. *occorded*, but Fr. Chascun saccorda. See l. 1633.

1633. *Guye after send*, Guy (was) sent after. Fr. Guy fut mande.

P. 62, l. 1641. *wilfull*, willing.

1648. It had before been two brothers (that were kings).

1652. Compare

Et en leur temps forment ayderent
A ceulx qui sont deulx descendu,
(Ainsi comme Iay entendu),
Et ceulx de Rodes, se saichies,
Ont guerroye Iusques en leurs marcheas.

1663. *noyours*, annoyers; Fr. Et leurs nuysans suppediterent.

P. 63, l. 1670. *Sept psabulmes*, seven psalms; but the Fr. has "les quinze psalmes."

1696. *Brehain*; the prose romance has *Behayne* (see *Melusine*, p. 214), and there is little doubt but that *Bohemia* is meant, and Tieck accordingly writes *Böhmen*. Sometimes the term is restricted to a city, and it then means Prague, as in l. 1951.

P. 64, l. 1700. Fr. text, le Roy dausay, and Roquefort says this means *Alsace*; Tieck, too, has *Elsass*. In *Melusine*, p. 187, it appears as *Anssay*, an error for *Aussay*.

1704. For *hurt*, which is in the MS., read *hurd*, heard.

Car chascun deulx sauoir vouloit
Pourquoy le Roy les guerreroit;
Et cestoit pour vne pucelle.

1708. Fr. Fille du duc, mais orpheline. Thus *Orphelyne* means that

she was an orphan; her name was Christian, as told in l. 1827; and the prose romance calls her father Asselyn; fol. 105; cf. *Melusine*, p. 183.

1718. *A-ferrome*, from afar; Fr. *de long*.

1721, 2. *Army peple*, men-at-arms; "Custile" is given by Burguy as another form of *Cousteau* or *Couteau*, a knife. Compare

Voient grant foison de gens darmes,
A grans cousteaulx et grans guisarmes.

1723. The MS. reading "staste" should perhaps be "staftē;" i.e. they ranged themselves in lines, and put themselves in battle order; Fr. text, *Lors se misdrent en ordonnance*. *Staft* means a line in ll. 6555, 6581.

P. 65, l. 1735. Again the Lusignans cried out full fast.

De Rechief lusignen[s] escrient.

The MS. reading *eryng* is an evident blunder for *cryng*, the peculiar spelling of *crying* which the scribe or translator has generally adopted; thus, in l. 1761, he writes *reioed* for *reioyed*, *ioyng* for *ioying*, l. 1898; while in l. 1900 we have the very word *cryng*. In the text, I have written *crying* for clearness.

1740. *ech by thaimself*, each by himself.

1754. *takyng*, taken; Fr. *pris* = modern Fr. *pris*.

P. 66, l. 1765. (They) presented the king to this fair creature.

1767. *shappe*, shaped.

1787. Afterwards commanding these brethren to come to her.

P. 67, l. 1799. *yeuyng*, given; cf. *takyng* in l. 1754.

1802. *where*, were; cf. *whent* for *went*, l. 1413.

1808. The MS. *kew* is of course an error for *knew*; Fr. *scauoient*.

1815. *forigers*, foragers; MS. *forigers*; but Fr. text, *fouriers*.

P. 68, l. 1818. Compare

A lentree de Luxembourg
Lieu ny auoit ne carrefourg
Dont len neust veu venir les gens
Au sons de ces doulx Instrumens.

The spelling *carfoukes* in l. 1819 gives the etymology of *Carfax* (also spelt *Carfoz*). It answers to O.F. *carrefourgs*, L. *quadrifurcas*.

1841. *wace*, was; Fr. *assis fut*.

P. 69, l. 1851. *at thys iournay*, to-day; Fr. *au Iourduy*.

1877. *And had*, if (I) had.

P. 70, l. 1886. *With-that*, provided that.

1892. *damage*, damage; Fr. *dommaige*.

1900. *cryng*, crying; cf. note to l. 1735.

1904. *semble wyse* is equivalent to the *lyke wyse* of l. 1901.

1905. *swrete*, surety.

1907. *mow ye*, certainly a mistake for *myght I*; for the Fr. text has,

Et dit, barons, moult lies seroie,

where *lies* = Lat. *latus*.

1909. The first *to* = two.

P. 72, l. 1951. According to Tieck and the Volksbuch, Brehaigne means Prague in Bohemia, as before noted (at l. 1696). The prose romance mentions *Praghe* by name; *Melusine*, p. 215.

1964. *deing*. The MS. has either *deing* or *doing*; that *deing* is right is proved by the sense, and by the Fr. text, which has "mouront."

1967. He shall have my brother's (king of Brehain's) daughter to wife. Compare

La fille mon faire¹ a moillier
 Aura Regnault, car emploier
 Ne la pourroit mon frere mieulx.

P. 73, l. 1971. After my brother, (he shall be) king of high degree.
 Fr. Roy sera.

1973. *hoir*, heir. Fr. *hoir*.

1981. *Auynsime*; the Fr. text has—Dedens quinze iours, within this fortnight. Note that the metre requires a dissyllabic word only. It is clear (as has been suggested to me) that the scribe has actually written *A* for *q*. The right word is, of course, *quynsime*, i. e. fortnight, from O.F. *quinzisme*, a fortnight (Godefroy); mod. F. *quinzaine*.

P. 74, l. 2006. Sir Anthony is certainly the speaker, we must not read —“Sir Anthony,” (he) said, etc. The French has—Anthonie lui dit, frere, alez.

2011. *done* is here the infinitive, generally spelt *don*.

2018. *this said duk*, viz. duke Anthony; cf. ll. 1997, 2003. Observe that the English version is quite wrong; for it states that “this said duke went towards Luxembourg,” whereas it should state that “the king went towards Luxembourg to meet this said duke;” the Fr. text might easily be mistaken, as it runs,

En luxembourg, vers le duc, va.

P. 75, l. 2049. The spelling *wordle* seems intentional, in order to eke out ten syllables for the line. It is not uncommon.

2056. By comparing the various statements in *De la Mure* (pp. 494, 502, 518), it appears that the old shield of Lusignan was barry of ten pieces, argent and azure; over all a lion gules (not crowned); and the shield of modern Luxembourg is argent, a lion gules, crowned or. If then, as Christian in this line suggests, the bars of azure in the Lusignan shield be left out of the consideration, Anthony would bear the arms of Luxembourg very nearly, as then the whole field would be argent. But *De la Mure* points out that such a shield (viz. argent, a lion gules) really belonged to Cyprus, and that it should not be thus confounded with the Luxembourg shield, since in this latter the lion is crowned.

P. 76, l. 2066. *Baueres* and *Almayn*, Fr. *baviere* et *alemaigne*, Bavaria and Germany.

2073. *Traquo*, Fr. text, Craquo; Cracow. The prose romance speaks of “Zelodyus, kyng of Craco;” see *Melusine*, p. 225.

2075. *Esclauons*, Slavonians. Fr. text, esclauons. In l. 2077, we read that he was lord and sire of that land also, viz. of Slavonia as well as Cracow.

2079. In the MS. “sc” is written so as to resemble “st;” thus “scarmish” resembles “starmish,” and in l. 2075, just above, “Esclauons” resembles “Estlauons.” This practice is common enough in old MSS.

2083. *Fedris*, the name of the king of Brehain, called in the Fr. text *Fedoiz*, but in the Volksbuch, *Friedrich*. The prose romance has “the kyng Federyke of behayne;” *Melusine*, p. 223.

P. 77, l. 2094. The Slavonians beat the men of Brehain, and chased them to the end, i. e. as far as they could, viz. back to the town again. Fr. Iusques au bourg.

2096. Compare
 Mais le bon duc de luxembourg
 Tantost osterà le debat;
 Le Roy brehaignon se combat

¹ Obvious error for *frere*.

Aux faulx sarrasins de tous lez,
Qui ses gens ont moult Recueilliez.

2103, 4. Here and there he cast them down, fighting full manfully, cut down one man, and overturned another on to the ground. Fr. Lun detrenche, lautre mort Rue.

2113. *she*, viz. his soul; Fr. A dieu soit *elle* commandee.

2117. But (as for) the Saracens indeed, they followed close (after them), catching up those who fled.

P. 78, l. 2126. *noymg* = *noying*, annoyance.

2132. "They greatly dreaded the Saracens at that time, when they saw their king dead, who was formerly of great puissance; whereof the Saracens had then great joy, (because) there were (many) Christians who had been ended and finished (?)." But this last line is so forced and absurd, that it is far better to read "Tristing," and to interpret the line to mean—"trusting their war had been ended and done." In support of this, we may remark that the scribe has already written *Traquo* for *Craquo*, l. 2073. The line is not in the French.

P. 79, l. 2154. To preserve the right sense, the translator should have said—The *Sarisins* went out, thaim fast trussing—i. e. fast destroying (or driving back) the people of Brehain; the mistake evidently arose from a misconception of the Fr. text,

Brehaignons vont fort destruisant,

where *Brehaignons* is in the *accusative* case.

2159. *Als!* alas! Cf. l. 2166 below.

2161. *most*, I must.

2167. In what manner (of) form.

2171. *nere*, neither.

P. 80, l. 2208. This messenger is a *Saracen* scout, not the one mentioned in l. 2182.

2213. For see the many Christian people, fast coming.

P. 81, l. 2221. *not-For-pat*, nevertheless; Fr. non pourtant.

2223. The construction is obscure; Fr. text,

Et anthonie dautre contree
Venoit en bataille ordonnee.

2232. Two of them there hath Raynold cast down.

P. 82, l. 2246. Here again, as at l. 2073, the Fr. has *Craquo*.

2251. *grace*, grass; so also *wace* for *was*, l. 1841.

2252. *deth*, dead.

2253. *cried and grad*. Compare

Le Roye de Craquo crie & hue;

which supplies us with the origin of the phrase *hue and cry*.

P. 83, l. 2287. *An hye*, on high.

2290. In this line *A man* has a particular reference to the king of Alsace, as the meaning is—Thus should a man avenge himself on the Saracens, because the king of Cracow had in very truth in like manner caused his brother to be burnt to ashes; this refers to l. 2139.

P. 84, l. 2309. *your fadir Deth*, your father's death; the Fr. text has—la mort ton pere.

P. 85, l. 2342. *hold*; read *bold*, which ends l. 2281 in a similar sentence; for *hold* will not rime to *behold* in l. 2340. So too in l. 2406; and, in l. 4, *has* is written for *bas*.

2357. *or* is the right reading; Fr. Vng Royaulme ou vng empire.

2359. *commanded*, commended.

P. 86, l. 2380. *May* is the right reading; Fr. Qui esglentine espousera.

2381. For my part, I say to you.

P. 87, l. 2406. Cf. l. 2342.

2415. And all that belongeth to her you (shall have) to take (for your own).

2420. For your free kindness and courtesy, he shall defend, etc.

2422. Read "werre;" the meaning is—For he can *war* well; Fr. Car il scet assez de la *guerre*.

P. 88, l. 2428. The king prepared for his niece all such fine array as pertains to a queen.

2446. *wis*, read *vois*; Fr. Et dient tous a vne *voiz*.

P. 89, l. 2464. *ortholegne*; the Fr. text has a different reading,

Regnault fist grant guerre en frise,

Oestellere de la conquist;

Danemarche par force acquist;

but this is hardly more intelligible. Cf. *Melusine*, p. 242.

2469. Was not on this side of the Romans; a proverbial expression which has occurred before, l. 266. And see l. 2483.

2471. *Speke me shall*; the *me* is adopted from a phrase in the preceding line of the Fr. text—Ie *me* tairay.

2483. As any man could on this side of the sea; Fr. de ca la mer; cf. l. 2469.

P. 90, l. 2487. Compare

Cellui deliura les des[t]rois

Dardayne, ou auoit moult grant bois,

Maint bon chastel fortiffia;

Yuy premier ediffia;

Sur meuze vng noble pont fist

De mesieres, et puis conquist

Plusieurs bon lieux par sa prouesse.

Here Dardayne = D'Ardenne, famous for its forest, and it is easy to see how this was changed into "dardane." In the next line, *knight* is of course wrong; read *brought*, which is used to mean a castle in ll. 1171, 1199. *Ywon* (= Fr. Yvay) is probably Givet, a town on the Meuse, lower down the river than *Mezieres*.

2495. *wered*, made war upon.

2496. *Faborugh*; probably *Friborugh* = Friburg in Switzerland (?). The Fr. text has *bribourg*, and the prose romance has *Frebourgh*; see *Melusine*, p. 350. *Aritrige* is mis-written for *Autrige* = Autriche or Austria; Fr. text, autriche.

P. 91, l. 2519. *of corage*, courageously.

2523. This line, as it stands, means—In warring, a strong warrior, well set. But it is a mistranslation; and should express that he carried on war bravely in *Guerrande*; for the Fr. text has—En *guerrande* fort guerreoia. *Guerrande* is mentioned at l. 2950, where the story of Geoffrey's combat with the giant is resumed; it is situated on the sea-coast near the mouth of the Loire.

2528. Compare

Jusqua la Rochelle Ilz prenoient

Sauuergarde, tant le craignoient.

Il prenoit a pastiz partout

Autant au millieu comme au bould.

According to Roquefort, *pastis* (from Lat. *patio*) is a forced contribution

which men agree to pay an enemy; so that the giant, in fact, levied "black mail" on the inhabitants. The word *pateysed* answers to O.F. *patisser*, to pay a forced contribution; but is here used actively to signify "levied contributions from." Cf. "he shal neuer more *patyse* you;" *Melusine*, p. 304.

2533. This seems to imply that Geoffrey heard that the giant called him a man with a great tooth, but the line is merely parenthetical in the Fr. text;

Quant Gieffray la nouvelle entend,
(Que len appelle au grant dent), etc.

P. 92, l. 2543. *Hym-selfenn the tenth*, i. e. He went with nine others. It is a French idiom; Luy dixiesme sen part de la.

2553. *malers*, Maillieres in the Fr. text, Malliers in German. It means Maillezaïs in Poitou; DE LA MURE; *Histoire*, p. 493. The prose romance has Maillezes, fol. 142; *Melusine*, p. 246.

P. 93, l. 2579. *monke*; MS. *moke* (l).

2583. *all my lifes fate*, i. e. all my life; Fr. Car la vueil Ie ma vie vser.

2586. in you (is) all the hold; i. e. all depends upon you; Fr. en vous tient.

2586. *herd*, hard.

2594. This clearly refers to the tonsure; cf. *Melusine*, p. 305.

P. 94, l. 2608. *A morn*, on the morrow; Fr. au matin.

2622. *Merkmministre*; Fr. maire monstier.

2623. *Broughdieu*; Fr. bourg de dieu.

2630. Fr. A saint martin, la grant eglise. "France had three (tutelar saints), who had each his sacred city; each, as it were, succeeded to, without dispossessing the other. St Martin of Tours was the older; St Remi, who baptized Clovis into the Catholic Church, had an especial claim on all of Frankish descent. But, as Paris rose above Tours and Rheims, so rose St Denys, by degrees, to be the leading saint of France." Dean Milman, *Hist. of Latin Christianity*, vol. vi., p. 244, 2nd ed. At p. 249 of the same work we read, "Tours and Poitiers quarrelled for the body of St Martin."

2632. And thereof (I will) cause deeds to be made.

P. 95, l. 2633. Compare

Ou de notre dame de chartres;
Voire, se tu veulx de paris,
Ne soiez donc de Rien marris;
Car bien suis acointe du pape,
Il ny aura Riens qui meschappe;
Et puis apres serez euesque,
Ne demoura guerres apres que
Autre bonne eueschie auras,
Soit paris, beauvoir, ou arras.

2650. Fr. text, Et la pour nous dieu pryeras. The English is obscure.

P. 96, l. 2668. The word *in* seems redundant, as far as the sense is concerned.

2672. Compare—Ilz furent ars, vaille que vaille; *ars* means *burnt*.

2676. Compare

Mellusine fut a vouent,
Et mectoît ses Robes au vent,
Ou nouuellement fut venue,
Iamais elle ne sen fut tenue.

P. 97, l. 2700. *Thre*; Fr. *Trois*.

P. 98, l. 2744. Whose coming was the occasion of the feast; but the Fr. only says that the ladies came there on that occasion—

Et de dames tresgrant foison
Y vindrent pour celle achoyson.

P. 99, l. 2761. You are not so hardy as to enquire of your wife, either seriously or in jest, whither she goes.

2771. The right sense should be—And some others say that she goes on this day to Fairy-land; compare

Autres dient que en faerys
Va cellui Iour—saichies de voir,
Frere, metes paine a sauoir.

2784. *There he faste knakked*; *knakked* (knocked) is the translators' blunder; it should mean, *There he fast hastened* where he had not been (before). The mistake is easily traced; Fr. text, *Se Rapa* ou oncques neust este.

P. 100, l. 2809. Here is an evident allusion to the coat of arms of Lusignan. The shield was "burelé d'argent et d'azur de dix pieces;" *De la Mure*, pp. 494, 502; cf. note to l. 2056. So too Melusine's tail was divided into stripes of *argent* and *azure*.

2812. *to sight gan purchas*; i. e. he had seen.

2817. *to Ende*, to the end that; Fr. *affin que*.

2818. *cloute*, a fragment of cloth; Fr. *drapelet*; in the next line, *melled* is the Fr. *mesle* (*mêlé*) smeared, lit. mixed; and *Alway* = altogether.

P. 101, l. 2843. Cursed be the hour that ever (you) came hither.

P. 102, l. 2857. There is a line omitted before this; compare

Et droit eust de ce courouchiers;
Destrut en fut et exillies,
Car, etc.

where *courouchiers* should perhaps be *courouchier*; so that the meaning should be, And (Raymond) was right to be angry at this; (the earl) was destroyed for it, and (his people) exiled.

2863. *To on his brother*, to one, viz. to his brother; Fr. *A vng, sien frere*.

2868. *lament*, lamented.

2872. *pur*, poorer, more wretched.

P. 103, l. 2880. Fr. *Perdray ma pensee Ioyeuse*; thus *pensif* = thoughtful, and is redundant.

2882. Fr. *Miraige Ietter en vng puis*.

2889. *led*, laid down.

2903. *In on estat*, in one position.

P. 104, l. 2928. *merely*, merrily.

P. 105, l. 2950. *Guervande*; read *Guerrande*, as in the French.

2960. *staf*, a mace; Fr. *machue*.

2963. A complete mistranslation; it should be "which had cost many *écus*;" Fr. *Qui couste auoit mainte escu*. The mistake arose from the double meaning of *escu*, viz. 1. a shield; 2. a piece of money.

2965. Again wrong; it should mean, May God preserve him! he undertakes a great deed! Fr. *Dieu le saulue, grant fait emprent*.

2969. *stil you*, be silent; Fr. *vous taisies*.

P. 106, l. 2980. So long war hast had, or made.

2992. *full*, foul things, evil; unless it be an error for *ill*. The line means, Who aware by his gods that evil should come to him; the Fr. text however is slightly different—*Les dieux lura que mal y vint*.

2993. He considered himself sorely disgraced, since a single man desired to war against him openly.

P. 107, l. 3016. The translator probably meant this line and the next to be said by Geoffrey; but we ought to alter *And* to *said*; for the Fr. has,

Chetif—*dît* guedon, etc.

3023. *folly, is no nay*, it is folly, there's no denying it; Fr. *cest grant folye*.

3025. *she*, i. e. his *life*, which is feminine in French (*la vie*).

3029. Fr. text, *Mais le geant compte nen tient*.

P. 108, l. 3032. *sett*; the nom. case to the verb is Geoffrey, who set him (a stroke) there in the breast.

3035. *to se* = in sight; an expletive phrase.

3037. The syntax is hereabouts very wild. The line means, Hast thou not given me such an offering? it shall be restored this moment; i. e. You have bestowed on me a fair blow, and it shall be now returned.

3039. This means—he was wrath that he had just been so cast down to the ground in that isle by a single stroke.

3043. This means—as Geoffrey kept turning about, never still, the giant (took) the steel falchion in hand, cutting the legs off Geoffrey's courser. The omission of the verb *took* is very awkward.

3054. This describes the effect of a *second* blow given by Geoffrey; the first nearly cut off the giant's left arm (his right was cut *quite* off soon afterwards), and the second smote him sorely on the haunch.

3055, 6. The sense is—the giant thought he must make the fight a mortal one.

3058. *thereof gaf*; imitated from the French;

Son flael prent et met en la place,
Au gieffroy sur le heaulme en donne.

P. 109, l. 3064. *fleing*; Fr. text, *voler*.

3065. The MS. actually has *legges*; but the Fr. tells us that—Vng de ses marteaulx guedon prent. Cf. "hamers;" *Melusine*, p. 303.

3067. Compare

Du coup Ruer moult sesuertue (*sic*)
De gieffroy actaint la machue;
Il la luy fist voler des mains.

3071. *To Gaffray noght had*, Geoffrey had nothing; this use of *had* is an imitation of the French idiom *y avoit*.

3074. *geuyng*, given.

3078. Whether arm, staffe, or axe, (they all) fell down right nigh him. It was his *right* arm, says the prose romance (p. 303).

3080. The last word in the line is most obscurely written. The Fr. merely says—Quant vie vng de ses bras perdu. *Bede* does not seem right. The word "*grad*" (see l. 2253) would fit in better.

3082. *of-new*, lately; it often means anew, again; but the giant had still one arm left to raise his sword with.

3084. But (Geoffrey) avoided the stroke.

3089. Compare

Lui a donne vng tel merel,
Et vne si tresgrande offerende,
Heaulme na qui ne pourfende.

P. 110, l. 3093. *hys horne sarasin*, his Saracen horn; this well exemplifies the variation between the English text and the Cambridge French

copy; for the *latter* is here *wrong*; it says, Puis prent son corps sarasinois; but *corps* must be an error for O.F. *cor*, a horn.

3103. *geaunt*, giant's.

3104. You moved war (i. e. fought) against this man, and thought in your mind to vanquish him, and have now discomfited this enemy.

3111. *I shold* = I ought; i. e. it was my duty to; Fr. *deuoie*.

P. 111, l. 3124. Whereby (he) had then manfully ended the war.

3140. *wace*, was; as also in l. 1841.

3147. Alas! (he) wrought the letters (at an) ill hour.

P. 112, l. 3163. *Norbelande*; Fr. text, Northombellande.

3172. The word *on* is necessary; Fr. Il maine a tout le pays guerre.

P. 113, l. 3194. Fr. text, Pour lamour de chrestienete. The next line is not in the French at all.

3213. The word *goste* seems introduced for the sake of the rime, to the prejudice of the sense; the French is,

Dair fut vermeil comme sangs,
De fin dueil quil auoit au corps.

P. 114, l. 3218. *tho ill*, those evil men; *thys*, thus.

3229. "The date of the ravaging of the abbey of Mailleres by Geoffray with the Great Tooth was 1232;" note to *Melusine*, p. 383.

3230. *messengers*, should be *messenger*; so in l. 3235, *Thai* should be *he*, etc.; for there was only one messenger; cf. l. 3346.

P. 115, l. 3256. *ballied*; a mistranslation, which looks like guesswork; for the Fr. has *palle*, i. e. pale.

3263. *full*, foully, evilly; *mal le pensastes*.

P. 116, l. 3292. *Thaken*, for *Taken*; so too in l. 3477, *Then* for *Ten*. Cf. note to l. 1340.

P. 117, l. 3339. *semyng in corage*, as it seems to my thoughts; Fr. text, "Dieu le pere, ce mest daduis."

P. 118, l. 3358. *condute*, conducted; Fr. *conduisoit*.

3365. The Fr. line corresponding to this is,

En peu deure moult loings alerent.

Way's note, in his edition of the *Promptorium Parvulorum*, to the word *kennynge* is so entirely to the point that I give it here. "Will. Worcester uses the term *kenning* to denote a distance at sea, pp. 179, 313; and it appears from Leland that 20 miles was accounted as a *kenning*, probably, as the extreme distance within ordinary sight. 'Scylley is a *kenning*, that is to say, about xx. miles from the very Westeste pointe of Cornewaulle.' *Itin.* iii., f. 6. See also f. 13." Many readers will probably recall the lines in Keat's Sonnet "On first looking into Chapman's Homer,"

"Then felt I like some watcher of the skies
When a new planet swims into his *ken*."

•P. 119, ll. 3384—3392. These lines are parenthetic, being added by the writer to prepare us for the coming *dénouement* of the story.

P. 120, l. 3399. *bered*, buried; of *hys*, of him; altered for the sake of the rime. We still say—that body of his.

3417. *blissed with right hand*, crossed himself; Fr. *si se signa*.

3423. *Is it this?* is it thus? Fr. *Est il ainsi?*

P. 122, l. 3476. *wronged*, read *wrong*. Fr. text, "Nay pas tort se Ie me tourmente."

3484. Fr. text, "Et, pour la larme de vandosme." It seems to be a sort of proverbial oath. *Vandosme* seems to be a place-name, the modern

Vendôme, not far from Orleans. The words "hys fair" seem to have no meaning, and to be merely expletive.

P. 124, l. 3551. *acroched*, sic in MS. But see l. 3678.

P. 125, l. 3556. *sery*, we should expect *say*, to rime with *Gaffray*; yet *sery* may be = Lat. *sero*, in the sense of *say*, *utter*, or *speak*, which it sometimes bears.

3575. *Trowing* means as *I throw*; Fr. "Bien quinze fois, *se croy* *Ie*, ou vint."

3584. Fr. "Mal vey ton gracieux demaine."

P. 127, l. 3617. This line seems imperfect. The line in the MS. ends with "disceiue," in which the *e* has been smudged nearly out again. The Fr. has,

"Se mon corps a toy demouroit,
Tu ta perceuras bien briefment
De ton maluais parlurement;
Se verite meussies tenuee,
Jusques ala mort me eussies eue,
Et par moy eussies eu secours," etc.

[Fol. 82 b.]

3640. *seueralte* can only mean *separation*; yet the precise opposite is meant; "Plus ny sera *ensemble* tenuee."

P. 128, l. 3652. She draws the three barons aside, to tell Raymond *and them* her *special* injunction about Horrible; hence her speaking in an undertone, and her addressing Raymond as before.

P. 129, l. 3689. The Fr. has

Qui de tous eulx estoit le maistre,
Sil en fut cause, bien en peut estre;

meaning, I suppose, that *if* the abbot were at the bottom of all, it was not to be wondered at.

P. 130, l. 3711. This story of Melusine's re-appearance before melancholy events is always carefully insisted on wherever the legend is told. Her first manifestation of herself was just before Raymond's death, as told further on, ll. 5182—5194. According to the prose romance (fol. 218) she was seen by an English captain, one Sersuel, just before he lost the castle to the duke of Berry; and she was also seen several times by one "godart," and moreover by one "yuon of walles," and by many others. See *Melusine*, pp. 369, 370.

P. 132, l. 3802. How the earl of Forest met with his death will be duly told hereafter. See p. 170.

P. 133, l. 3809. This eulogy of the lords of Parthenay is carefully enlarged upon at the close of the poem, for obvious reasons.

P. 139, l. 4011. *Rather or later*, Sooner or later. This is a peculiarly good instance of the use of *rather*, it being so well brought out by *later* following.

4015. The Fr. text has,

Elle fait mon cuer espartir,
En Remectant comme la cire
fait le geant feu en larmes frire."
Ainsi se tourmente Raymont.

She divides my heart, re-kindling it as the giant fire fries wax into tears. Thus Raymond torments himself." The translator has quite missed this.

P. 140, l. 4048. "Whether I lie or no, God on high knows." Such asseverations occur often.

P. 141, l. 4055. *norbelande*; why this spelling occurs is not clear; for

the Fr. text has "northombelande," and the prose romance "Northomberland." Tieck writes it *Norhemem*.

P. 142, l. 4101. That the French copy from which the translator took the poem had slightly different readings from the Cambridge copy is of course likely enough. Already, more instances of deviation have been pointed out than can be accounted for by a supposition of errors in translation. The mention of the "marbre stone" on which the giant sat is a crucial instance; for the Cambridge copy reads,

La guide voyt sur vng Rochier
Le geant assis sur vng arbers;

whereas, when we turn to Tieck's German version, the word "Marmorstein" re-appears; so that there was doubtless a special mention of *marble* in that French copy which the translator used.

4106. He had no dread or fear at all, for he thought he need not mistrust God that he had been misled.

P. 144, l. 4149. The re-appearance of the word "werly" in this line, as indicated in the foot-note, is of course due to its having been copied in from the line above. It is clearly superfluous.

P. 145, l. 4181. The Fr. has, *De leaige de six ou sept ans*.

P. 147, l. 4240. We ought rather to read "And yut, so I *shall*;" Fr. text, *Et si feray Ie; mais dy moy, etc.*

P. 148, l. 4278. It wanted but little that he had not been destroyed.

P. 149, l. 4311. The reading "Aid" is supported by the Fr. text;

Se la ne luy donnent aye
Magot, Apolin, Teruagant.

P. 150, l. 4319. The reading "conquered" is amply supported by l. 3942, which runs, *Wich that ceason conquered was and gett.*

4336. The cold knife-blade entirely passing through (his thigh-armour).

P. 152, l. 4384. According to the prose romance, the name of this mountain of "Northomberland" was called "Brombelyoys," and the story of "Elynas, kyng of Albany," is told at much greater length and at the beginning of the romance, which is its right place. There we find that Presine was the king's *second* wife, and that the breaking of his oath was due to his listening to the suggestions of Nathas, his son by his former wife; with many other additions. See *Melusine*, pp. 9—16.

P. 153, l. 4407. *With thes daughters thre he closed*, he was enclosed by his three daughters. Fr. text, *Car ses trois filles l'enclourent*.

4426. Grimold was either the fifth, sixth, or seventh of them, and he hath been the last.

P. 156, l. 4495. *She*, i. e. the chamber. The translator doubtless employed *she* because the Fr. text has *Elle*: just below (l. 4499) he uses *it*.

4508. Fr. *Il's portent moult grant medecines*.

P. 158, l. 4549. *married*; perhaps the translator meant *married*, but the proper meaning here is *vexed*, Fr. *marrye*. The French here arranges a few lines in a different order, but the extract given exactly fits in in place of fol. 88. The translator claims to have made his translation nearly *line by line*, and here 57 French lines answer to 56 English ones. As we are sure of the exact number of lines lost, we are able to continue the right numbering of the lines by just missing 56.

P. 159, l. 4607. More about lady Melior and the Sparrow-hawk castle will be found further on. See p. 186.

P. 160, l. 4621. *Palatine*, elsewhere spelt *Palestine*, had her name

assigned with evident reference to the acquirement by Guy of Lusignan of the title of king of Jerusalem; see l. 4634.

4625. *coings*; this is spelt in several other ways, as may be seen in the Index of Names. The Fr. text has (elsewhere) "courgo;" and the prose romance, "Guygo." The story of Palestine's treasure is given more at length further on. See p. 196.

P. 162, l. 4687. This means that the giant perceived Geoffrey, and perceived that he was doomed. Geoffrey does not perceive *him* till l. 4691.

4694. The mis-spelling *dorn* is probably due to the word *Anon* following it.

P. 164, l. 4735. Fr. text, *De son papier estes plainez*.

P. 167, l. 4827. *waloping*, galloping. It is curious that this word occurs in the prose romance also, at fol. 169, back; "whan the saudan was departed from the batayll, he waloped tyl he cam to [the] sarasyns oost." See *Melusine*, pp. 21, 130, 288.

P. 171, l. 4964. The prose romance calls the pope *Benedictus*; but, strangely enough, there is neither a Benedict nor a Leo among the popes of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. The reference is probably to Gregory IX (1227—1241); see note to *Melusine*, p. 385.

P. 173, l. 5007. *Ayglon*, called Chastailon in the Camb. Fr. text.

5010. The allusion is to l. 3807.

P. 175, l. 5085. In all the marches he ruled over, whether it was wrong or right.

P. 180, l. 5218. *lefe* is of course the reading. Fr. text,

De ses pechies Riens ne laissa.

P. 183, ll. 5326, 7. There is only one Fr. line answering to these two, but it supports the reading "drad." It runs, "Sarrasin neust qui le craingne."

P. 184, l. 5329. *Hys leuyng*, during his lifetime; Fr. *Son viuant*.

5357. Fr. text, *Du pierregort en angleterre*.

P. 185, l. 5359. *cambriere*; Fr. text, *En arragon, ceulx de cambiere*.

5370. This story found its way into *Mandeville's Travels*, ch. xiii. (ed. Halliwell, p. 145).

P. 186, l. 5414. The prose romance says, (*fol. 7 b*) whoever "wil goo watche there the day before the euen and theuen also of saint Iohan baptiste, whiche is on the xx (23rd?) day of Iung," may achieve the aventure. It was thus in the "most cheffest time of somertide," (l. 5522) not near midwinter, when we commemorate the *Evangelist*. The eve of St John was an appropriate time for the adventure. In Thorpe's *Northern Mythology* (vol. iii. p. 140) we read that "treasures burn especially on St John's night, and those who *know how* can then raise them."

P. 189, l. 5503. Fr. text,

*Ainsi la chambre peinte estoit
Dun pie de mur lusques au toit,
Qui deuisoit les nascions
Et les estranges Regions,
Du furent telz hommes vaillans
Qui point ne furent sommeillans, etc.;*

where "deuisoit" means *described*, not "deuded."

P. 193, l. 5619. This line should mean, Since you do not keep to that which is your own; Fr. *Mais puisque ne ten veulx tenir*.

P. 194, l. 5645. Fr. text,

Arrine est a dure feste,
Car point ne voit qui le loppine,
Mais maint coup eust sur son eschine.

Thus the Fr. verb *loppiner*, (*lit.* to cut into pieces, hence to beat severely), has been twisted into "his *opinion*!"

5653. For remarks on "anoointed" in the depraved sense of beaten, see *Notes and Quer.* 3rd S. IX. 359, 422; reprinted in *A Student's Pastime*, p. 4. The Fr. text has *oingt*.

P. 195, l. 5672. *Crius*; not mentioned in Camb. Fr. text.

5683. Fr. text, Mais la moitie pis gouuerna.

5684. De la Mure devotes his last chapter to the kings of Armenia, giving the list as follows. Leo I (reigned 1197), Constant, Haiton, Leo II, Theodore, Leo III, Hugues, John, Leo IV, Leo V, Leo VI. This makes Leo I the hero of the Sparrow-hawk adventure, Constant the king mentioned in l. 5682, and the rest the "nine heirs." The name of the last king agrees with the prophecy in l. 5628, and De la Mure tells us (p. 526) so much of his history as confirms the account in the next stanza; "il se réfugia en France auprès du Roi Charles VI, l'an 1385. Et ayant disposé de ses droits au Royaume d'Arménie, en faveur de la Maison de Chypre, comme il a été vu ci-devant, il mourut à Paris, l'an 1393, le 29e novembre. Il y fut inhumé en l'église des Célestines, ou on voit sa representation," etc. I may add that La Coudrette insinuates that he saw the funeral himself—"Ou moult de gens *le vey ensemble*"—a line omitted in the translation. Cf. note to *Melusine*, p. 385.

P. 196, l. 5718, *treteth*, read *tretying*; where-*ying* marks the infinitive.

P. 200, l. 5823. Fr. text,

Vng homme trouua en sa voye,
Qui lusques au mont le conuoie;

which shows that "be" should be "he," and suggests that l. 5824 should run thus,

Which to this montain *he* gan *hym* conuay,

where "he" means *high*, as elsewhere. For this mountain is generally called the *high* mountain; see ll. 4625, 4631, 5725.

P. 201, l. 5854. *Brandes* should no doubt be *Brandest*; Fr. text, Brandist.

P. 205, l. 5972. Fr. text,

Qui fut Iadis clerc de mellin,
Et pres dillecques demouroit;

whence it is clear that *mellin* (translated Merlyn!) is the *name of a place*, probably Molina near the Sierra Molina in the extreme S. of Arragon.

5981. Fr. text,

Ce devin estoit nay despenge,
Et fut a lescole a tolette, etc.;

so that "of good cognicion" should have been *born in Spain*; and "Tholouse certain" really represents *Toledo*.

P. 208, l. 6061. Fr. text,

Helas, Il eust en le tresoir,
Et conquis, seust vesqu encoir,
Et terre de promission,
Qui tant est sainte Region.

P. 209, l. 6105. Fr. text,

La gist, la est la tombe mise,
Ie lay veue de mes deulx yeulx.

P. 211, l. 6162. Fr. text, Elle court plus fort qune flesse.

P. 212, l. 6175. Who is meant by this "one William" is not at first sight obvious, there being no archbishop of Bourdeaux of that name at this time, though Bourdeaux would be the see in which was Parthenay. Nor was the archbishop of Paris, nor of Tours, so named at this time. However, the mystery is solved when we find that the translator is at fault. The person referred to is no "archbishop," but one who bore the surname *Archevesque*. In *La Grande Encyclopédie* we find the following entry:—"Archevêque, ou Larchevesque, surnom pris au xi^e siècle par la famille des seigneurs de Parthenay." De la Mure refers to Guillaume l'Archevesque; *Hist. des Ducs du Bourbon*, Paris, 1897; vol. i. p. 476.

6182. A curious mistake about the date has here crept into the text; the year should be 1401. For the Fr. text has, "En lan mil *vng* et quatercens; and this fulfils the conditions; for, in 1401, the 17th of May was not only a Tuesday, but the *Tuesday before Pentecost*. The false date, 1407, is easily accounted for; for it so happens that in that year too the 17th of May was on a Tuesday, but it was the *Tuesday after Pentecost*, which makes all the difference.

P. 213, l. 6206. Fr. text,

Fut faicte la translacion
En lan et Incarnacion
Du chief du gracieux corps;
Car Il estoit la pieca mors.

6211. The romance appears to be wrong. St Louis died Aug. 25, 1270; and Fabyan (ed. Ellis, p. 409) says that he was also translated on the *same day of the year* in 1295.

P. 214, l. 6266. The reigning king was Charles VI.

P. 219, l. 6423. Both here and below the Fr. text spells the name "coudrette."

P. 220, l. 6433. The Camb. copy of the Fr. text ends with the line, Adoncques se taira coudrette; the litany being missing, though part of the page is left blank.

P. 223, l. 6546. The translator, being deserted at this point by Coudrette, gives us an original epilogue, wherein he considerably falls off, and, towards the end, seems almost to give it up.

P. 224, l. 6553, repeated from Prologue, l. 15.

6577. This boast is hardly borne out by the facts.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

[The French words inserted between marks of parenthesis after the word to be glossed are the corresponding words in the French text. Thus "Aduertise (*aduiser*)" means that *aduiser* is the word which the translator has rendered by *aduertise*; but it is not meant that *aduiser* occurs in *all* the passages where *aduertise* does, only that they are found to correspond once *at least*. In very many instances, the French word greatly explains the English one, which is the reason for giving it. The following abbreviations have been used:—Pr. Parv. = Promptorium Parvulorum; Bur. = Burguy, Glossaire de la langue d'oïl; Cotg. = Cotgrave's French Dictionary; Roq. = Roquefort's Glossaire; Jam. = Jamieson's Scottish Dictionary. Ch. appended to a word means that it is used by Chaucer. Other abbreviations, as A.S. for Anglo-Saxon, O.N. for Old Norse, O.Fr. for Old French, etc., will be readily understood. The letter *p* before a number refers to the Prologue. The books referred to in italics—as *K. Horn*—are books published by the E. E. T. S.]

- A, he, 5400.
 A, on, 752, 805; A day, on a day, at times, 752.
 Abake, to putte (*Recueillir*), to put aside, decline, 3110; to defeat, 2094, 2100.
 Abakwarde, backwards, 5888.
 Abasshed, amazed, astounded, 2052, 2346, 2849, 4806; afraid, 2635. Roq. *esbahir*. "Abaschyd or aferde. *Territus*." Pr. Parv.
 Aby, pay for (it), 4679. Ch.
 Acause, because, 2913, 3611.
 Acceptiff, acceptable, pleasing, 3285.
 Accounte, to count, number, 4892. "Here to *account*," etc. Spenser, F. Q. iii. 6. 30.
 Acquittal, acquittal, 4764.
 Aday, in the day, at various times, often, 4252.
 Adieu commaunde, I commend you to God, 3849.
 Adquire, acquire, *p.* 99.
- Adrad, afraid, 588.
 Aduertise (*aduiser*), to pay heed to, 477; to notice, perceive, 2847.
 Aferrom, 629, 3375; } afar off, at a
 Aferrome, 4488, } distance. Cf.
 A.S. *feorran*.
 Affiaunce, trust, 3177.
 Affray, disturbance, 2854. Ch.
 Affy, to be affianced to, 6052.
 Afor, 136, 347, 353, 4435, }
 4891, 4995, } before.
 Aforne, 56, 4440, "Aforne" }
 (afore), *Ante, coram*." Pr. Parv.
 Afray, terror, 140. Ch.
 Again, 2534, } against.
 Agayne, 251, }
 Agast, were afraid, 4806. "Agaste, supra in a-ferde." Pr. Parv.
 A-hy, on high, 1210. See Anhy.
 Alabastre, 4515, } alabaster.
 Alebastre, 5039, }
 A-land, on land, 4836.
 Alfaste, very quickly, 3252.

PARTENAY.

S

Alienyng, alienating, 6128.
 All-outte, fully, entirely, completely, 2320, 4463, 5922. It occurs also in *Lancelot of the Laik*.
 Al-outte, the same as the above, 866.
 All-ther-first, first of all, 2490. So too Alþer best, best of all, *Gen. and Ex.* Cf. Du. *allereerst*.
 Als, also, 3440, 4163, 5089. Ch.
 Als! alas! 2159, 2166. Fr. text, *las*, which see in Roq.
 Amended, 4544, } grew stronger,
 Amendid, 4035, } grew up.
 Ameruelled, astonished, 405.
 Amidward, in the middle, 4291.
 Amorn, in the morning, on the morrow, 5519.
 An, written for And, 4957.
 Ancelle, handmaid, 6456. Lat. *ancilla*.
 And, if, 5384, 5446, 6809.
 An-hy, on high, 2704, 2966, 3145, etc.
 Anynted, used jocularly of a good beating, 5653. So the Fr. text, *bien oingt*.
 Antecessour, ancestor, 6359.
 Antecessoures, predecessors, 4786.
 A-per-se, superexcellent, lit. A by itself, 1148.
 Apertly, openly, p. 30, 331. *Piers Pl.*
 Aplace, in her place, before all, 932.
 Aplas, in the place, in men's presence, 522. Cf. Gower, C. A. ii. 152. See note.
 Aply, to ply, bend, 4187.
 Apparaill (*la pareille*), the like of it (?). Apparently copied from the Fr. text; 742.
 Apparailled (*apparaillie*), adorned, 927.
 Appareill, to deck, adorn, 5236.
 Appetite, desire, wish, 2621; desire, love, 2896.
 Apply, to bend to, submit to, 5313. See Aply.
 Arew, arrow, 6162.
 Argent (*argent*), silver money, 1119.
 Armes, coats-of-arms, painted shields, 5481; a coat-of-arms (*sing.*), 5494.
 Army dedes, deeds of arms, gallant acts, 1738, 4134, 5745; dedes Army, 1386, 1489.

Army peple (*gens darmes*), men completely armed, 2215.
 Armyly (*tout arme*), completely armed, used as an adv., 5418.
 Arson (*archon*), saddle-bow, 2961. Fr. *arçon*.
 Asaid, *pt. s.* said, 450.
 Askes, ashes, 3412.
 Assemble, encounter, 1728.
 Assembled (*sassemblerent*), encountered, 1328, 1725.
 Assoled, prob. error for assoiled, i. e. absolved, 5224.
 Astabled (*establist*), established, 5281.
 Astat, estate, condition, 393, 1257. *All. Poems*.
 Astoned, stunned, benumbed, 4289.
 Astronemie, 6, } astrology.
 Astronemye, 187, } So in *Lancelot*, l. 432.
 Astronomian, a man learned in astronomy and astrology, 12.
 At end, at last, 4683, 5244.
 Athirt, athwart, 169.
 A-this-side, 266,
 A-thys-side, 2469, } on this side.
 Athissid, 3472,
 Athissid Rome, on this side of Rome, a proverbial phrase for *anywhere*.
 Ato, a-two, in twain, 3087, 5857.
 Attamed, contaminated, 466.
 —“that a queene . . .
 In any wise should be *attamed*.”
 Chaucer's Dream, 1128.
 “Athamyd, as a wessel wyth drynke. *Attaminatus*.”—Pr. Parv.
 Attende, await, wait for, 1422; expect, 1425, 1465.
 Aualed (*avalle*), let down, lowered, 3001, 4479. Ch.
 Auaunce you, proceed, 2377.
 Auaunce, 5566. See To-auaunce.
 Auaunsing himselfe, proceeding on his way, 5655.
 Auaunt (*moy vanter*), to boast, p. 161. Ch.
 Auenture, ill fortune, 391; good fortune, 416.
 Auentures, adventures, p. 102.
 Auise, *sb.* counsel, 5269.
 Auise, *vb.* pay heed to, 2014; perceive, espy, 4687; consider, 5454.

- Auise hym, let him take heed, 5382.
- Auised, he perceived, 4448.
- Auisse, good counsel, wisdom, 6486.
- Auncion, old; most auncion = eldest, 1276; ancient, p. 22.
- Auncionte, antiquity, 6357.
- Aunter, to adventure oneself, p. 21. Ch.
- Autentike, praiseworthy, exemplary, 6181. Cotg. gives under Authentique, "approved or allowed by authority."
- Auynsime, a singular error for Quinsime, a period of fifteen days, a fortnight, 1981. The Fr. text has *quinze Iours*. See the note.
- Auysilye, advisedly, wisely, 538.
- A-where, everywhere, 4245, 4952, 5352. A.S. *ahwær*.
- Ay, ever, 3262, 3650, 4162. Ch.
- Ay, each (?); in the phr. "other ay," 103. It seems to be put for "ayþer." "Ayþer oþer in armes con felde." *Garvain*, l. 841.
- Aye, 2959; Ayen, 1735, again.
- Ayne (*laisne*), eldest, 1695.
- Bace, low, 621. See Bas.
- Baculere, bachelor, a novice in arms or arts, 616, 1925, 4243, 5955. See *Bachelor* in Roq. [The MS. has in all four places the reading "baiulere," but it is hard to see how this can be right, even if we give to *i* the sound of *j*.]
- Bakke, in the phr. with the bakke = backwards, where *with* = A.S. *wið*, 4709.
- Balled, bald, 3256. Ch.
- Bandone, disposal, 4767.
- "For bothe wys folk and unwys Were hoolly to her *baundon* brought." Ch. Rom. of Rose, 1163; where the orig. has *a son bandon*.
- Baptime, baptism, 1242.
- Barge, a ship of large size, 1284, 5666. The Fr. text says it was so called because it was *si large*. Roq. says, "grande barque qui portoit trois voiles et un ancre."
- Baronage (*baronnys*), an assembly of barons, 685, 5199.
- Barony (*baronnys*), the same as Baronage, 853.
- Barreres (*barriere*), barriers, bars, 4663. [MS. Barrore, but Pr. Parv. has *Barrere*, q. v.]
- Bas, low; gen. in phr. "hie and bas," high and low, 4, 523, 927, 945, etc.; *adv.* downwards, 665. See Basse.
- Base; in phr. base wise (*en bas*), in a low soft way, in a whisper, 2916.
- Basly; more basly (*plus bas*), lower, 1216.
- Basse, low, 6157. See Bas.
- Bash, be amazed, wonder, 782. O.Fr. *esbahir*.
- Basshed, amazed, 605, 2351, 2940.
- Basterd, bastard wine, 979.
- Bastiled (*basti*), fortified, furnished with defences, 1134. "Bastillè, fortifié avec des tours et des créneaux." Roq.
- Beform, before, 1357, 4943, 5280. See Aforne.
- Behest, promise, 273. Ch.
- Behofull, behoveful, necessary, 3379, 4109.
- Behold, *sb.* a look, glance, 3543.
- Belay, belly, 4307, 4534.
- Bement, bemoaned, 3320, 3883, 3907, etc.
- Bered (*enseuely*), buried, 3399.
- Berres, an error for Breres, briars, brush-wood, 3297. See Brere in Pr. Parv.
- Besain, beseen, seemly, 858.
- Beseying, busying, 3431.
- Besinesse, industry, diligence, 2495.
- Bete (*bastue*), adorned with beaten gold, 917. See Tyrwhitt, note to v. 981 of Cant. Tales.
- Betan, the same as Bete, 4502.
- Bethenke, think of, 3998.
- Bette, 3034, } better. A.S. *bet*.
- Bett, 5526, }
- Better (*amere*), bitter, 2825.
- Beuteuous, beauteous, 5077, 5192, 5441.
- Bild, 1172, } built.
- Billed, 3115, }
- Blecere, wound, hurt, 3572. Fr. *blessure*.

- Blenched, 3085, } swerved aside,
Blent, 4628, } shrank aside.
See *Blench* in New Eng. Dict.
- Blissed, blessed himself, crossed himself, 2813, 3417, 4807, 4754.
The Fr. text generally has *se signa*.
- Blive, quickly, 5673. Rob. of Gloucest., l. 573.
- Blode, in plur. of blode = by blood, i. e. by blood relationship, 4829.
- Bode, *vb.* tarried, abode, waited, 2958, 4058. A.S. *bidan*.
- Bode, *sb.* abiding, tarrying, rest, 1937, 4466. Ch.
- Bole (*toneau*), a large-sized bowl, 2988. Cf. "His *bolle* of a *galun*." K. Horn, 1123.
- Bolned (*enflez*), swollen, 1428.
"Bolnyd, *Tumidus*," Fr. Parv.
Sw. *bulna*, Dan. *bulne*.
- Bonet, a small additional sail, 6407.
"Bonet of a seyle, *Artemo, sirapum*," Pr. Parv. See *Morte Arthur*, l. 3657.
- Boode, tarried, waited, 5414.
- Bood, awaited (*vb. act.*), 5458.
- Botme, bottom, 4480. A.S. *botm*.
- Brace, embrace, seize, 1446. "*Bracer*, embrasser," Burguy.
- Braid, Braide, Brayd, time, moment of time, 453, 486, 2828, etc.
O.N. *bragð*, a rapid movement, a twinkling.
- Braid (*braient*), cried out, lit. brayed, 2122. O.Fr. *braire*.
- Brandes (*brandist*), brandishes, 5854.
Unless it be an error for *brandest*, brandished.
- Bred, breadth, 5647. See *Chinesse*.
- Brede, breadth, 1180, 3008, 3101. Ch.
- Brede, bread, 3661.
- Breffes, letters, 2683. O.Fr. *bref*.
- Brend, Brende, burnt, 229, 2667, 3412, etc.
- Brenne, to burn, 3229. O.N. *brenna*, Ger. *brennen*.
- Brennyng, burning, 5347.
- Brennynglie, fervently, extremely, 69.
- Bretherin, brethren, 3666, 5344.
- Breueloker, in a briefer manner, 6582. Cf. Goodlokest.
- Briddes, birds, 877, 1003, 5476. Ch.
- Brigge (*pont*), bridge, 1222.
- Brise, breaketh, 3748. Fr. *briser*.
- Brought (*bourg*), town, 1171, 1199.
- Bruled (*brulez*), burnt, 2289, 3313, 4855, 5246.
- Bruschet, small twigs, brushwood, 3299. "Broce, menu bois;" Burguy. "Brossettes, small heath wherof headbrushes are made;" Cotg.
- Bryghty, bright, 2149.
- Burlid, striped; only in the phr. "burlid with siluer and Asure," 2809, 3492, 3870. "Burelle d'argent et d'azur; (We blaze it thus) he bears so many clossets argent and azure;" Cotg. [A *closset* or *closet* is a stripe or narrow bar.] Cf. the heraldic term *Barruly*.
- Buschinentes (*bachines*), prob. an error for *Baschinetes*, basnets, light helmets, 2148. See *Bassinnet* in Cotg.
- Bustesly (*raydement*), boisterously, violently, fiercely, forcibly, 2262, 3257, 4174, 4271. See *Boystows* in Pr. Parv.
- By-ment, bemoaned, 1346. See *Bement*.
- Byrnde, burnt, 3408.
- Caitife, wretch, 3318.
- Calange, challenge, i. e. claim, 3725.
"Calanger, as Chalanger." Cotg.
- Can (*scet*), knows, p. 108.
- Canoun, canon; right canoun = canon law, 8.
- Carectes, characters, 6605.
- Carfoukes (*carrefour*), places where four roads meet, 1819. See *Cartehowse* in Pr. Parv. [Carfax is the same word; hence, its etymology, from *carre fourcs* (*quatuor furcæ*).]
- Carfty, crafty, 5708.
- Cassedony, chalcedony, 4510. "And suppe riche cassedoinnes;" Fl. and Blanch. 286.
- Caste, plannest, intendest, 3016.
- Catell (*des biens*), chattels, goods, 457.
- Catholike, 462, 3500.

- Cautels (*cautelle*), trickery, cunning, attempt at overreaching, 5563.
See Roq.
 Caytif, 2166, } wretch.
 Caytiff, 3016, }
 Ceason, season, 4150, 5521.
 Celest, celestial, 5449.
 Celestif, celestial, 3288.
 Cereatly, p. 18, 6554, } in due order.
 Ceriatly, 1836, }
 Lat. seriatim.
 Cerched, searched, 4743.
 Cerching, searching, 4656.
 Certes, certainly, 3665, 4984.
 Cesse, cease, 4043.
 Chanon (*chanoine*), a canon, 644, 2626.
 Chapitre-hous, chapter-house, 3249.
 Charge, *vb.* to heed, reck, care, 3937.
 Charge, *sb.* regard, care, 4124.
 Chaufe, to chafe, warm, 224.
 Chaufed, chafed, warmed, 4024; chafed, angry, 3258.
 Chausing, chasing, 4911.
 Chere (*chier*), dear, 2749.
 Cherefull (*tres chier*), dear, 2585.
 Cherished, *vb. neut.* grew up, 4035.
 Cherisly, dearly, 5338.
 Cherishly, dearly, 122.
 Chermat (*chiere mate*), chap-fallen, 5882. *See* Char (3) and Mat in Burguy.
 Chersh, to cherish, 6318.
 Ches, chose, 326.
 Chese, choose, 4965. *Ch.*
 Cheue, achieve, 597.
 Childed (*enfanta*), bare, 1157, 1193; borne, 4401.
 Chine, chink, 4343. *A.S. cine.*
 Chinesse, chine, back; Chinesse bred = back's breadth; *see* Brede. The *Fr.* has simply *leschine*; 5647.
 Chirmed, made a loud noise, chirped loudly, 878. *Cf.* "*synnigra cyrm*, the uproar of sinners;" *Cædmon*, ed. Thorpe, 145, 17. "With *charm* of earliest birds;" *Milton*, *P. L.* iv., 642. *See* Forby.
 Chirsly (*moult chier*), dearly, 23.
 Clariners, clarion-players, trumpeters, 2221. "Claryowre or clarenere, *Liticen*." *Fr. Parv.*
 Clarre, a clear wine, 972. *See* Claret, in *Fr. Parv.*
 Claustrall, living in a cloister, 2595. *Cotg.*
 Claymed (*clamez*), proclaimed, called, 1675.
 Clemmyng, climbing, 235.
 Clergy, 2552, } knowledge, science.
 Clerigie, 7, } *O.Fr. clergie.*
 Clerke, a scholar, 2552.
 Clive, *pt. s.* clave, 1382.
 Closed, enclosed, 5577; was enclosed, 4407. "Closyd, or closyd yn, *Inclusus*." *Fr. Parv.*
 Cloute (*drapelet*), a small bit of cloth, 2818. "Clowte of cloth, *Scrutum*." *Fr. Parv.*
 Cognicion, knowledge, 5981.
 Collyng (*laccolat*), taking round the neck, embracing, 2911.
 Comerance (*freur*), mental trouble, great fright, 4905. "Comerawnce. *Vexacio*." *Fr. Parv.*
 Comerd, cumbered with grief, overwhelmed with chagrin, 4402. *See* Combrer, *Bur.*; and *cf.* *Ger. kummer*, grief.
 Comerous, cumbrous, troublesome, 4066. "Comerovs, *Vexativus*." *Fr. Parv.* Also cumbersome, vast, 5773.
 Comforth, *sb.* comfort, 3985; *vb.* to comfort, 3922.
 Commaunde, commend, 3849, 4771; Commaunded, commended, 264, 5166, 5439; Commaundyng, commending, 3964.
 Compernage, company, 1020, 3706.
 Complesh, accomplish, 5212; Compledshed, accomplished, 3960.
 Comynly, commonly, 3685.
 Comynte, community, 4072. "Comownte, *communitas*." *Fr. Parv.*
 Cancellour, counsellor, 3860.
 Conclude, include, 6553.
 Conduce, p. 206, } to conduct.
 Condute, 6465, }
 Condute, *pt. s.* conducted, 3358.
 Conforture, aid, assistance, a strengthening, 4149.
 Confraternite, p. 39.
 Coniectures, instructions, lessons, p. 100. *Fr.* text, *Ilz firent comme bien aprins.*

- Conisaunce, 802, } knowledge.
 Consance. 404, }
- Conne (*savoir*), to know, p. 104.
 Connynghe, skill, p. 5.
 Conquere, to acquire, 1450, 3942, 4319.
 Contred, encountered, met, 3346.
 It is followed by *again* = against;
 contred again = met.
 Contring [followed by *again*,] encounter-
 ing, meeting, 1640; [with-
 out *again*] encountering in a
 hostile manner, 3030.
 Contrepane, counterpart, 6587. [The
 word here means lit. a *counter-*
part, a sense which it has but
 very seldom; see "Pane, or parte
 of a thyng"; Pr. Parv. "Count-
 erpaine, the counterpart of a
 deed;" Wright; Prov. Dict. The
 usual sense of Fr. *contrepan* is a
 gage, pledge.]
 Contune, to continue to be, to re-
 main, 2207, 2881.
 Coppe, top, 5911. A.S. *copp*.
 Corage, intent, p. 80; heart, mind,
 355; thoughts, feelings, 1895,
 2779; mind, will, 2012; of corage
 = in meaning, 530. See *Corage*,
 Roq.
 Cordiall, prob. = by heart, p. 10;
 unless it is a mere expletive.
 Cornicles, chronicles, 1223.
 Corporall, large of body, 4456.
 Corsed, cursed, 4310.
 Cost, side, quarter, direction, 605.
 O.Fr. *coste*.
 Costile, a knife, dagger, 4334. See
 Custile.
 Costile-yre, knife-iron, knife-blade,
 4336.
 Coude, knew, 9.
 Couent, convent, 2659, 3254, 3266,
 3321. O.Fr. *covent*.
 Coursed (*mauldy*), cursed, 304. Cf.
 Corsed.
 Couyne, contrivance, arrangement,
 manner, way, 5582. Ch. See
Convine, Roq.
 Cowd, could, 4918; Cowde, knew,
 14.
 Coyly (*coyement*), quietly, secretly,
 2184.
 Cracching, scratching, clawing,
5892. "Clawyn or cracchyn."
 Pr. Parv.
 Creat, created, p. 32.
 Cressed, increased, grew, 5604;
 Cressith, increaseth, augmenteth,
 4262.
 Cross, sword-hilt, so named from
 its shape, 4711, 5904.
 Crown, tonsure, 3224.
 Crusedly, cursedly, 5246.
 Crussing, cursing, 2851.
 Cure, care, charge, 2617. O.Fr.
cure. Roq.
 Curtois, 703, } courteous.
 Curtoys, 97, }
- Custell, a dagger, 5853; Custiles
 (*couteaux*), daggers, large knives,
 1722. Fr. *couteau*, O.Fr. *coustel*,
cottel, Lat. *cultellus*.
- Dampned (*dampne*), damned, 283,
 307, 3335.
 Damysel, damsel, 936.
 Dan = Lat. *dominus*, a title often
 given to monks, 3259, 3272. Ch.
 Dangerous, sparing, niggardly, 1812.
 Ch.
 Debonair, 6525, } courteous,
 Debonaire, 28, 828, } gracious,
 Debonayr, p. 91, } gentle. Ch.
 Deboner, 5147, }
- Debonerly, courteously, 895.
 Debonerte, affability, sweet and
 gentle demeanour, 3888. *Débon-*
naireté, Cotg.
 Dede, deed, 4364.
 Dede, dead, 263, 297, etc.
 Dede-cold, cold in death, 292, 453.
 Defautes, defects, failings, p. 74.
 Deing, dying, 5946.
 Delefull, doleful, 3293.
 Deliuery, quickly, 2859, 4138. Ch.
 Demage, damage, 1892, 2316, 3035.
 Demain (*demaine*), service, use;
 [lit. property, domain], 5164.
 See *demaigne*, Roq.
 Deme, to judge, 3600. Ch.
 Demenyng (*demaine*), conduct, de-
 meanour, 3584. See *demainer*,
 Roq.
 Deminute, diminished, 5680.
 Demurly, softly; demurly in audi-
 ence, too softly to be well heard,
 788. Fr. text, *tout bas*.

- Departson, departure, 104, 1079, 3362, 5024, 5260, etc.
 Depeynted, painted, 5503. Ch. has *depeint*.
 Derain, action, 4643. O.Fr. *deraisne*, "action de prouver, de soutenir son droit;" Godefroy.
 Deray (*desroy*), foolishness, lit. disorderly conduct, 4524. O.Fr. *desroy*, *desrei*.
 Desherite, disinherited, 1046.
 Determine, to come to an end, 5596, 5974, 6135.
 Deuer, duty, 6218. Ch.
 Deuin, to recount; to deuin, so to speak, p. 108, 3660. See *deviner*, Bur.
 Deuise, *sb.* agreement, manner agreed on, 505; direction, appointment, 2385.
 Deuise, *vb.* in the phr. to deuise = to relate, to recount, 479, 728, 983, 2846, 3744, 5603. [A mere expletive phrase, always at the end of a line, and introduced for the sake of the rhyme.]
 Deuoir, 941, } duty. Fr. *devoir*.
 Deur, 5304, }
 Diabolike, diabolic, 3499.
 Diffame, dispraise, infamy, 2763, 2835, 3392.
 Diffamed, of ill fame, infamous, 3475.
 Diffaute, fault, sin, 2875, 3316, 4869; without diffaute = without fail, 3025; Diffautes, defects, 6600, 6614.
 Diffence, prohibition, 4393. Ch.
 Diffended, forbade, 4392. Ch.
 Diffy, to defy, 4193.
 Diffynid, deceased, 4007.
 Dight, to bring about, cause, 3444; decked, arrayed, 4023; prepared, ready, 5421. A.S. *dihthan*.
 Digne, worthy, p. 107.
 Disancred, weighed anchor, 3360.
 Discended, dismounted from horseback, 4891.
 Discesse, decease, 3638.
 Discomfight, to discomfit, subdue, 2535, 2970, 3233, 4087; discomfited, 2526.
 Discomfite, 3121, } discomfited, sub-
 Descomfite, 3129, } dued.
 Disherite, disinherited, 5554; despoiled, ruined, 2662, 5234.
 Disma[i]lled (*desmaillies*), deprived of its mail, hacked about, rent, 4357.
 Disnature, unnatural conduct, 376.
 Disordinatly, foolishly, lit. disorderly, 3560, 3670.
 Disording (*desordonnee*), unruly, unbridled, loose in behaviour, 2768.
 Dispend, spend, 41.
 Displesance, sorrow, 3741.
 Dispoilled, undressed; Desp. hym, undressed himself, 2888; Desphir, undressed herself, 2908.
 Distayn, deprive, 509. Ch. [Lit. to deprive of colour, cause to fade.]
 Distrained (*destrains*), afflicted, vexed, 614. Ch.
 Distroed, destroyed, 4673, 4790.
 Distrussand (*destruiant*), destroying, 4082.
 Dole (*dueil*, *douleur*), grief, 657, 3206, 3669, 3763, 3969.
 Dolent (*dolent*), mournful, sorry, 514, 3395.
 Dongun, 1130, { donjon tower,
 Dongon, 4766, { tower, dungeon.
 Donion, 2983, { See *Donjon* in Burguy.
 Doubtance (*doubtance*), dread, 2130.
 Doubte, *sb.* fear, 2541; *vb.* are in fear, fear the worst, 1336. O.Fr. *douter*.
 Doubted, feared, 1209, 1218, 1369, 2814, etc.; ryght doubted (*redoubtee*), much feared or respected, 829.
 Doubty, doughty, 1636, 4821, 6281. [A false spelling.]
 Doubtyng, fearing, 4819.
 Doucet (*doulx*), sweet, 877, 972, 1008, 3898.
 Doughter, daughter, 5389.
 Doughteth (*doubte*), feareth, 117.
 Doute, *vb.* to fear, 2318; *sb.* fear, 4383. See *Doubte*.
 Drad, [miswritten *draw*] dreaded, 5326. Ch.
 Dresse, (1) *vb. act.* to direct, guide, 2604, 4490; *vb. refl.* go, 2195; vs dresse, direct ourselves to, i. e. go to, attain to, 6538; *vb. neut.*

- to go, 325, 5957. (2) to succeed in getting, 2179.
- Dressed, erected, lifted, 4798; see *dresser* in Burguy. Also, arrived, come, 1444, 2063.
- Dubte, to doubt, fear, 459.
- Dured (*durerent*), lasted, 992; Durith, lasteth, 6136. Ch.
- Dreuyng, driving, hurrying, 1727, 2064. Cf. *Morte Arthure*, l. 761.
- Drust, durst, 1101.
- Dyght, to appoint for himself, 5408.
- Ebrew, Hebrew, p. 198.
- Edefy, build up, 4009; Edified, built, 1684, 2490.
- Egal, Egall, like, equal; p. 182, 951, 2353.
- Egally, *adj.* like, equal, 1165.
- Egge, edge, 5932.
- Ellyswhere, elsewhere, 4774.
- Emprise, reputation, worth, renown, 2013. [This is the right sense in *Lancelot*, ll. 129, 269, 3458, though Burguy, Jam., Roq., and Cotg. give no other sense than *enterprise*.]
- Enbras, surround, lit. embrace, 395, 3304.
- Enbrasing, embracing, 2911, 3771.
- Enbrauded, embroidered, 1310. Cotg. gives "*brodé*, imbroyded."
- Encheson (*achoisson*), occasion, reason, 558, 2744, 5286. O.Fr. *achoise* or *encheison*, Lat. *occasio*. Ch.
- Endly, having an end, final, 4011.
- Enduryng, during, 4629.
- Endys, ends, 2531.
- Enfaimling (*affamee*), starving, succumbing to hunger, 1300.
- Enfelled, intrusted, 2617. O.Fr. *fieffer*, to give in sief; see Burguy, s. v. *fieu*.
- Engendrure, parentage, 6345, 6388.
- En-gree, in good part, 3819. Fr. *en gré*.
- Engine, skill, 5046; craft, contrivance, 4244, 4392, 5613, 5708. Lat. *ingenium*.
- Enhaused, raised, elevated, 6255. O.Fr. *enhalcer*, *enhaucier*.
- Enheritour, heir, 5013, 5357.
- Enlesing, lose (*inf. mood*), 5625.
- Enmeddis, amidst, 4223, 5823; Enmyddes, amidst, 870, 933, 1841, 3085, 3097, 4894, etc.
- Enpreising, praising, 1671.
- Enpreynted, imprinted, impressed, p. 10.
- Ensemble, together, 2474, 3996.
- Ensuffering, suffering, 4627.
- Entend (*actendez*), heed, 2746.
- Entendement, endeavour, p. 81, p. 84. Ch.
- Entent, intention, will, wish, p. 18, p. 82, p. 155; thoughts, 3300, 3394. Ch.
- Ententify, attentively, 5459.
- Entercommaunding (*sentre - commanderent*), mutually commending, 103.
- Entere, inter, 4941; Entered (*enter-ray*), interred, 1534, 3401, 3628.
- Entermet, to have dealings with, 215. [O.Fr. *entremetre*, but this gen. has the sense of undertake, attempt, like *Entremete* below.]
- Enterial, 591, } time; lit.
Enteriall, 1095, 2455, } interval.
- Entreloued, loved mutually, 3734; Entrelouing, loving mutually, 6352.
- Entremete (*entremectre*), to undertake, to take care to do, 3657.
- Entrepreignant (*entrepreinnant*), enterprising, 2504, 5073, 5355.
- Entreproched, approached each other, 2225.
- Entresembling, encounter, 1730.
- Entreual, 45, } time. See
Entreuall, 5165, } Enterial.
- Enuiron, *prep.* round about, 570; *adv.* round about, round and round, 877, 2905, 4800, 5520. Fr. *environ*. Ch.
- Enuironnee, *adv.* round about, 5480; *prep.* round about, 3874.
- Enuyron, *adv.* round, 4447.
- Equipollent (*lequipolent*), equivalent, to the same effect, 530.
- Erbigage, lodging, tent, 1017. O.Fr. *erbegier*, Roq.
- Ert, (thou) art, 4256, 5573.
- Escarmish (*lescarmuce*), skirmish, 2210.
- Eschange, change, 3727. Ch.

- Eschawfe, warm, 969. O.Fr. *eschaufer*.
 Eschew, flee from, avoid, 4074. Ch.
 Escried, cried out, 2185. O.Fr. *escrier*.
 Esglise, a church, 2630. O.Fr. *esglise*.
 Espouse, bride, 931, 954, 1000.
 Estat, rank, 794, 813; position, 2903; state, condition, 3496. Ch.
 Etern, eternal, 6437. Ch.
 Eueridell, every whit, entirely, 2800, 2920, 4253; Euerydele, 423; Euerydell, all over, entirely, 2800, 3755.
 Exampleir (*lexemplaire*), a copy, p. 131; Exemplair, a model, a pattern, 6377. [Lat. *exemplar* has both the above meanings.]
 Exort, exhortation, 3972.
 Expresse, exactly, 3004.
- Faccion (*facon*), fashion, make, 3100.
 Fade, to dispose, arrange, p. 164. A.S. *fadian*, to set in order, dispose.
 Fader, father, 683, 4642, 5118; Faider, 6274; Fayder, 5258.
 Faders, father's, 4628.
 Famyulous, hungry, 6258. Lat. *famelicus*, O.Fr. *familleus*.
 Fantain, fountain, 323, 765, 4161.
 Fantesie, fancy, 358; a vain thing, p. 58. Ch.
 Fantesied, fancied, imagined, p. 45.
 Fantasy, 3485, } fancy.
 Fantisie, p. 58, }
 Fardell (*fardel*), a bundle, 573. Ch.
 Fauchon (*faulx, branc*), a falchion, sword, 3042, 3044, 3051. Lat. *falx*.
 Faut, to lack, 2175; Faute, 797; hence Fauteth = lacketh, 6379; Fauth, miswritten for fautith, lack, 1147; Fauted, failed, wanted, 4278; Fauting, lacking, p. 5. Cf. Sp. *faltar*, It. *faltare*.
 Fayn, an error for Sayn, say, p. 184.
 Fe; in the phr. in fe = under tribute, 2511; also in fe = in fief, in fee, 2630.
 Feeblesse, feebleness, 3740. Ch.
 Feld, a field, 1702, 2216. Ch.
- Fele, many, 2518, 2683. Mæso-G *filu*. Ch.
 Fell, fierce, 1237, 4063, 4760, 5410, 5631.
 Felonesly, cruelly, evilly, 270, 5785.
 Felony, perfidy, treason, 2833. Roq.
 Femine, feminine, 3820.
 Fend, a fiend, 4075, 4141, 5783. Ch.
 Fenestre, 3823, 4932, } a window.
 Fenistre, 3863, }
 Lat. *fenestra*.
 Fentise, cowardice, 4214.
 Fersely, fiercely, 5870.
 Ferrom, 629, etc. See A-ferrom.
 Fers, fierce, 4655.
 Fet, (1) fetched, 2782; (2) feats, acts, 6330.
 Fiffe, five, 5265.
 Fifte, fifth, 4426.
 Fill, fell, 3046, 3088, 4286, 5894; befel, fell out, 446, 2731; Fille, fell, 5604.
 Fin, 3645. See Fine (1).
 Finabilly (*finablement*), finally, 5385 6493.
 Finance (*finance*), ransom, 1853. Burguy.
 Find, in the phr. wel find = to pay, recompense, 1291.
 Fine, (1) extreme, very, 4175, 6155; see *Fin* in Burguy; (2) conclusion, end, 4011. Ch.
 Flaelles (*fleaux*), fials, 2999. Lat. *flagellum*.
 Floure-delise (*fleurs de lis*), fleurs-de-lis, 1006.
 Fly, flew, fled away, 4905, 5652.
 Foley, foolish, 3546.
 Folily, foolishly, 5602. Ch.
 Foltish, foolish, 3322, 5559. "Folett, *idem quod Folte. Fatuellus*." Pr. Parv.
 Folyly, foolishly, 3260.
 Fonden, found, p. 173.
 Fong, received, 2423; got, 1265; received, took in, 1333.
 Fonge, to take, 4828. Ch. A.S. *fōn*.
 Forcelet, should rather be spelt Forceret, a casket, 1081. See the note to the line. "Forceret, petil coffre, cassette." Roq. See note to "Foorcere" in Pr. Parv.
 Forigers, foragers, 1815.

- Formelet, should rather be spelt Fermelet, a brooch, a jewelled fastening, 1082. "*Fermal, fermail, fermeillet*, Agrafe, boucle, chaîne, crochet, carcan." Roq.
- Forshend, utterly destroyed, 3306. A.S. *for-* and *scendan*.
- Forsmete (*detrenche*), smote down, 2104.
- Fortake, kept prisoner, 5386.
- For-takyng (*pourprins*), 5591. The Eng. word means a taking of prisoners, cf. Fortake; but the true meaning of *pourprins* is an enclosure, a domain. See Bur. and Roq.
- Forth - progresse, journey, 3199, 5029.
- For-why, wherefore, why, 3117.
- Forwoxen, overgrown, huge, 2990. A.S. *forweaxan*.
- Fouchesafe, vouchsafe, 2039.
- Fouled (*afola*), killed, 4278. "*Afoler*, maltraiter, blesser, meurtrier, tuer." Bur.
- Founte, 2650. The words "Raymounde" and "stounde" show that the word should be "founte." It should also prob. be joined to *in* preceding it; and we get in-founte = enter (sc. heaven), go in, go up, ascend. It is thus a compound of the O.E. *founte*, to go (*Morte Arthure*, 1228; *Lancelot*, 2612); A.S. *fundian*. Cf. A.S. *ingān*, to enter.
- Fourge, to make, perform, p. 4, p. 25, p. 133; Fourged, made, constructed, p. 162, 257, 579; built, p. 134, 1682, 3853. O.Fr. *forgier*. Bur.
- Fourging, construction, 1002.
- Foyson (*foison*), plenty, 32. See Fuson, Fusion.
- Franchise, freedom, 3745; territory (see Pr. Parv.), 4961; hertes franchise = to its heart's content, 5472.
- Franchised, free, noble, lit. rendered a free man, 1487.
- Franke, free, 1506.
- Fransh, French, p. 198.
- Fray, terror, 4901.
- Frendlyhed, friendliness, 1403, 6448; of frendlyhede, for friendship's sake, 3022.
- Frenshest, most Frenchlike, p. 175.
- Frike (*frique*), lusty, delicate, 2803. "Fryke, or craske, or yn grete helthe. *Crassus*." Pr. Parv. See *frique*, Roq.
- Fro-thens, thence, 3294, 3326, 3449, etc.
- Fro-whens, whence, 3762, 5830.
- Full, in an evil hour, lit. foully, 3263; that full hym come = that evil had come to him, or, that he had come to him in an evil hour, 2992: Fr. text, *que mal y vint*.
- Fume, smoke, 3957.
- Fumy, smoky, 3954.
- Funde, find, 4676.
- Fundementes, foundations, 1121.
- Fusion (*foison*), plenty, 128, 4362, 5466; a number, multitude, 2283; 2743. Lat. *fusio*.
- Fuson, plenty, 985, 5287; number, 1113, 1721.
- Fuste (*poing*), fist, 4301.
- Fyn, faithful, sincere, 3831. "*Fine*, vraie, sincère, fidèle." Roq.
- Garison, healing; take hym in garison = undertake to heal him, 1335. O.Fr. *garison*, from vb. *garir* = Mæso-G. *warjan*.
- Gain, against, 2827, 3749, 3793.
- Gane, did (*aux. vb.*), 5402.
- Garnyson, stronghold, castle, 5467. See Garsone in Pr. Parv. [The Fr. text has *en garnison* = by way of provisions, but the translator has not so taken it.]
- Gayn, towards, 345, 564; against, 2791, 5863.
- Geant, giant, 4676, 4687; Geaunt, 3233; Giaunt, 3197.
- Gent, fair, pretty, 2441, 3490, 3590.
- Gentile (*gente*), gentle, noble, 308; noble person, 643; pretty, 1611. The comp. is Gentelere, prettier, 1612; the sup. is Gentillest, prettiest, 342.
- Gentillesse, graciousness, nobleness, 3175. Roq.
- Gere, contrivance, plan; lit. gear, 276.
- Gesian (*gesine*), child-bed, 4391,

- 4397, 4529, 5581. From O.Fr. *gesir*, Lat. *jacere*.
 Gete, procure; gete do hym for to dy = procure his death, 3655. *See* Gett.
 Gett, 3942, } gotten, obtained. In
 Gette, 4319, } l. 5932 the sense is,
 whether (the stroke) was gotten
 with the back or the sword-edge.
 Gidour, guide, 4105, 5833.
 Gif, given, 5798.
 Gisarmes (*pl.*), a weapon of which
 the shape is disputed, perhaps a
 battle-axe with a spike at the
 back. *See* Bur., Roq., and Way's
 note to Gyserne in Pr. Parv.
 1722.
 Gise, guise, manner, way, 5866.
 Ch.
 Glad, 992. *See* the note.
 Glente (*glissa*), glanced aside, 253.
 Ch. O.Fr. *glinsier*, Roq.
 Glinte (*clissa*), slipped, 4934.
 Glode, glided, 726.
 Goldish, golden, 1348.
 Goddoughter, 3722.
 Godmodere, godmother, 274.
 Goodlokest, goodliest, fairest, 343.
 [In the *Piers. Pl.* MSS. are many
 such forms, as, Lightloker, Mysti-
 loker, Sadloker, Slilokest, Wik-
 kedlokest, Wisloker.]
 Goste, spirit, 3213, 4927; creature,
 being, 4809; Gostes, spirits, p. 46.
 Gouvernail, behaviour, 844; arrange-
 ment, management, contrivance,
 861, 5561, 5774; Gouvernall, con-
 trol, might, 6070.
 Gouverneth hir, comports herself,
 2765.
 Grad, shouted, 2253. A.S. *grædan*.
 Grame, grief, 2663, 3310, 4469, 4940.
 A.S. *grama*. Ch.
 Gre, agreement, accord, 3951. Fr.
grè.
 Greabill, suitable to the occasion,
 devout, 5176.
 Greabilly, satisfactorily, pleasantly,
 1543.
 Greable, agreeable to, 6580.
 Gree. *See* En-gree, 3819.
 Gree, I agree, 5019.
 Grees (*degres*), steps, 4917, 4908,
 5434. Cf. *grissens* in Forby.
 Greithed tham, got themselves
 ready, arrayed themselves, 1411;
 Greithed, made ready, 4168. Sc.
graiith. O.N. *greitha*.
 Gret, greeted, 5524.
 Gretth, an error, either for Greeth
 = agreeth, suiteth; or else for
 Goeth, 6561.
 Grice, steps, 1427. *See* Grees.
 Grint, ground, 3267.
 Grinting, grinding, 2141. Ch.
 Grohund (*liurier*), greyhound, 1389.
 Groin, snout, 5875, 5877.
 Grome, man, being, 2990. Cf.
Gawayn, 1006.
 Gud, good, 4952.
 Gudfader, godfather, 274.
 Guerdon, sb. a reward, 551; vb. to
 reward, 1876. O.H.G. *widerlbn*,
 changed in Low Lat. into *wider-*
donum, whence It. *guiderdone*,
 O.Fr. *guerdon*.
 Gyed, ruled, lit. guided, 2487.
 Gynnyng, a beginning, 789, 3977.
 Habilité (*habileté*), ability, dex-
 terity, 2341, 3021, 6139.
 Habill (*habille*), able, dexterous,
 mighty, 2355; Hable, active,
 4536, 4639, 4876.
 Habound, abound, 4429.
 Had, was, 5065, 5326; was had =
 was, 5770, 5993; placed, set,
 5492. Cf. Fr. *y avoir*.
 Hamwarde, homeward, 3450.
 Han = hath, 2699. [Prob. an error
 due to the pl. *sones* preceding. Fr.
 text, *a mis*.]
 Hanche (*hance*), haunch, thigh, 3054,
 4333; Hanches, thighs, 5643.
 Hansell, an earnest, a gift (ironical),
 4885. O.N. and Dan. *handsel*.
 Hapne, to happen to do, to succeed
 in doing a thing, 5884; Hapned,
 happened on, lighted on, 5871.
 [Wrongly translated; the Fr.
 has *happer* = clutch, seize.]
 Hardesse (*hardiesse*), hardihood,
 5948.
 Hattyd of, hated by, 5091.
 Haunt, to use, p. 167; to exercise,
 prove, 2524; go, approach (Fr.
 text, *yroit*), 4396. O.Fr. *hanter*,
 Bur.

- Hanour, possessions, riches, wealth, 3191, 3323, 4769, 5686. Fr. *avoir*.
 Haused, raised, lifted up, 3083, 4265, 5883.
 Hautain, loud, 2829, 3403, 3547, 4192, etc. Ch.
 Hautanly, loudly, 2185; Hautaynly (*hautement*), loudly, 1906, 1977, 3317.
 Hautyng, loud, 236. See Hautain.
 Hawse, exaltation, 498. O.Fr. *halt*, Lat. *altus*, high.
 He, high, 132, 4631, 6395.
 Hed, heat, 3557. [Prob. an error for *het* or *hete*, as in l. 2935.] Fr. text, *chaunt*.
 Heder, hither, 152, 2843. A.S. *hider*.
 Heder-to, hitherto, to this time, 4412.
 Hend, gracious, courteous, 6144. See *All. Poems*.
 Hent, to take in hand, undertake, 598; took, 129, 3909; Hent and went = took and went, 810; to have, 1837; receive, take, p. 157, 683, 2411, 5241; to procure, 5740; to hent = for one to take, 5808; hys sight hent = catch with his sight, perceive (Fr. text, *percevoir*), 5493; arrived at, got to, 5272; received, had, 5009. A.S. *hentan*, to hunt for, catch. Ch.
 Herber, garden, 6024. Ch.
 Herbigage, lodging, 1790.
 Herbiging, taking up their quarters, 1313.
 Herbourgh, to harbour, shelter, 6523. O.N. *herbergja*.
 Herd, hard, 2586, 4482; herd fast, 5645, where Fr. text has *dure feste* = hard *feast*, said ironically.
 Herdly, shepherd-like, 5117.
 Herite, heritage, acquisition; non herite = there is no acquiring anything, p. 203; inheritance, possession, 38. O.Fr. *herite*, from Lat. *hereditas*. Bur.
 Hert, heart, 3206.
 Hertly, heartily, p. 73.
 Hest, behest, command, 90, 907, 5313. Ch.
 Hiduous, hideous, 5136.
 Hiduou[s]nesse, horror, 3494.
 Hiest, highest, 4925.
 Hild, held, 4994.
 Hire, to hear, 3877, 4763, 5055, 5529.
 Hiring, hearing, 4202.
 His, sign of gen. case, 4874.
 Hit, it, 3109.
 Hithe, height, 5045. Cf. *Heythe* in Pr. Parv.
 Ho, who, p. 134, p. 136, 2368; which (of two), 4122, 4131; whoso, 5377.
 Ho many, how many, 4042. [If so, *ho* should be *hou*, as elsewhere; but probably *many* is an error for *may*, as at l. 6572, and we should read "ho may" = who-ever may.]
 Hodelnesse, secrecy, 2080; oblivion, 5961. *Hidellike* = secretly, occurs in *Gen. and Ex.*, l. 2882. Cf. Sc. *hode*, to hide; Jam.
 Hoder, whither, 2764.
 Hoir (*hoir*), an heir, 1973; Hoires, heirs, 508, 5323, 5554, 5684.
 Hold, held as, considered as, 5204, 5338.
 Hold, faithful, friendly, 2146. A.S. *hold*.
 Holde, holding, possession, p. 34.
 Hole, holy, 4963.
 Honourous, 3251, } honourable.
 Honourous, 3236, }
 Hostage, temporary abode, 2475. See *hoste* in Bur.
 Houith, behoveth, 3657.
 Houred, lit. divided in hours, hence set, appointed; always in phr. houred braid, houred tyde (or the like), = set time, particular moment, 528, 2695.
 Hout, out, 5652.
 How-were-it, howbeit, 3207.
 Hug, huge, 4940, 5959.
 Hume (perhaps), low, deep, 2882. Cf. L. *humilis*, low; or perhaps for *humid*. [The Fr. text has merely, *en vng puis*.]
 Hurd, 3564, 3765, } heard.
 Hurde, 4783, 5258, }
 Hurteling, knocking together, pushing, tussling, 4328, 4330. Fr. *heurter*.
 Hy. See An-hy.
 Hy, hasten, 2950. Ch.
 Hyduous, hideous, terrible, 5770.

- Hyer, in phr: more hyer = higher, 5435.
 Hyre, hear, 3388, 4405.
 Hys, sign of gen. case, 6007.
 Iape, a jest, 2636, 5695. Ch.
 Iawne (*Iausne*), yellow, 971.
 Iesseron, coat of small mail, 4335.
 O.Fr. *jazeran*, Bur. Roq.
 I-horsed, mounted on horseback, provided with horses, 886.
 Ile, 1570, 3040, } isle, island.
 Ille, 1578, }
 Image, creature, 1508.
 In, a shortened form of Inly, very, exceedingly, 5077, 5899, 6023.
 Incongrew, *adv.* unfitly, wrongly, 4389.
 Iniquite, misery, misfortune, 4156.
 Inly (lit. inwardly), very, extremely, 27, 168, 3950, 4656, 5072, 5869.
 Ch.
 Innepee, suddenly, on a sudden (?), 3823. Apparently contr. from Fr. *inopiné*.
 I-now, enough, 165, 457, 781, 804, etc.
 Instance, time, 1064, 2932, 3106.
 Into (*en*), in, 875.
 Ioint, an arrangement, lit. a juncture or joining together, 5019.
 Iolyest, prettiest, 343.
 Ionglyng, jangling, i. e. garrulity, 3751. "*Iangelynge, Garrulacio.*" Pr. Parv.
 Iornay, lit. a day's work; hence trouble, labour, p. 141.
 Iournay, a day, 1851, 4068; a set day, 58; hence a day's conflict, a fighting-bout, combat, 4123. Cf. the expression, "to gain *the day*."
 Ioustes, joustings, 988, 989. Ch.
 Ioynant, adjoining, 4513.
 Ioyned, enjoined, 5146.
 Is, used as gen. case-ending, 28, 5750.
 Iumelles (*iumelles*), *s. pl.* side-posts (of the gates); or *adj.* double, folding, 1182. Cotg. has *jumelles*, the side-cheeks of a presse.
 Iuparde, a doubtful result, possible danger, 5458. Fr. *jeu parti*.
 Iustice, *vb.* to rule, govern, 3807.
 Iusticere, a dispenser of justice, 5308.
 I-wisse, certainly, 4847. A.S. *gewis*. Ger. *gewiss*.
 Kechins, kitchens, 881.
 Kenning, the extreme distance at sea to which the sight can reach, 3365. [This distance has been much over-rated, as thus—"Scylley is a *kenning*, that is to say, about xx. miles from the very Westeste point of Cornewaulle;" Leland, Itin. iii. f. 6.—"thre *kennynges* ferre on the see, that is, one and twenty legthes ferre;" Prose *Romance of Melusine*, fol. 61, p. 104.]
 Kepe, kept, 2931.
 Keruyng, cutting, 5889.
 Knakked, hurried (?), 2784. [The Fr. text has *Se Rapa* = he hastened. "Knock, to move briskly about;" Wright. But see the note.]
 Knakking, knocking, 1733. Fr. text, *mailloient*.
 Knewlich, 844, } knowledge.
 Knowlich, 4121, }
 Knowledgeing, knowledge, 2773.
 Kynred, kindred, 213.
 Labbyng, blabbing, 3751. Du. *labben*. Ch.
 Lachesse, negligence, p. 11, 6574. O.Fr. *lachesse*. Ch.
 Lad, led, 1251, 2754, 5800; led over, changed, 2938; conducted, governed, 5322.
 Lade, passed through, endured, suffered, 3785; much as in the phr. to lead a life.
 Lateis, lattice, grating, cage, 4747; Latise (*traille*), 4666.
 Launcegay, a javelin, dart, 2108. Compounded of Fr. *lance*, and *zagaye*, a Moorish pike, Sp. *azagaya*. Ch.
 Leche, a physician, 5143. Ch.
 Led, laid down, 2889.
 Lemys, limbs, 4237. A.S. *lim*.
 Lenght, length, 5859.
 Lepete, leapt, 3046. [An error for *lepte*; see l. 3070.]

- Lere, to teach, p. 77. A.S. *læran*.
Ch.
- Lese, to lose, 506, 1454, 2892, 3642,
etc. Ch.
- Lesing, a lie, 6293. A.S. *læsung*.
Ch.
- Lesing, losing, 5548.
- Lesingmonger, a liar, 3604.
- Lesingour, a liar, 5753.
- Lesse, lose, 3542, 3752.
- Lest, least, 69, 87.
- Lete doo make, caused to be made,
5167; lete make, cause to be
made, 691.
- Lette, a hindrance, 5903. Ch.
- Lette, prevented, hindered, 3047.
A.S. *lætan*.
- Leue, in the phr. parting-leue =
leave taking, 5060.
- Leuer, liefer, 3205. Ch.
- Leuer (*leuier*), a lever, a huge mace,
4177, 4265.
- Leuerey, delivery, 560.
- Leuyng, hys = during his life, 5329;
Leuing, life, 488.
- Lifte, left (hand), 4496.
- Ligging, lying, 4511, 4785. A.S.
ligan. Ch.
- Light, lieth, 453, 1023, 4523, 6105.
- Linage, lineage, 1036, 4630, 4926,
5033.
- Loge, tent, 985; Logge, lodging,
abode, 5168; Logges (*logies*),
tents, 2220.
- Loke (*enserray, serre*), locked up,
constrained, bound up, 1533; was
locked, was bound up, 3774.
Ch.
- Lome, frequently, 119.
"The Lion lete cri, as hit was do,
For he hird lome to tell."
Pol. Songs; ed. Wright, p. 197.
A.S. *ge-lome*.
- Longing, belonging, 1939, 2671.
- Longith hir, which belongs to her,
2415.
- Loos (*los*), praise, p. 96, 1225, 4215,
5387. Ch. "Loos, or fame."
Pr. Parv. See Lose.
- Loote, lot, 3184.
- Lored, taught, 3962. See Lere.
- Lorn out fro wit, deprived of wit,
3885.
- Losce (*perte*), loss, 3434, 3608.
- Lose (*loz*), praise, p. 157. See Loos.
- Louers, louvres (see note), 1175.
"That no light leope yn at lover
ne at loupe." *Piers Plowman*, C.
xxi. 288.
- Lowpes, loop-holes, 1175.
- Lust, listeth, wishes, desires, p. 31,
2994; pleases, vouchsafes, 286;
please, 367, 689, 760; hym luste
= it please him, 5379.
- Lust, sb. will, pleasure, 328. A.S.
lust. Ch.
- Lyn, linen; or rather perhaps, flax.
A.S. *lin*, flax.
- Lynde, lime-trees; wodes lynde =
lime-trees of the wood; 159.
A.S. *lind*, pl. *linde* (Cædmon, p.
197, l. 4).
- Lyueray, delivery, 560.
- Made, mad, 3559.
- Mahyne (*mehengnie*), disgrace,
blemish, 6356. See *mahain* in
Bur. and Roq. Cf. It. *magagna*,
E. *maim*.
- Maillet, mallet, 4698, 4716. "Mal-
yet, betyl." Pr. Parv.
- Mainè, a suite, 1087, 1305.
- Maistry, in the phr. to gret maistry
= with great art; Fr. text, *par
grant maistrise*, 4503; Maistric,
art, skill, 188.
- Maker, poet, author, 6106.
- Malerous, unfortunate, 6473.
- Malice, *adj.* (*yrez*), angry, irate, 2780,
3039, 3446, 3537, etc.
- Manhede, manhood, p. 92.
- Manion, many a one, p. 170.
- Manlyhed, manliness, 4352.
- Manoir, mansion, 619.
- Manson, abode, 5169.
- Manyon, many a one, 634.
- Marbre, marble, 4101.
- Marches (*marches*), frontiers, and
hence, lands, territory, 5085;
frontier-lands, 5314.
- Maree, land by the sea (?), 1586.
The Fr. text has merely, *de la
contre*. O.Fr. *maree*, "bord de la
mer"; Godefroy.
- Maried, vexed, 4549. [An error for
Marred, q. v.]
- Markois, a marquis, p. 115, 850;
marquises, 6342.

- Marred (*marriz*), vexed, afflicted, 2140, 3509, 3516. Roq.
- Matrimonial, *sb.* a wedding, 952.
- Mayne, or Maynee, a suite, a company of followers, household, 826, 2456, 4914, 5199. O.Fr. *maisnee*. Bur.
- Me, one, people, used like the Fr. *on*, 6562; *K. Horn*, 366.
- Meddes, the midst, 2531.
- Meene, middling, 4061.
- Meene, 4613, } mean, way.
- Mene, 4983, }
- Melled (*meslerent*), lit. meddled with; hence, had to do with, were busy about, 1545; (*mesle*), lit. mixed; hence, smeared, 2819.
- Melling, an encounter, 1326.
- Memoir, memorial, p. 151.
- Menal, menial, 900.
- Menusing, diminution, 6570. Cf. O.Fr. *menu*, minute.
- Mercy, in phr. graunt mercy = many thanks, 5633.
- Messe (*messe*), mass, 943, 953, 6095.
- Methaphisike, p. 80. [Ch.]
- Metrely, metrically, 6566.
- Meue, move, 6557; Meued, moved, 3275; Meueth, moveth, 5564.
- Middes, amidst, 5779.
- Ministre (*monstier*), minster, 2596, 2621, 3693; Minstre, 3319, 4856.
- Miscaunce, mischance, harm, 5642.
- Miscreantes, misbelievers, pagans, p. 52.
- Misded, misdeed, sin; hence, untruth, 5662.
- Misdede, misdid, sinned, 4646.
- Misfall, to have misfortune, be unlucky, 3614.
- Mister, need, 5213, 5874, 6253. O.Fr. and Prov. *mester*. Roq.
- Mistriste, mistrust, 4108.
- Mo, more (with reference to number), 964, 3696. A.S. *mā*. Ch.
- Moder, mother, 4850. Ch.; *adj.* mother, native, 6573.
- Moisted, moistened, 3574.
- Moisty, moist, 3953.
- Moitees, halves, 5936.
- Moitie (*moitie*), half, 734.
- Mondiall (*mondain*), worldly, of this world, 18; earthly, human, 3915. Prov. *mondial*.
- Montance, amount, quantity, number, 5229. Roq.
- Morteis, to grant in mortmain, 6083; Mortesing, granting in mortmain, 5287. See *Amortir*, Cotg.
- Most, 4987, } must. Ch.
- Moste, 5291, }
- Mouth, to speak, utter, 2852.
- Mow, may, are able, 5446. Ch.
- Muable, changeable, 814. Fr. *muable*.
- Murmured, murmuring, complaint, 3603.
- Musarde (*musart*), one who is bemused, a fool, 5537. Bur.
- Muserde, as Musarde, 5559.
- Muses, thoughts, musings, 3431, 6513.
- Mustred, fully exhibited, shown, 3003. O.Fr. *mostrer*. Sp. and Port. *mostrar*.
- Mynstracy, minstrelsy, 944; *Lancelot*, 2762.
- Mynstre, a minster, 4987, 5247.
- Natheles, nevertheless, p. 6, 5882.
- Nauue, ship, 5673. See *Nave*. Roq.
- Nawhere, nowhere, 4388, 4483.
- Nay; in the phr. is no nay = it cannot be denied, 501, 3023, 3665. Ch.
- Nehed, approached, 3005. A.S. *genēhwian*, Mæso-G. *nehwjan*.
- Nere, never, 5702.
- Nerre, nearer, 4111, 5826. A.S. *nēarra*.
- Neuer-for-neuer, never at any time, 4906, 5139.
- Noblehed, nobleness, 6339.
- Nobles, renown, 21; splendour, 5474; Noblesse, grandeur, splendour, 5438, 5460; renown, 2658. See *Noblesce*, Roq.
- Nobley, fine apparel, rich clothing, 2656.
- Noght-for-that (*non pourtant*), nevertheless, 2815, 4077, 4222.
- Noisaunce (*enui*), vexation, 1865, 1892; displeasure, 3538, 5535; grief, 3373, 3738, 3915, 5641. See *Noysance*.
- Nombred, numbered, 3687.
- Nome, *pt. pl.* took, 1403. Mæso-G. and A.S. *ninan*.

- Norish, nurse's, 3806; nurse, 3837; nurses, 4025.
 Noriture, nurture, 3837.
 Not-for-that, notwithstanding, 4703; nevertheless, 5883.
 Nouell, novel, new, 5194, 5397; news, 2717, etc.
 Nouels (*nouvelles*), news, 45, 4432, 4740; Nouelles, news, 1627, 1949, 2125, 2206, etc.
 Noyed (*ennoyee*), vexed, annoyed, 242, 1866; was vexed, grieved, 623.
 Noyng, sorrow, grief, 2126.
 Noyours (*nuysons*), annoyers, foes, 1663.
 Noysance (*ennuy*), discomfort, trouble, grief, 383, 401; annoyance, offence, 2512. *See* Noisaunce.
- O, one, a, 3770, 3773. Ch.
 Obliuy, 3798, 5416, } oblivion.
 Oblyuy, 5137, 5141, }
 Occision, slaughter, 5320, 5908.
 Oder, other, 5108.
 Of, off, 5825, 5889, etc.
 Offer yng, dealing a blow, 3090.
 Of-fors, perforce, 5487, 5804, 6405.
 Of-new, newly, lately, 3082; anew, again, 3511, 6101.
 On-lif, alive, 4204. *Gen. and Ex.*, 2417.
 Ooste, host, 1313.
 Ope, *adj.* open, 4907.
 Or, ere, 4084.
 Ordained (*fait ordonner*), made provision for, 2428.
 Ordaynyng, set in order, draw up, 2222.
 Ordinat, regular, p. 188. Lat. *ordinatus*. Ch.
 Ordinaunce, appointment, due order, 63, 699.
 Orgulous (*orgueilleux*), proud, 2955, 4067; surly, furious, 5771.
 Orgulously, proudly, 3543.
 Orison, prayer, 4969, 5171, 6425.
 Orpheline, an orphan, 1708. Fr. *orphelin*, fem. *orpheline*.
 Os, as, 554, 2076, 3372, 6424. [It occurs in some of the *Piers Plowman* MSS.]
 Osey, *i. e.* Alsace, the name of a wine, 982.
- Other (*ou*), or, p. 198.
 Ouermette, excessive, immense, 3101. A.S. *ofer-mæte*, immensus. Grein.
 Ouertwart, perversely, hence excessively, 3171. Cf. Du. *overdwars*, athwart.
 Ouise (*toit*), eaves, upper edge of the wall, 5504. A.S. *efese*, a margin, eaves. "Ovis, eaves." Barnes, Gloss. of Dorset Dialect.
 Ourtorned, was overturned, 4713.
 Outerly, utterly, 3683, 4050, 4291, 5203.
 Outre, utter, speak, 1233, 1563, 2816, 3156, etc.; Outred, uttered, spoke, 1024, 1437.
 Outring, uttering, saying, 2647, 3570.
 Owe, to possess, own, have with one, 75; fiftene yeres gan owe = was fifteen years old, 4546. A.S. *agan*.
 Owyd (*auoit*), he had, possessed, held, 1298.
- Paceyfed. *See* Pateysed.
 Pagent, page, p. 79.
 Pain, 721. *See* Pane.
 Panche, paunch, 5773.
 Pane, a stake, 724, the same as Pain in 721. *See* Pane in Pr. Parv.; "*Panne de bois* is particularly the piece of timber that sustains a gutter between the roofs of two fronts, or houses." Cotg. [In both places, *pale* would have been a better word, as the Fr. text has *pel*.]
 Pane, lappet, flap, 5654. "*Pan*, the skirt of a gown, the pane of a hose, of a cloke." Cotg.
 Pannes, pains, 1045. *Lancelot*, 1273.
 Parage (*paraige*), parentage, birth, 475, 6007. Roq.
 Parcas, perchance, 3690. *See* Per-cas.
 Parcelly, partially, 4015.
 Parde, par Dieu, 155, 3993.
 Parfight, perfect, 3994.
 Parfightnesse, perfection, p. 9.
 Parlement, a parliament, 2363; talk, discourse, 2653.

- Part here (*partis dycy*), depart hence, 2839; part to you here (*part toy dicy*), depart thou hence, 5636; Parted, departed, 2972, 5157.
- Party, side, 228.
- Passe, pace, 6068.
- Passed, departed this life, deceased, 6182.
- Passingly, surpassingly, very richly, 5299.
- Pastay, a pasty, 5945. "Pasty, or pye." Fr. Parv.
- Pastour (*pastour*), a shepherd, 5117.
- Pateysed (*prenoit a pastiz*), laid under tribute, 2530. See the note. "Pastis, contribution dont on est convenu, accord, convention; *pactio*." Roq. "Patisser, payer l'impôt"; Godefroy.
- Pauilon, tent, pavilion, 911, 1001, 2010, 5416; Paulons, tents, 869, 876.
- Paupires (*papier*), papers, 4735.
- Pawne, palm of the hand, 4306.
- Pay, pleasure, 824, 1034, 5542. Lat. *pacare*.
- Payny (*payennie*), heathendom, Pagan lands, 1564.
- Peled (*pilliez*), pillaged, 2169.
- Pensell, pennon, streamer, 1720. O.Fr. *pennoncel*.
- Pensifnesse, sorrow, 4982.
- Penticost, 6182.
- Percas, perhaps, 3521, 5637.
- Perdè, par Dieu, 735.
- Perdurable, everlasting, 6489.
- Perdurabelly, 283, } everlastingly.
- Perdurabilly, 6496, }
- Perdurabilite, 3595, } everlast-
- Perdurabilnesse, 6537, } ingness.
- Pere, peer, equal, 3472. Ch.
- Perfixst, fixed, 700.
- Pering, appearing, 5944.
- Perish, to cause to perish, impoverish, destroy, 3933.
- Permanable, permanent, 6437.
- Perrey (*pierrie*), jewelry, 4503. Ch.
- Perron, a stone placed to help horse-men in mounting or dismounting, 4974. Gk. *petra*. Cf. It. *pietrone*. Bur.
- Pertly, openly, straightway, 5474. Cf. Apertly.
- Pesible, soft, gentle; in wise pesible = in an undertone, 3653.
- Pesibilly, peacefully, 2427; 5198.
- Petyvins, men of Poitou, 1362.
- Pight (*tendus*), pitched, 869, 918, 5417; set, placed, 5034.
- Pilour, pillar, 5035.
- Pine, pain, sorrow, torment, grief, 2899, 3634, 3668; trouble, 6515. A.S. *pin*.
- Pipe (*tonneau*), a large barrel, properly a half-tun, 5773, 5926. "Pype, vessel, or halfe-tunne." Fr. Parv.
- Pitty (*puis*), pit, 2882. [Cf. Moisty for Moist, Bryghty for Bryght.]
- Plain, openly, 2994; at once, 2557. "Plain, clairement." Roq. "De plain, out of hand." Cotg.
- Playnly (*a plain*), openly, 1567.
- Plener, full, plentiful, 2751.
- Plenerly, fully, 1931; plainly (Fr. *plaines pour voir*), 2047.
- Plesaunce, pleasure, p. 3, p. 65, p. 166, p. 208, etc. Ch.
- Plieth, bendeth, tendeth, p. 81.
- Plite, condition, 2721, 2803; ending plite = final state, death, 5681.
- Ply, to bend, 4188.
- Porete, poverty, 3666.
- Port, 1350, } door, gate.
- Porte, 2680, 5420, }
- Port, Porte, burden, distress, 3819, 3925, 3987. Fr. *porter*.
- Portraed, pourtrayed, 5478.
- Poscede, possess, 2629.
- Postell, apostle, 4963; Postelles, apostles, 6477.
- Poyntement (*ce point*), point agreed on, agreement, 505.
- Predestinat, predestined, 4379.
- Preise (*preisse*), prize, value, 1518. O.Fr. *preiser*. Bur.
- Printed, imprinted, 3859.
- Present, at this present, 2865.
- Presentens, present time, 1439. O.Fr. *tens*, time.
- Presently, now, 2370, 2841; immediately, 4748.
- President, precedent, original, p. 16.
- Prest, Preste, quickly, readily, 1697, 2542, 2739, 4486, 5023, 5403. Fr. *prêt*; O.Fr. *prest*.
- Preue, privy, secret, 3462.

PARTENAY.

T

- Prene, prove, *p.* 92; Preuyd, proved, *p.* 170; approved, *p.* 174.
 Preuyngly, with good proof, 2524.
 Preynted, imprinted, impressed, 382. "Preentyñ, *Inprimo*." Pr. Parv.
 Preysingly, laudably, *p.* 96.
 Prise (*pris*), high estimation, fame, *p.* 99; prize, 3895.
 Procincte (*lenchainete*), neighbourhood, precincts, 737.
 Proheim, *p.* 29, } proëm.
 Prohemy, *p.* 76, }
 Prologe, prologue, *p.* 76, *p.* 210.
 Promission; in phr. land of promise = land of promise, Palestine, 4634, 5713, 5759, 6063.
 Promittying, promising, 5128.
 Possesse; in phr. within possesse = in process of time, 5288.
 Prys (*pris*), honour, fame, 5387.
 Psaulmes, psalms, 1670. [*Read Psaulmes*.]
 Pulcrions, fair, 1263. Lat. *pulcher*.
 Punicion, punishment, 3671.
 Purchas, to get, acquire, 1300; attain, reach, 546; attain to, have, 733, 1347, 1447, 2939; that it may purchase = that I may translate it, *p.* 70; to purchas = to be got, to be had, 266; purchas syghes, heave sighs, 194; made purchas = acquired, 2497; riuage gan purchas = arrived, 2734.
 Purchassyng, means of recovery (for him), 1375; Fr. text, *Oncques homme ne le pouoit guerir*.
 Purer, poorer, 2872.
 Purueance, provision, 2376.
 Purueyd, provided, 2378.
 Pusance, power, skill, *p.* 187.
 Pusant, 4438, } mighty.
 Pusaunt, 212, }
 Pusantly, mightily, 2466.
 Quarell (*querelle*), suit, claim, demand, 5560. "*Querelle*, A sute, action, or process against," etc. Cotg.
 Quented (*acointe*), acquainted, 2636.
 Quicke, alive, 384; Quicke roche, live rock, 1125, 4352.
 Quite-clayne, a quit-claim, free and full pardon, 1885. Fr. text, *Il est de nous quite clamez*.
 Rabbishly, hastily, speedily, 4690.
 "Rapyñ or hastyñ. *Festino*." Pr. Parv. [Ravishing = rapid; Ch. Shak.]
 Radde, read, 3203, 4651.
 Raid, arrayed, drest, 1992, 4023. "Rayd, *ornatus*." Pr. Parv.
 Raid, in the phr. ill raid (*tres mal atourne*), = in an evil plight; lit. ill dressed, but Raymond was undressed already, 2915.
 Raide, in the phr. foule raide = put into an evil plight, 3090. O.Fr. *arroier*.
 Ramage (*Ramaige*), wild, uncultivated, 527.
 Randon, impetuosity, 1727. O.Fr. *randon*.
 Rase, to tear, rend, 5884, 5938. Fr. *raser*.
 Rather, sooner, 4011.
 Raundon, as Randon, 3048, 5866; haste, 707.
 Ray, array, apparel, 846, 2429.
 Rayd, (1) dressed, 2608; (2) read, 3186.
 Raynes, the reins, 4325.
 Rebaude (*ribaude*), a ribald fellow, a wretch, 2839, 4197.
 Recet, retreat, place of shelter, 159. O.Fr. *recet*, Bur.
 Rechaufed, warmed again, 4024.
 Recluse, become a recluse, 4966.
 Recomfort (*reconfort*), comfort, consolation, 412.
 Recommend, entrust, 5208.
 Recreant (*recreans*), defeated, utterly worsted, 4781, 5325.
 Recreantly, disgracefully, 4436.
 Redoute, *vb.* to fear, 2528; Redoubted, feared, 6168. Ch.
 Redrese, to set upright again, raise up, 3571.
 Redyfy, rebuild, 3700.
 Refection, repast, 5468.
 Refershing (*se Reffrechy*), refreshing, recruiting, 1306.
 Regiat way, royal way, king's highway, principal road, 5255. [Fr. text, *le grant chemin*.]
 Regned, reigned, 5314, 5321.

- Reioy, rejoice, 755, 2719; Reioyed, rejoiced, 2928, 5042; Reioyng, rejoicing, 425.
- Rekke (*rasceillier*), a rack (for horses), 913.
- Releued, lifted herself up again, 3789; Releued hym, lifted himself up again, 4226; Releuing, lifting himself up again, 4704.
- Remayn, in the phr. do it to remayn = cause it to be carried or conducted, 584. [Fr. text, *le ramenez*; and the Eng. word is an awkward copy of it.]
- Remeue, remove, move away, 3191; Renew, remove, move away, 3069, 3943.
- Remitte, restore, 5242.
- Renay, deny, 2173, 4310. Fr. *renier*.
- Rend, v. to surrender, render up, 6186.
- Renged, drew up in ranks, set in array, 2224; Rengid, 1315.
- Rentid (*renta*), endowed with rents, 5300.
- Repair (*repaire*), fort, fastness, 1133; abode, 5168; to your repair you take = betake yourself to your usual abode, i. e. to Poitiers, 574.
- Repref, reproof, dishonour, 371, 1255, 1258, 2322.
- Repreued, reproved, 237.
- Requeryng, praying, beseeching, 3174.
- Require (*requiers*), pray, p. 204; beseech, entreat, 2579, 5612; ask for, 5383; Requiring, praying, beseeching, p. 61, 1616, 3352.
- Resoned, talked to, 791.
- Resplendisng, shining brightly, 1196, 4512.
- Rethoriously, rhetorically, with flourishes, 6611.
- Retrair, retreat, 1001, 4707; return, 2824; withdrawal of a thing given, 5597; without retrain = without fail, 1622, 5149. "*Sans retraire* signifie sans appel, sans y manquer." Bur., vol. ii., p. 230.
- Reuel, pleasantry, jesting, sport, 5193. "*Revel*, . . . badinage, plaisanterie." Bur. Ch.
- Rew; in phr. by rew = in order (lit. by row), 5211, 6500, 6554. Ch.
- Rewarde, look about, consider, 1190, 2367, 5528; Rewarded, regarded, beheld, 291. O.Fr. *rewarder*.
- Roq.
- Rewme (*royaulme*), 1467, 1505, 2412, 5552, etc.; Rewmes, kingdoms 1647, 1662, 1669.
- Richesse, riches, 5437. Ch.
- Right (*droit*), law, 8.
- Riuage, arrival; riuage gan purchas = arrived, 2734; Fr. text, *arriva*.
- Riue, open in one's dealings, public, openly manifest, 3461. "Ryyf, or opynly knowe. *Manifestus, publicatus*." Fr. Parv.
- Riued, arrived, 1350, 6408.
- Roche, rock, 4270, 4935, 5031.
- Romans, romance, 6415, 6417, 6418, 6420.
- Ron, run; ron in age = advanced in years, 5425.
- Rought, recked, 5106.
- Route, company, 3787. Ch.
- Routhe, ruth, pity, 3684. Ch.
- Row, rough, 1266. A.S. *rūh*; Ger. *roh*. Ch.
- Rowted, snored, 5784. Ch.
- Rudesse, violence, force, 4272. Fr. *rudesse*.
- Rychesse, riches, 5283.
- Ryn, run, 3252.
- Ryn (*rain*), border, edge, esp. the edge of a wood (Godefroy), 879. Ger. *rain*; O.Fr. *rain*.
- Ryued, arrived, 3248. See Riued.
- Saad, said, 647.
- Sad, *adj.* wise, mature, discreet, 1088, 4876; set, determined, 2079; fixed, marked out (?), 576; separate (?), 2272. See Halliwell.
- Sad, *adv.* firmly, certainly, 874, 3274; determinedly, 2208; discreetly, quietly, 4104; firmly, fixedly, 3859; full sad = very certainly, 4459. [The word is often a mere expletive.]
- Sagesse, wisdom, 6224.
- Sagilly, sagely, 5315.
- Said, an error for sad = discreet, 5788.

- Sain, say, 1183, 2760, 2767, 2771, 5193. Ch.
 Sain, seen, 729, 752, 2991, 3099.
 Saluz, salutation, 347, 896, 901. O.Fr. *saluz*. Bur.
 Samfayl, without fail, 2351. [Rather read *sanfail*. See *Sanfaill*.]
 Sampler, p. 77, } original. Lat.
 Sauplere, 2947, } *exemplar*.
 Sampoience, soinnolency, slumber, 4616.
 Sanfaill, without fail, 1590.
 Santred, mused, wondered, hesitated. 4653. Cf. Eng. *saunter*.
 Satefied, satisfied, i. e. well rewarded, 1917; satisfied with presents, 5162.
 Sauacion, salvation, 4970, 5155.
 Saue; *ho s'auue*, whoso has, 6296.
 Sautes, assaults, 2145. Ch.
 Say, essay, attempt, 354.
 Sayand, s. saying, 206.
 Saying-again, gainsaying, 3242.
 Sayn, 51, }
 Sayne, p. 186, } seen.
 Sayn, say, p. 184.
 Scnberge, scabbard, 2790, 3047, 3060, 4722.
 Scarnish, skirinish, 2079.
 Scaturday (*sempmedi*), Saturday, 2724.
 Schapel, chapel, 771.
 Schurch, church, 3247.
 Scomfite, to discomfit, 4198.
 Scomfiture, discomfiture, conflict, 4148.
 Scripture, writing, record, records, p. 118, 2076, 2115, 5484, 5494, etc.
 Scorched (miswritten *scroched*), scorched, 3551. [Spelt *scorched* in l. 3678.]
 Secundarilie (*secondement*), a second time, 512.
 Sef (*sept*), seven, 4181.
 Seff, seven, 4182.
 Seffe, 1261, }
 Sefth, 4427, } seventh.
 Seignorie (*seignourie*), lordship, dominion, 55, 5197, 5751; rank, high degree, 339. Ch.
 Seignoried, was lord of, ruled, 5090.
 Semblable, like, 6488. Ch.
 Semblably (*samblablement*), similarly, in like manner, 5330.
 Semblably, as Semblably, 1092.
 Semblance, appearance, 1768.
 Semblant (*samblant*), appearance, 1421. Ch.
 Semble wyse, like wise, like manner, 1904. [Cf. *lyke-wyse* in l. 1901.]
 Send, sent, 1462, 5273.
 Sentence, meaning, sense, 6553, 6568. Ch.
 Sentement, opinion, p. 125.
 Sept, seven, 1670.
 Sepulture, sepulchre, 3627. Ch.
 Sery, prob. an error for "say," 3556. [If *sery* exists, it may mean *assert*.] Cf. Lat. *sero*, It. *asserire*.
 Setterday, Saturday, 5598, 5601.
 Seueralte, separate portions, 3640. [The text requires some word expressing the exact opposite of this, viz. integrity. As it is, we must put a comma after *hold*.]
 Sew, to follow, 2002; to pursue, 1751; Sewed, followed, 138, 142, 3980, 4476, etc. Ch.
 Sex, six, 5281. Lat. *sex*.
 Shad, shed, 5063.
 Shal, an error for Smal, small, 1393.
 Shameous, shameful, 3407, 3444, 5135.
 Share (*trenche*), shore, cut, 3075.
 She, it; used of a chamber, 4495, 4502. Fr. LA *chambre*.
 Shend, despoiled, ruined, 4988. A.S. *scendan*.
 Shereful (*chiere*), dear, 829.
 Shete, to shoot, 1176; Shette (*chut*), shot down, i. e. fell quickly, 5905. A.S. *scōtan*.
 Shill, shrill, 1997, 2209, 2976, 3317, 3403. "Schylle, and sharpe (schille, lowde), *Acutus, sonorus*." Pr. Parv. Du. *schel*.
 Shifte, divided, sliced, 2792. "Schyftyñ, or part asundy;" "Schyftē, or partyn, or delyñ." Pr. Parv. Cf. Du. *schiften*, Dan. *skifte*, Sw. *skifta*, to divide; O.N. *skipta*, to divide, *skifa*, to cleave, split; Ger. *schiefen*, to slice off. The Eng. *shive*, a slice, seems to give the true clue to the word. The Fr. text has *Tant boulda parcy*

- et par la*, where *boulta* = *bouta*, thrust, smote.
- Shitte, to enclose, 555; shut, 4409, 4412; shut in, 3295, 5791, etc.
- Sho, she, 836.
- Sightly, visible, 1229. Pr. Parv.
- Simplesse, simpleness, lack of skill, 6567, 6601, 6608, 6610.
- Sin, since, 3731, 4113, 5557.
- Sinistre, left, 3049.
- Sith, since; long sith = long since, 6209; euer sith = ever since, 4414.
- Sithen, since, 163, 4424; afterwards, 3187, 3980.
- Sixte, sixth, 4427.
- Slay (*occist*), slew, 1251.
- Sle, to slay, 210, 1367, 3017.
- Slegges (*martearlx*), sledge-hammers, 3000, 3065. A.S. *æcege*.
- Sly, slew, 2090, 3978, 4073; to slay, 114; Slye (*tua*), slew, 147.
- Slyest, slewest, 4254.
- Smotherting, smothering, 3303.
- Soghed, sighed, 2890; Sogheth, sigheth, 6164.
- Solain, famous, excellent, fair, 864, 6104. O.Fr. *solempne*. Roq. [At l. 864 the Fr. text has *beaulx*.]
- Solain, solitary, done in solitude, 4394; lonely, 5431. Ch. has *soleyn*. See Pr. Parv.
- Sollemply, solemnly, 6192.
- Sompnolence, slumber, 5384, 5452.
- Sompnolent, slumberous, 5376.
- Sonly, soon, 4078.
- Sothlese, Sothlesse, truly, verily, 197, 417, 940, 2657, 3852. [Sothlese *should* mean *untruly*, but the author insists that it shall not.]
- Soudan, sultan, 1301, 1315, 1371, 1383. Ch.
- Soudiour, soldier, warrior, 4081. See Pr. Parv. [The Fr. text has *fouldreant* = one who terrifies.]
- Souerayn, supreme, 210, 291, 297, 387, etc.
- Soule, sole, single, 3641, 3770.
- Souly, solely, singly, 4198.
- Sounded, sounded, 4718; Sounneth, soundeth, 5782.
- Sowghid, sighed, 1944.
- Sowly, as Souly, 4154.
- Sparclod, scattered, 6480. "Splar-
- plynge, or scaterynge (sparte-lynge, sundrynge, sparkelynge). *Dissipatio*." Pr. Parv.
- Spedfully, speedily, 3451.
- Spell, to tell, relate, 5103, 5705. A.S. *spellian*.
- Spere, sphere, 6509. *Lancelot*, 6.
- Sperhauke (*espreuier*), sparrow-hawk, 5374, 5396, 5440, 5453.
- Sperhauke, i.e. Sparrow-hawk castle, 5413.
- Spored, spurred, 4214; Sporing, spurring, 4098.
- Sprancles, sprinkles, tear-drops, 4016.
- Sprites, spirits, feelings, affections, 4648.
- Staf, a line, verse, 6555; Staffes, lines, 6581. Cf. Eng. *stave*.
- Stage, story of a tower, 4925.
- Standede, Standed, stone-dead, 115, 1376, 2282, 3121.
- Stafte, 1723. [MS. *staste*; read *stafte*.] They stafte them = they ranged themselves in line; an idea repeated in the words "putt into ordinance;" for the Fr. text has merely, *Lors se misdrent en ordonnance*. Cf. Staff, a line, *supra*. Kilian gives "*Staven*, *Figere*, *pangere*, *statuere*."
- Stede, place, 4686, 4938, 4942.
- Steke, to set, fix, 3538. G. *stecken*.
- Stered, stirred, excited, 2217. Ch.
- Stied, mounted, climbed, 5861. A.S. *stigan*.
- Stikell, steep, 5848. A.S. *sticol*.
- Stile, steel, 2259, 2960, 3042.
- Stilen, of steel, 256.
- Stoke, stuck, 3955.
- Stonde, time, 3517. See *Stounde*.
- Stonde, astonished, 2346; Stoned, astonished, amazed, 728, 2940, 4700; in a trance, 3569. O.Fr. *estoner*.
- Stonyng (*esbahissement*), abashment, cause of shame, 1230.
- Stound, } time, period, instant, 237,
Stounde, } 312, 532, 633, 703, etc.; chiefly in phr. that stounde = at that time. A.S. *stund*; Ger. *stunde*. Cf. Du. *stond* = moment, instant.
- Store, 5617. An error for Stere, to stir, cause, bring about.

- Stour (*estour*), also Stoure, conflict, combat, 1360, 2231, 4165; pace, rate, 4827. Ch.
- Stourne, stern, 5730.
- Stratte, strait, narrow, 5809. Lat. *strictus*.
- Strayned (*destraint*), strained, tormented, 1406.
- Streight, stretched, made ready, 869, 918, 1005, 5417. A.S. *streccan*, to stretch; p.p. *gestreht*.
- Streith, straightway, 712.
- Strenght (*fort*), a fortress, 1179, 1184, 1192, 3452, etc.
- Strioed, destroyed, 2857, 3313, 4854.
- Stroyng, destroying, 3408.
- Suatte, sweated, 3079; Suete, to sweat, 4851.
- Suffisantly, sufficiently, 3984.
- Sughed, sighed, 5024.
- Sugret, 3848, } sugared, sweet.
- Sugred, 6029, } Ch.
- Sured, betrothed, 5087.
- Surmitte, to lay a charge on, impose a task on, 5606. The line means, "To impose a task on Palestine, my youngest sister." "*Surmettre*; imposer, charger, accuser." Roq.
- Surrend, to restore, render back again, 4986.
- Suster, sister, 5595; Sustre, 5606; Sustres, sisters, 5575.
- Swatte (*tressue*), sweated, 2781, 2876, 4929.
- Syn, afterwards, p. 176; since, 4928. See Sin.
- Synny, sinful, 5218.
- Tach (*tache*), a blemish, 1265.
- Tacked (*attachierent*), attached, 4802. Pr. Parv.
- Taking, *sb.* capture, 4920; *pp.* taken, 4921.
- Targe, target, shield, 4212.
- Tasting, feeling, 4491. Ch.
- Teise, draw near to, approach, 1295.
- Tend, vexed, grieved, 2328; irritated, disquieted, 5785; was vexed, incensed, 3213. A.S. *tōnian*, to vex, irritate, incense.
- Tende, kindled; debate tende = kindled strife, 2097; kindled, lighted (Fr. text, *alumer font*), 2136. A.S. *on-tendan*, to light, kindle.
- Termyne, to finish, bring to an end, 5996.
- Terrene, earthly, 417.
- Terrenly, as regards lands; wurthy terrenly = a great landholder, 5014. [The Fr. text has *sera grant terrien*, where *terrien* = *terrier*, seigneur qui a beaucoup de terres.]
- Tewisday, 2670, 3247, } Tuesday.
- Tewaday, 3309, 5763, }
- Tha (*ilz*), they, 1365.
- Thaken (*esprins*), taken, seized, 3292.
- Thaught, taught, 98, 768, 3962.
- The, prosper, 4959. A.S. *pēon*.
- Then, ten, 3477.
- Thenke, think, 3801, 3804, 3815.
- Ther-hens, thence, 4345. [Perhaps an error for Ther-thens.]
- Ther-thens, thence, 3125, 3350, 4818, 5070, 5517, 5763.
- Therthorough, thereby, 3149.
- This, thus, 2892, 3424.
- Tho, those, 1343, 1653, 3176, 3218, etc. A.S. *pā*. Ch.
- Tho, then, 253, 4534, 5391. A.S. *pā*.
- Thombe, tomb, 6105.
- Thorught, through, 3863.
- Thought, though, 6611.
- Thrall, *adj.* subject, 4714.
- Thraste, to thrust, 4233.
- Throw, time; that throw = at that time, 626; in a throw, in a brief space of time, 3360. See Pr. Parv. A.S. *pāh*. Ch.
- Thwanges, 568, } thongs. A.S.
- Thanges, 582, } *þwang*.
- Thyme (*temps*), weather, 2735.
- Thys, thus, 297, 3218, 3279, 5069. See This.
- Timbre (*fust*), wooden hilt, 1377.
- Tirandise, 4732, } tyranny.
- Tirandisse, 6487, }
- To, two, p. 173, 31, 144, 1648, 1649, 1651, etc.
- To-uaunce (*ton deuancier*), preceding (you); man to-uaunce = ancestor, 5566.
- To-bore, native, 6563.
- To-breke, brake very much, 5893. A.S. *tō-brecan*.

- To-chapped (*detrenche*), cut small, 2272.
- Togeders, together, 102, 1027, 1727, etc.
- Told, accounted; noight told of = thought nothing of, 3029.
- To-rent, rent severely, 5648; quite broken, 4290. Ch.
- Tomorne, to-morrow, 2749.
- Torn, turn, 2764, 2838, 2938, 3043, 6566; return home, 5266; Torned, turned, 3738. Ch.
- Torning, 2905, } turning.
Tornyng, 3449, }
- To-stoniste, much astonished, 2198.
- To-tere, to tear severely, 5938; To-tore, tore severely, 5872.
- Tour, a tower, 4662, 4772, 4907.
- Tour, a turn, circuit, 3875. Fr. *tour*.
- Townishe peple (*celles de la ville*), people of the town, 2443.
- Toxicat (*envelyme*), poisoned, 1333, 1429.
- Traiteresse, traitress, 2770.
- Trauers, in the phr. in trauers (*au trauers*), across, 1161; across, sideways, 5886.
- Trauersing, changing about, changing the place of words, 6562.
- Traying, for Tarying, tarrying, 49. See note.
- Trenchand, cutting, 3045. Ch.
- Trewage, tribute, 4729, 4739, 6154. O.Fr. *treu*, *treuage*. Roq.
- Trimble, tremble, 3997.
- Trought, truth, 2919, 3697.
- Trouth, truth, 3710.
- Trowe (*trou*), a hole, 4270.
- Trowing (*se croy Ie*), as I suppose, 3575, 4260; expecting, trusting, 4266.
- Trusse, sb. a bundle, 720; (see Pr. Parv.); pack off, begone, 3011. O.Fr. *torser*, *trusser*. Bur.
- Trussing (*destruisant*), making (them) pack off, routing (them), 2154; perhaps here used in the sense of destroying.
- Tydy, timely; tydy stounde, timely moment, 5722. Cf. Ger. *zeitig*.
- Vail, to avail; but used in phr. vail that vail might = happen what may; Fr. text, *vaille que vaille*, 2672.
- Uailant, valiant, 4650.
- Ualay, valley, 4160; Ualey, 584, 725, 747, etc.
- Valoure, value, power, p. 50, 3899.
- Uandosine, 3484. This is a proper name (the modern Vendôme), and the allusion to it must be a proverb. The line means, "By the tears of Vandosme's beauty" (*or face, or appearance*), though "hys fair" is merely expletive. Fr. text, *Et, pour la larme de vandosme*.
- Uarray, very, 5399.
- Uermaill (*vermeillon*), vermilion, scarlet, 3213, 4279, 5477.
- Uerray, very, 4652.
- Uiage, journey, expedition, 3123, 5820; purpose, 3953; necessities for a journey (Lat. *viaticum*), 5020; of viage = on their journey, 2476. Ch.
- Uillosed, dishonoured, slighted, 2993. O.Fr. *vilainier*. Bur.
- Vilously (*villainement*), insultingly, 2861. Perhaps read uilously.
- Uitail, victuals, eatables, 5022, 5466. Ch.
- Uitaillouns, 987. An error for uitailous, eatable, life-sustaining.
- Vmbleste, humblest, 4842.
- Unbore, unborn, 3709.
- Unconnyng, unskilful, 6610.
- Vnconnyngnesse, lack of skill, p. 12.
- Vnfold, explained, p. 130; to narrate, relate, 893, 4372, 5124; visibly, openly, plainly, 697, 2350, 5038; produced, given birth to, 4401; unfold of = brought forth by, 465 (cf. l. 4401); narrated, related, 5990; evident, manifest, openly displayed, p. 35, 26.
- Vnhaply, by ill chance, 5918.
- Unknow, unknown, 843, 4954.
- Unmesurabelnesse, want of moderation, talkativeness, 3594.
- Unmete, immense, measureless, 5775. A.S. *ungemet*, immensity.
- Unnethes, scarcely, 318, 778, 1405, 1703, etc. Properly *unethes*, as in Ch.

- Vnperfight, imperfect, sinful, 5225.
 Vnshit, } to open, 3501; opened,
 Vnshitte, } 3945, 4747, 5792.
 Vnwemmed, unblemished, 6569. *See*
 Wemme.
 Uoide, to depart, 4109, 5590;
 Uoided, departed, 5639; avoided,
 3084. Ch.
 Uois, voice, 2404, 3547, 4870.
 Uolente (*voulente*), wish, desire, 47,
 3473.
 Voluntarily (*voulientiers*), gladly,
 5055.
 Uomed, foamed, 3215.
 Uoyding, avoiding, 4672.
 Vre, common custom, habitual use,
 3722. *See* Nares' Glossary.
 Wacche, watch, 5523; to watch,
 5375, 5395; Wacchyd (*veilla*),
 watched; wacchyd his person =
 took heed to himself, kept himself
 awake, 5518.
 Wace, was, 4769, 4844, 5243.
 Waillant, valiant, 5354.
 Wak, to watch, 5444; Wake, 5454;
 Waked, watched, 5461.
 Waking, s. watching, 5527.
 Walling, welling up, 4161. A.S.
weallan. Ger. *wallen*.
 Wallure (*murs*), walls, 1152, 5504.
 Waloping, galloping, 4827. Kilian
 gives "Galoppe, waloppe" in
 Appendix. *See* note to the line.
 Warant, safeguard, defence, 4195;
 to guard, save, 4201.
 Wardain, warder, 4415. Ch.
 Warde, sb. custody, 4824; vb. guard,
 5003, 5005; cf. *garde* in l. 5004.
 Warde (*gardez*), take care, beware,
 805, 834.
 Warented (*pouoit garir*), defended,
 saved, 2237.
 Warly, warily, 41, 4267.
 Warly, adj. warlike, 1362.
 Waymented, lamented, 3324. O.Fr.
waimeter. Bur.
 Waymenting, lamenting, 4953; sb.
 a lament, 3459. Ch.
 Wemme, spot, blemish, 466. A.S.
wamm.
 Wend, to turn about, 6566; Went,
 i. e. arrived, 3453; went, 2264;
 turned, overturned, 2104.
 Wendyng, turning, 2905.
 Went, weened, knew, 5646. *See*
 note to the line.
 Were (*guerre*), war, 2980, 3056,
 3172, 4056, etc.
 Were, whether, 5659. *See* Wher.
 Were, (who) was, 4063.
 Werly, warlike, 1591, 4148.
 Wern (*escondiroie*), deny, refuse,
 refuse to do, p. 126, 556, 1494.
 A.S. *wiernan*.
 Wern, warn, 4197. A.S. *warnian*.
 Werne, to deny, refuse, 82, 86, 520.
See Wern.
 Werre, war, 3659, 4429.
 Werred, warred on, 5318. Ch.
werreie.
 Werrely, in a warlike way, 1741.
 Wersom, weary, 4406; wersom
 goste = tired, oppressed spirit.
 Whier, } whether, 359, 4048, 4654,
 Where, } 4657, 5083.
 Where (*guerre*), war, 1281.
 Where-hens, whence, p. 114, 3351,
 3383, 5489.
 Wherethorough, whereby, 447, 3389,
 4404.
 Wherethorught, wherefore, 3079.
 Whight (*hardis*), nimble, vigorous,
 2522. Suio-G. *wig*; Sw. *wig*.
 Whilis, whilst, 5597.
 Wice, wise, 4896.
 Wight, nimble, swift, 4910. Ch.
 Wightly, quickly, 326; nimbly,
 2260, 4226; soon, 4697, 4843;
 strongly, vigorously, 3066, 4699.
 Wighty, nimble, quick (= Wight),
 4704. Cf. Bryghty, Pitty, Moisty.
 Wilfull, willing, glad, 1641.
 Will, adv. well, 5527, 6171.
 Wilnyng, wishing, 3178. Ch.
 Win, to rise, get up, 2986. *See*
 Jam., s. v. Win—"to win up, to
 rise."
 With, used in the sense of by, 4673.
 Ch.
 Withdraught, withdrawal, 5927.
 Withsay, to gainsay, 86, 3235; re-
 fuse, 5529. A.S. *wiðseggan*. Ch.
 Withsaing, gainsaying, 482. *See*
 l. 485.
 Wo, adj. sad, 2538, 2562. Ch.
 Woer, sadder, 2855.
 Wode, mad, 3291, 4897. Ch.

- Womanhed, womanhood, 2315.
 Wonderly, wondrously, 26, 5282 ;
 wondrous, 1241.
 Wone (*demeure*), dwelling, 5786.
 Ch. [The MS. has *lone*.]
 Wordle, world, 166, 2049, 4838,
 5782. "Al þe welthe of þis
wordle, and þe woo boþe." *Piers*
Plowman, C. i. 10.
 Wordly, worldly, 457, 2644, 2923 ;
 mortal, 1177 ; living in this world,
 alive, 3533. [*Lancelot*, 3184, has
 ward = warld, world. So werd
 = world in *Gen. and Ex.* 32,
 1315.]
 Worle, world, 3816, 3841, 4007, 5179,
 5353, etc.
 Worly, worldly, 3838, 4110, 4373,
 6510.
 Worm, a large serpent, 5859 ;
 Wormes, serpents, 5772. A.S.
wyrn ; O.N. *ormr*.
 Wout, wot, know, 761.
 Woxin, become, 3436.
 Wrake, harm, hurt, 5933. A.S.
wrac.
 Wraſte, wrested, i. e. pierced, 1377.
 Wrete, written, 4522, 6401.
 Wreth, sb. wrath, 231.
 Wreth, vb. to make angry, 2856 ;
 Wrethed, made angry, 4853.
 Wroght, 2780, }
 Wrought, 3543, } wroth.
 Wrothed, was angry, 1254.
 Wurght, adj. worth, 5940.
 Wurghtinesse, worthiness, 5959.
 Wyght, a wight, a creature, 3992.
 A.S. *wiht*.
 Wyghtly (*vistement*), nimbly, quick-
 ly, 235, 333. See Wight.
 Wyfully, at will, 327.
 Wyn, to go, 3253. See Win.
 Yaf, gave, 218, 559.
 Yande, yonder, 5827.
 Yanyng, yawning, 5852, 5941.
 Yeff, give, p. 191, p. 196, p. 209, 75 ;
 given, 88 ; Yef, gave, 652.
 Yefte, gift, 550.
 Yeman (*varlet*), a yeoman, a squire,
 5164, 5174.
 Yerfull, ireful, angry, 3258.
 Yeue, give, i. e. deliver, 462.
 Yeuyng, giving ; but used as = had
 given, 4720 ; giving, p. 47.
 Yif, given, 5557.
 Yifte, gift, 558, 687, 5401, 5406 ;
 Yiftes, gifts, 1071.
 Yongling, youngling, youth, 3843.
 Youthnesse, youth, 5221.
 Yowlownesse (*crinæ blons*), yellow-
 ness, 3887.
 Yoy, joy, 3760, 3991.
 Ypoceras, the name of a compound
 wine, 972.
 Yre (*fer*), iron, 1377, 2786, 2999.
 Yrous, angry, 4889.
 Yrouſly, angrily, 4692.
 Yut, yet, p. 21, 3709, 5351, etc.
 Ywis, certainly, p. 116.
 Zowning (*se pisme*), swooning, 287,
 3569, 3776 ; a swoon, 3781.
 Zownyngly, swooningly, 3566.
 3ere, years, 126.

INDEX OF NAMES.

[In this Index, the references under words in large capitals are to the *pages* of the book ; otherwise, the references are to the *lines*. By 'p.' is meant *page*, and by *prol.* the "Prologue."]

- Albany, 4386, 5362.
 Alexaundre, 6322.
 Almayn, 2066.
 AMERYS, AMERIE, or AMERYE, earl of Poitiers, p. 8 ; adopts Raymond, p. 11 ; goes out hunting, p. 12 ; is accidentally slain by Raymond, p. 16 ; is buried, p. 29.
 Angoy (Anjou ?), 968.
 Anthonye, *prol.* 177.
 ANTONY, or ANTHONYE, fourth son of Raymond and Melusine, p. 48 ; besieges Luxembourg, p. 64 ; marries Christian, p. 71 ; further notice of him, p. 184.
 Aras (Arras), 2640.
 Ardennes. *See* Dardane.
 Aristotle, quoted ; *prol.* 78.
 Aritrige (= Autrige, *i. e.* Austria), 2497. Fr. text, *Autriche*.
 Armenia. *See* Hermeny.
 Arminiens, 1604.
 Arragon, or Arrigon, 4636, 5168, 5607, 5709, 5764, 5768.
 Arthur, *prol.* 91, 5748.
 Aucerre (Auxerre), 975.
 Auoblon, or Aualon (Avalon), 4548, 4644, 4858.
 Ausoy (Alsace), 1700, etc.
 Ausoys (Alsacians), 1703, 1733, 1736, 1743, 1750, 1754.
 Ayglon, 5007.
 Bachus, *prol.* 37.
 Barry. *See* Salz.
 Baueres (Bavaria), 2066.
 Bernagant, 4312 ; an error for Teruagant = Termagaunt.
 Bertram, son of Amerye, 28.
 BERTRAM, son of Anthony, and grandson of Melusine, becomes king of Alsace, p. 90.
 Bewme (Beaune), 970.
 Bew-repair, 1171 ; Fr. text, *le bourg ou a moult beau Repaire*.
 Bewuais (Beauvais), 2640.
 Blanche (daughter of Amerye), 27.
 Brehaigne (Bohemia), 1696, 1939, 1951, 1972, 5328.
 Brehaignons (Bohemians), 2072, 2093, 2116, 2154, 2182.
 Britain, 5086.
 Brough-dieu, 2623.
 Cambrere, 5359.
 Celestines, 5691.
 Charlemain, 6359, 6360.
 Chartres, 2633.
 Cipresse (Cyprus), 1297, 1467, 1600, 5317, 6275.
 Ciprian, king, 1142, 1352, 1437.
 Ciprian, a man of Cyprus, 1414.
 Cipriens, men of Cyprus, 1316, 1332, 1338, 1400, 5351.
 Coinsq, also spelt Quonig, Conqs, and Comquez, a mountain in Arragon, 4607, 4625, 5708, 6061.
 Columbere (Coulombiers), 34, 125, 146, 866, 1099.
 Conquez. *See* Coinsq.

- Constantinoble, 946, 4516.
- Couldrette, author of the French version of the romance, 6423, 6433.
- CRAQUO, KING OF, p. 76; killed by Raynold, p. 82; burnt by the men of Alsace, p. 83.
- CRISTIAN, daughter of the duke of Luxembourg, p. 64; gives a feast to Anthony and Raynold, p. 68; pardons the king of Alsace, p. 70; is married to Anthony, p. 71; asks Anthony to wear the arms of Luxembourg, p. 75.
- Crius, 5672.
- Dardane, 2488. An error for *d'Ardenne*, the place meant being the French department named Ardenne.
- Denmarke, 2465.
- Digon (Dijon?), 974.
- Dingenon, 982.
- EGLENTINE, daughter of the king of Bohemia, p. 78; laments his death, p. 79; besieged by the Saracens, *id.*; welcomes the king of Alsace, p. 83; is married to Raynold, p. 87, 88.
- Englande, 5357, 5741, 5968, 6006.
- English Knight, the; his adventure in Arragon, 5741—5971.
- ERMYNEE, daughter of the king of Cyprus, p. 51; laments his sore wounds, p. 52; besieged by the Saracens, p. 53; made heiress by her dying father, p. 56; marries Uriens, p. 59.
- Esclauons, 2075, 2091, 2094.
- Estables (Étapes?), 978.
- Faborugh, 2496. An error for Friburg; Fr. text, *bribourg*.
- Famagouce, Famagousta in Cyprus, 1299, 1304.
- FLOURYE, daughter of the king of Armenia, p. 61; marries Guy, p. 62.
- Forest, earl of; 36, 60, 79, 91, 101. See FROMOUNTE.
- Fraunce (France), 5687, 6388.
- Frige (Phrygia), *prol.* 36.
- Frise (Friesland), 2463.
- FROMONT, seventh son of Raymond and Melusine, p. 49; asks his father if he may turn monk, p. 92; becomes a monk at Maillezais Abbey, p. 95; is burnt by Geoffrey, p. 96 (of which there is a more detailed account, pp. 113—117).
- FROMOUNTE (EARL OF FOREST), tempts Raymond to find out where Melusine goes on a Saturday, p. 98; is threatened by Raymond, p. 101; slain by Geoffrey, p. 102 (of which there is a longer account, pp. 169, 170).
- GAFFRAY (GEOFFREY), sixth son of Raymond and Melusine, p. 49; says he will fight the giant Guedon, p. 91; his fight with Guedon, pp. 105—109; slays Guedon, p. 110; says he will go to Northumberland, p. 113; burns down Maillezais Abbey, pp. 114—117; goes to Northumberland, p. 118; he is to rebuild the abbey, p. 129; fights with the giant Grimold, pp. 141—151; enters the enchanted mountain, pp. 155—164; slays Grimold, p. 163; sees Raymond, p. 167; kills his uncle Fromunte, p. 170; rebuilds the abbey, p. 176 (*cf.* p. 182); is assailed by the pope, p. 180; goes to Montserrat, p. 181; hears of Palestine's treasure, p. 207; falls ill, p. 208; dies, and is buried in the abbey, p. 209.
- Gawayn, *prol.* 97.
- Gian (Guienne), 6362.
- Greffon, son of Uriens, 1562, 1584, 1585.
- GRIMOLD THE GIANT, is sought by Geoffrey, pp. 141—144; fights with Geoffrey and flees away, pp. 145—151; found and slain by Geoffrey, pp. 161—163.
- GUEDON THE GIANT, wastes Guerande, p. 91; fights with Geoffrey and is slain, pp. 105—110; was cousin to Grimold, p. 148.
- Guerrande, 2950, 3140, 3157, 3343, 4832.
- GUY, third son of Raymond and

- Melusine, p. 48; goes to Cyprus, p. 51; aids the king of Cyprus, p. 52; marries Flourye, and is king of Armenia, pp. 61, 62; alluded to, p. 183 and p. 192.
- HELMAS, king of Albany, and husband of Presine, father of Melusine, Melior and Palestine, p. 152; enclosed in the enchanted mountain, p. 153; his tomb, p. 156; his history, pp. 157—160; alluded to, pp. 168, 173, 193, 199, and 207.
- Hermeny (Armenia), 1637, 5321, 5369, 5372, 5391, 5672, 6275.
- HORRIBLE, eighth son of Raymond and Melusine, p. 50; Melusine advises that he be slain, p. 128; he is stifled in a cave, p. 137; alluded to, p. 184.
- Hungery (Hungary), 5993.
- Iason, 1573.
- Jesus, 6525; Iesu, 6539.
- Iohan of Pertenay, 6217, 6233.
- Iudas Iscariot, 3337.
- Jupiter, 4313.
- King of Bohemia. *See* Brehaigne.
- King of Craquo (Cracow). *See* CRAQUO.
- King of Cyprus. *See* Ciprian, king.
- King of France, 6265, 6272.
- KING OF HERMYNE (ARMENIA); his adventure at Sparrow-hawk Castle, pp. 186—195.
- Lancelet, *prol.* 95.
- Latin, 6558, 6565.
- Lesignen, *prol.* 135, *prol.* 195. *See* Lusignen.
- Lochier, 2486.
- Lusignen, built and named, 1138; name alluded to, 3725; used as a war-cry, 5352; the romance named from it, 6420. [Mentioned very often.]
- Luxembrough, 1235, 1697, 1802, 2096, 2475, 5333.
- Lyon (pope Leo), 4964, 5144, 5156.
- Mabregon, *prol.* 172.
- Machon (Macon), 31.
- Mahounde, i. e. Muhammed, 310, 4313.
- Mallers Abbey (now Maillezais), 1252, 2553, 2581, 2591, etc.; burnt down, 2666, 3291—3325; rebuilt, 5104; Geoffrey is buried there, 6099.
- Margot, 4312.
- Mars, 2671.
- Mathefelon, 6236, 6301.
- Medee (Medea), 1572, 1575.
- Meisiere (Mezieres), 2492.
- Mel (Melle, dep. deux Sèvres), built, 1199.
- MELIOR, second daughter of Helmas and Presine, p. 159; alluded to, p. 174; keeper of Sparrowhawk Castle, p. 185; interview with the king of Armenia, pp. 190—194.
- MELUSINE, eldest daughter of Helmas and Presine, p. 158; her doom, p. 159; meets with Raymond, pp. 19—27; marries Raymond, pp. 33—44; builds Lusignan, Mel, etc., pp. 45, 47; her children, pp. 46—50, p. 92; is seen bathing by Raymond, p. 100; comforts Raymond, p. 104; Raymond calls her serpent, p. 124; she reproaches him and bids him adieu, pp. 125—134; is changed into a serpent and vanishes, p. 135; reappears, p. 139; her name explained, p. 45.
- Merkministre, 2622.
- Merlyn, 5973. *See* note.
- Meruant (Mervent), built, 1200; given to Thierry, 5007.
- Meuse (river), 2491.
- Midas, *prol.* 36.
- Mont-sarrat (Monserat in Arragon), 5148, 5169, 5296, 5305.
- Mychaell, 6462.
- Norbelande (Northumberland), 3163, 3168, 4055, 4726, 4823.
- Norway, 6278, 6280.
- Octavian, 2.
- OEDES (Eudes), second son of Melusine, p. 47; marries daughter of the earl of Forest, p. 63; alluded to, p. 183.

Ortholegne, 2464. *See* note.

PALESTINE, youngest daughter of Helmas and Presine, p. 160; mentioned, p. 174 and p. 193; she guards her father's treasure in Arragon, pp. 196, 197.

Panebourght (Pembroke), 5357.

Partenay (Parthenay), *prol.* 122, *prol.* 146; built, 1204. [Mentioned very often throughout the poem.]

Partenay, lord of, 6145; date of his death, 6182.

Partenay, Iohan of. *See* Iohan.

Pareys (Paris), 2640, 5690, 6202.

Payny (pagan lands), 1564.

Paynymes, 1328, 1385, 1395, 1469, etc.

Peiteuin (a Poitevin, a man of Poitou), 1374.

Petyuins (Poitevins), 1362, 1733, 1743, etc.

Peito (Poitou), 1220.

Penticost, 6182.

Perceuale, *prol.* 97.

Perregort (Perigord), 6354, 6372.

Peyters (Poitiers), *prol.* 121, 3, 21, 32, 174, 521, etc.

Poiters, 53, 64, 89, etc. *See* Peyters.

Polin (Apolin), 4312.

Pope, the; 2636, 5144, 5156, 5216, 5224, 5253.

PRESINE, wife of Helmas, pp. 157—160; mentioned, p. 174.

Promission, land of (land of Promise, Palestine), 5713, 5759, 5786, 6063.

Quonig, 4607. *See* Coinqs.

RAYMOUND, son of the earl of Forest, adopted by Earl Amery, p. 11; hunts with Amery, and accidentally kills him, pp. 12—18; meets with Melusine, whom he marries, pp. 19—42; permits his son Fromont to turn monk, pp. 92—95; is tempted to see where Melusine goes on a Saturday, pp. 98, 99; sees her bathing, p. 100; his rage, and self-reproaches, pp. 101—104; hears how the abbey of Maillezais is burnt, and visits the

ruins, pp. 119—121; his grief, and how he called Melusine a *serpent*, pp. 122—124; his adieu to Melusine, and lament at her loss, pp. 135, 136; sets out for Rome, p. 173; is pardoned by the pope, p. 177; becomes a hermit, pp. 178, 179; dies, p. 182.

RAYMOND, ninth son of Raymond and Melusine, p. 92, l. 2550; where "Fromont" is a mistake for "Raymond"; becomes earl of Forest, p. 184.

RAYNOLD, fifth son of Melusine, p. 49; goes with Anthony to Luxembourg, pp. 63—68; goes with him next to Bohemia, pp. 74—85; marries Eglentyne, pp. 86—89; mentioned again, p. 184.

Ris (Ruys?), 980.

Rochel (Rochelle), 31, 968; built, 1219; also 1282, 2529, 3807, 5110, 6461.

Romain (Romanée?), 972.

Romayns (Romans), 2469.

Rome, 266, 4964, 5068, 5119.

SAINTS, invocation of. On pp. 221 and 222, the following saints are invoked: SS. Agnes, Andrew, Augustin, Clement, Cutlbert, Denise, Edith, Germain (Germanus), Iohan the baptist, Katerine, Lauerence, Martin, Mary Magdeline, More (Maur), Mychaell, Nicholas, Paul, Peter, Seuerine (Severinus), Siluestre, Steuin (Stephen), Vincent. Also at p. 224 thanks are given to S. John the apostle, S. Michael, and the Virgin Mary. St. Cross, church of, 6189.

Seint Johan-of-Angely (now St. Jean d'Angely), 976.

Seint Iougon, 975.

Seint Lowes (Louis IX.), 6199.

Seint Martin's, 2630.

Seint Messent (St. Maixent), 1200.

Seint pursain (St. Pourçain-sur-Allier), 980.

Salz and Barry (Salisbury), *prol.* 178. Sarasins, 1311, 1330, 1964, 2089, 2099, etc.; all killed and burnt, 2290.

Sarasyne, 309.

Saturday, 490, 2724, 5598, 5601.
 Soudan (Sultan), 1317; killed, 1381.
 Sperhauke castell, romance of, 5370
 —5678.

Suriens (Syrians), 1387.

Talmondois (*Taillemondoiz*), 1227.
 [O.Fr. *taille*, a district.]

Terry. *See* THIERRY.

Tewsday, 2670, 3309.

Theophillus, 6459.

THIERRY, tenth and youngest son of
 Melusine, p. 92; is to be lord of
 Parthenay, p. 138; nursed by
 Melusine by night, p. 140; goes
 with Geoffrey, p. 173; governs
 Parthenay, p. 175.

Tholouse (Toulouse), 5159, 5199;
 (error for Toledo), 5982.

Tiberius Cesar, *prol.* 28.

Tourain, 970, 2629.

Toures, 2629.

Tourimz (Tours?), 974.

Trinite, the; 6434, 6547.

Tristram, 5750, 6008.

Trompe (name of a tower), 1186.

Turkes, 1387.

Valerius Maximus, *prol.* 27.

Vandosme, 3484.

Vauuant (Vouvent), built, 1200;
 2676, 3125, 3368, 3372, 3453,
 5007.

Uiart, 978.

Virgin Mary, 465, 6455, 6548.

URIEN, or URIENS, eldest son of
 Melusine, p. 46; goes to Cyprus,
 p. 50; kills the sultan, p. 53; is
 made king of Cyprus, p. 57;
 marries Ermynee, p. 59; noticed,
 p. 183.

William, 6175. *See* the note.

Yaffe, Jaffa, Joppa, 1587.

Yrlande (Ireland), 6286.

Ywon, 2490.

**RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED,
LONDON & BUNGAY.**

Among the MSS. and old books which need copying or re-editing, are:—

ORIGINAL SERIES.

- English Inventories and other MSS. in Canterbury Cathedral (5th Report, Hist. MSS. Com.).
 Maumetrie, from Lord Tollemache's MS.
 The Romance of Troy. Harl. 525.
 Biblical MS., Corpus Cambr. 434 (ab. 1375).
 Hampole's unprinted Works.
 þe Glowde of Unknowyng, from Harl. MSS. 2373, 959, Bibl. Reg. 17 C 28, &c. Univ. Coll. Oxf. 14.
 A Lanterne of Ligt, from Harl. MS. 2324.
 Soule-hale, from the Vernon MS.
 Lydgate's unprinted Works.
 Boethius de Consol.: Pilgrim, 1426, &c. &c. Vegetinus on the Art of War. (Magd. Oxf. 30, &c.)
 Early Treatises on Music: Descant, the Gamme, &c.
 Skelton's englisshing of Diodorus Siculus.
 The Nightingale and other Poems, from MS. Cot. Calig. A 2, Addit. MS. 10,036, &c.
 Boethius, in prose, MS. Auct. F. 3. 5, Bodley.
 Penitential Psalms, by Rd. Maydenstoon, Brampton, &c. (Rawlinson, A. 389, Douce 232, &c.)
 Documents from the early Registers of the Bishops of all Dioceses in Great Britain.
 Ordinances and Documents of the City of Worcester.
 Chronicles of the Brute.
 T. Breus's Passion of Christ, 1422. Harl. 2338.
 Jn. Crophill or Crophill's Tracts, Harl. 1735.
 Burgh's Cato.
 Memoriale Oredencium, &c., Harl. 2398.
 Book for Recluses, Harl. 2372.
 Lollard Theological Treatises, Harl. 2343, 2350, &c.
 H. Selby's Northern Ethical Tract, Harl. 2388, art. 20.
 Hilton's Ladder of Perfection, Cott. Faust. B 6, &c.
 Supplementary Early English Lives of Saints.
 The Early and Later Festivals, ab. 1400 and 1440 A.D. Cotton, Claud. A 2; Univ. Coll. Oxf. 102, &c.
 Select Prose Treatises from the Vernon MS.
 Jn. Hyde's MS. of Romances and Ballads, Balliol 354.
 Metrical Homilies, Edinburgh MS.
 Lyrical Poems from the Fairfax MS. 16, &c.
 Prose Life of St. Audry, A.D. 1595, Corp. Oxf. 120.
 English Miscellanies from MSS., Corp. Oxford.
 Miscellanies from Oxford College MSS.
 Disco Mori, Jesus Coll. Oxf. 39; Bodl. Laud 99.
 Alain Chartier's Quadrilogue, &c., Univ. Coll. Oxf. 85.
 Mirror of the blessed liyf of Ihesu Crist, Univ. Coll. Oxf. 123, &c.
 Poem on Virtues and Vices, &c., Harl. 2260.
 Maundevely's Legend of Gwyde, Queen's, Oxf. 383.
 Book of Warrants of Edw. VI., &c., New Coll. Oxf. 328.
 Adam Loutfut's Heraldic Tracts, Harl. 6149-50.
 Rules for Gunpowder and Ordnance, Harl. 6355.
 John Watton's englisht Speculum Christiani, Corpus Oxf. 155, Laud G.12, Thoresby 530, Harl. 2250, art. 20.

EXTRA SERIES.

- Erle of Tolous.
 Ypocrit.
 Sir Eglamour.
 Lyrical Poems, from the Harl. MS. 2253.
 Le Morte Arthur, from the unique Harl. 2252.
 Sir Tristrem, from the unique Auchinleck MS.
 Miscellaneous Miracle Plays.
 Sir Gowther.
 Dame Siris, &c.
 Orfeo (Digby, 86).
 Dialogues between the Soul and Body.
 Barlaam and Josaphat.
 Amis and Amiloun.
 Ipomedon.
 Sir Generides, from Lord Tollemache's MS.
 The Troy-Book fragments once cald Barbour's in the Cambr. Univ. Library and Douce MSS.
 Poems of Charles, Duke of Orleans.
 Carols and Songs.
 Songs and Ballads, Ashmole MS. 48.
 The Siege of Rouen, from Harl. MSS. 2256, 753, Egerton 1995, Bodl. 3562, E. Museo 124, &c.
 Octavian.
 Ywain and Gawain.
 Libeaus Desconus.
 Avnturs of Arther.
 Avowyng of King Arther.
 Sir Perceval of Gallas.
 Sir Isumbras.
 Partonope of Blois, Univ. Coll. Oxf. 188, &c.
 Pilgrimage to Jerusalem, Queen's, Oxf. 357.
 Other Pilgrimages to Jerusalem, Harl. 2333, &c.
 Horne, Penitential Psalms, &c., Queen's, Oxf. 207.
 St. Brandon's Confession, Queen's, Oxf. 210.
 Scotch Heraldry Tracts, copy of Caxton's Book of Chivalry, &c., Queen's Coll. Oxford 161.
 Stevyn Scrope's Doctryne and Wysedome of the Auneynt Philosophers, A.D. 1450, Harl. 2266.

The Founder and Director of the E. E. T. Soc. is Dr. F. J. Furnivall, 3, St. George's Sq., Primrose Hill, London, N.W. Its Hon. Sec. is W. A. Dalglish, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. The Subscription to the Society is 21s. a year for the *Original Series*, and 21s. for the *Extra Series* of re-editions.

Early English Text Society.

The Subscription, which constitutes membership, is £1 1s. a year [and £1 1s. additional for the EXTRA SERIES], due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid either to the Society's Account at the Head Office of the Union Bank of London, Princes Street, London, E.C., or by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, Victoria Rd., Finsbury Park, London, N., and cross 'Union Bank of London.' (United-States Subscribers must pay for postage 1s. 4d. a year extra for the Original Series, and 1s. a year for the Extra Series.) The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists.

ORIGINAL SERIES.

The Publications for 1897 (one guinea) are:—

108. *Child-Marriages & Divorces, &c.* Depositions in the Bishop's Court, Chester, 1561-6, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 15s.
109. *The Prymer or Lay-Folks' Prayer-Book*, Part II, Introduction and Notes, ed. Hy. Littlehales. 10s.

The Publications for 1898 (one guinea: ready) are:—

110. *The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History*, re-edited by Dr. T. Miller. Pt. II. § 1. 15s.
111. *The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History*, re-edited by Dr. T. Miller. Pt. II. § 2. 15s.

The Publications for 1899 are:—

112. *Merlin*, Part IV: Outlines of the Legend of Merlin, by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D. 15s.
113. *Queen Elizabeth's Englishings of Boethius*, Plutarch, &c., ed. Miss Pemberton. 15s.

The Publications for 1900 will be:—

114. *Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints*, Part IV, edited by Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 10s.
115. *Jacob's Well*, edited from the unique Salisbury Cathedral MS. by Dr. J. W. Brandaes. Part I. 10s.
116. *An Old-English Martyrology*, re-edited from the 4 MSS. by Dr. G. Herzfeld. 10s.

The Publications for 1901 and 1902 will be chosen from:—

- Jacob's Well*, edited from the unique Salisbury Cathedral MS. by Dr. A. Brandaes. Part II.
Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., Part II, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. [At Press.
Voices and Virtues, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Holthausen, Part II. [At Press.
The Exeter Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-edited from the unique MS. by I. Gollancz, M.A. Part II. [At Press.
Prayers and Devotions, from the unique MS. Cotton Titus C. 19, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq. [Copied.
Sir David Lyndesay's Works. Part VI. and last. (Editor wanted.) [At Press.
The Lay Folks' Catechism, by Archbp. Thoresby, ed. Canon Simmons and Rev. H. E. Nolloth, M.A. [Text set.

EXTRA SERIES.

The Publications for 1897 (one guinea) are:—

- LXXXI. *The Towneley Plays*, re-edited from the unique MS. by G. England, Esq. and A. W. Pollard, M.A. 15s.
LXXXII. *Hoccleve's Regement of Princes*, 1411-12, and 14 Poems, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 15s.
LXXXIII. *Hoccleve's Minor Poems*, II., from the Ashburnham MS., ed. I. Gollancz, M.A. [At Press.

The Publications for 1898 (one guinea) are:—

- LXXXIV. *Secreta Secretorum*: three prose Englishings, ab. 1440, ed. R. Steele, B.A. Part I. 20s.
LXXXV. *Speculum Guidonis de Warwick*, edited by Miss G. L. Morrill, M.A., Ph.D. 10s.

The Publications for 1899 (one guinea) will be:—

- LXXXVI. *George Ashby's Poems*: A.D. 1463 &c., ed. Miss Mary Bateson. 15s.
LXXXVII. *Lydgate's Deguileville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part I. 10s.
LXXXVIII. *Mary Magdalene*, by Th. Robinson, c. 1620. Edited by Dr. H. O. Sommer. 5s.

The Publications for 1900 (one guinea) will probably be:—

- LXXXIX. *Caxton's Dialogues*, English and French, 1481-8, edited by Henry Bradley, M.A. 10s.
LXXX. *Gower's Confessio Amantis*, vol. 1, re-edited from the best MSS. by G. C. Macaulay, M.A. 20s.

The Publications for 1901 (one guinea) will probably be:—

- LXXXI. *Gower's Confessio Amantis*, vol. 2, re-edited from the best MSS. by G. C. Macaulay, M.A. 15s.
LXXXII. *Lydgate's Deguileville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part II. 15s.

The Publications for 1902 and 1903 will be chosen from:—

- Melusine*, the prose Romance, from the unique MS., ab. 1500, ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. Part II. 10s.
Promptorium Parvulorum, c. 1440, from the Winchester MS., ed. Rev. A. L. Mayhew, M.A. Part I. 20s.
Lydgate's Dance of Death, edited from the MSS. by Miss Florence Warner.
The Craft of Nombryng, the earliest English Treatise on Arithmetic, ed. R. S. Steele, B.A. [At Press.
The Book of the Foundation of St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London, MS. ab. 1425, ed. Dr. Norman Moore. [Set.
The Chester Plays, Part II., re-edited by Dr. Matthews. [At Press.
Lichfield Gilda, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall; Introduction by Prof. E. C. K. Gonner. [Text done.
Alexander Scott's Poems, 1568, from the unique Edinburgh MS., ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. [Set.
John Hart's Orthographie, from his unique MS. 1551, and his black-letter text, 1569, ed. Prof. Otto Jespersen, Ph.D.
John Hart's Methode to teach Reading, 1570, ed. Prof. Otto Jespersen, Ph.D.
Extracts from the Rochester Diocesan Registers, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.
The Owl and Nightingale, 2 Texts parallel, ed. G. F. H. Sykes, Esq. [At Press.
The Three Kings' Sons, Part II, French collation, Introduction &c., by Dr. L. Kellner.
Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall.
The Coventry Plays, re-edited from the unique MS. by Dr. Matthews.
Emare, re-edited from the MSS. by Miss Rickert.

The Large-Paper Issue of the Extra Series is stopped, save for unfinished Works of it.

LONDON: KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.



3 2044 010 064 137

THE BORROWER WILL BE CHARGED
AN OVERDUE FEE IF THIS BOOK IS
NOT RETURNED TO THE LIBRARY
ON OR BEFORE THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW. NON-RECEIPT OF
OVERDUE NOTICES DOES NOT
EXEMPT THE BORROWER FROM
OVERDUE FEES.



